

Contents

| | | |
|---------|---|----|
| 0.1 | General resources | 8 |
| G1 | The writing system | 9 |
| G1.1 | [Interlude] Morphemes, phonemes, phones | 9 |
| G1.2 | Iteration marks | 9 |
| G1.3 | 漢字 | 10 |
| G1.4 | Pronunciation | 11 |
| G1.4.1 | Vowel extension | 11 |
| G1.5 | Hepburn romanisation | 12 |
| G1.6 | Rendaku | 13 |
| G1.7 | 音読み and 訓読み and mixing the two | 15 |
| G1.7.1 | History and why 漢字 is the way it is | 15 |
| G1.8 | When to use 音読み and 訓読み | 15 |
| G2 | Basic grammar | 18 |
| G2.1 | Building clauses and sentences | 18 |
| G2.2 | Topics vs. subjects: は、が particles | 19 |
| G2.2.1 | Subject as part-of-speech, topic as meta-concept | 19 |
| G2.2.2 | は particle: the topic marker | 19 |
| G2.2.3 | が particle | 22 |
| G2.3 | Prelude: Basic grammatical structures | 22 |
| G2.4 | Expressing state-of-being | 22 |
| G2.5 | Starter particles は、も、が | 23 |
| G2.6 | Adjectives | 23 |
| G2.7 | Verbs | 24 |
| G2.7.1 | Transitive and intransitive verbs | 25 |
| G2.8 | Nouns, adjectives, verbs conjugation summary | 27 |
| G2.9 | Verb particles を、に、へ、で | 27 |
| G2.9.1 | なにで and なんで in questions | 29 |
| G2.9.2 | Compound particles には、にも、へは、へも、では、でも to set location topic | 29 |
| G2.9.3 | Particle は to set direct object topic | 29 |
| G2.10 | Noun modification | 29 |
| G2.10.1 | Relative verb clauses as adjectives: verbs modifying following nouns . . | 30 |
| G2.10.2 | Noun chain | 30 |
| G2.10.3 | Noun phrases as adjectives: nouns modifying following nouns | 30 |
| G2.10.4 | Noun-related particles と、や、とか、の | 30 |
| G2.10.5 | の particle I: the noun modifier (label maker) | 33 |
| G2.10.6 | の particle II: the nominaliser | 35 |
| G2.10.7 | The adjective-noun spectrum: な-adjectives and の-adjectives | 36 |
| G2.11 | Adverbs | 38 |
| G2.12 | Sentence ending particles ね、よ、よね | 38 |
| G3 | Essential grammar | 40 |
| G3.1 | Verb stems | 40 |
| G3.2 | Polite forms ます、です | 40 |
| G3.2.1 | です is NOT the polite form of だ, they are completely separate constructs | 41 |

| | | |
|---------|--|----|
| G3.3 | Addressing people | 41 |
| G3.3.1 | Referring to yourself | 41 |
| G3.3.2 | Referring to the listener (second-person) | 41 |
| G3.3.3 | Referring to the third person | 42 |
| G3.4 | The question marker か particle | 43 |
| G3.4.1 | か in polite questions | 43 |
| G3.4.2 | Positive and negative polite questions | 43 |
| G3.4.3 | か in casual questions: binary and sarcasm | 44 |
| G3.4.4 | か in embedded clauses: referring to embedded questions | 44 |
| G3.4.5 | Modifying question words with suffixes か、も、でも | 44 |
| G3.5 | Apologising | 45 |
| G3.6 | Compound sentences | 45 |
| G3.6.1 | て form | 45 |
| G3.6.2 | Compound sentences (chain of descriptors/actions) using て/で and て- form | 46 |
| G3.6.3 | Causation and reasoning particles から、ので | 46 |
| G3.6.4 | Despite marker particle のに | 47 |
| G3.6.5 | General and contradiction connector particles けど(、けれど、けれど も)、が | 48 |
| G3.7 | Reason vague listing connector し | 48 |
| G3.8 | Adjective and verb vague listing construct ～たり[です] | 48 |
| G3.9 | Progressive form ～ている (enduring state of action, enduring state-of-being) .. | 49 |
| G3.10 | Resultant state ～てある | 50 |
| G3.11 | The auxiliary verb 置く in ～ておく、～とく | 50 |
| G3.12 | Spatial and temporal directional auxiliary verbs ～ていく、～てくる | 51 |
| G3.13 | Potential form ～ ^え る/～られる/～できる/～ ^え られる | 51 |
| G3.13.1 | The special cases 見られる、聞ける and the alternatives 見ることができ る、聞くことができる (vs. 見える、聞こえる) | 52 |
| G3.13.2 | Potential to exist: あり ruby{得{え/う}る} | 52 |
| G3.14 | ～にする、～になる auxiliary verbs | 52 |
| G3.14.1 | ～なくなる versus ～ないようになる | 54 |
| G3.14.2 | Decoupling form and function in Japanese grammar | 54 |
| G3.15 | Conditionals | 55 |
| G3.15.1 | Conditional form ～ば | 55 |
| G3.15.2 | Past conditional form ～たら[ば] | 55 |
| G3.15.3 | Expected consequence conditionals with と | 56 |
| G3.15.4 | Contextual conditionals with なら[ば] | 56 |
| G3.15.5 | もし as an uncertainty embellishment | 56 |
| G3.16 | Prohibition, requirement and permission | 57 |
| G3.16.1 | Prohibition (things that must not be done) ～ては{だめ/いけない/なら ない} | 57 |
| G3.16.2 | Requirement (things that must be done) | 58 |
| G3.16.3 | Permission (things that are okay to do or not to do) ～てもいい | 59 |
| G3.17 | Desires, invitation and suggestions | 60 |
| G3.17.1 | Desiderative form ～たい | 60 |
| G3.17.2 | Auxiliary adjective ほしい | 60 |

| | | | |
|---------|--|---|----|
| G3.17.3 | Volitional form: invitation | 〜 ^お う/〜よう/〜ましょう | 61 |
| G3.17.4 | Suggestions | {ば/たらどう} | 61 |
| G3.18 | Quotation: performing actions on relative clauses | | 61 |
| G3.18.1 | Direct quotation | 「...」と | 62 |
| G3.18.2 | Indirect quotation | と、って | 62 |
| G3.18.3 | って as a replacement for topic particle は | | 63 |
| G3.19 | Definitions and descriptions with the abstract | という/って (and slang つう) | 63 |
| G3.19.1 | Definition | という | 63 |
| G3.19.2 | Referring to relative clause | という{の/こと and {こう/そう/ああ/どう}いう{の/こと} and って} | 63 |
| G3.19.3 | Rephrasing and refining definitions with | というか、 connector | 65 |
| G3.19.4 | Referring to relative clause with annoyance | つう (slang) | 65 |
| G3.19.5 | Referring to relative clause with exasperation | ってば/ったら (slang) | 65 |
| G3.19.6 | Expressing disagreement or dissatisfaction (whiningly) with | だって | 66 |
| G3.20 | Trialling something out or attempting something | | 66 |
| G3.20.1 | Trialling something out with the auxiliary verb | てみる | 66 |
| G3.20.2 | Attempting something with <v volitional>と{する/<v>} | | 66 |
| G3.21 | Giving and receiving objects and favours | | 67 |
| G3.21.1 | Giving [as a favour] | [て]あげる、[て]やる、[て]くれる | 67 |
| G3.21.2 | Receiving [as a favour] | [て]もらう | 68 |
| G3.21.3 | Soliciting favours (≠ request) with auxiliary verbs | てくれる、てもらえる | 69 |
| G3.22 | Making requests (≠ favours) | | 69 |
| G3.22.1 | Honorific requests with | 〜てください、〜て | 69 |
| G3.22.2 | Casual requests with | 〜ちょうだい。 | 70 |
| G3.22.3 | Polite firm requests with | 〜なさい/〜な | 70 |
| G3.22.4 | Imperative form | | 71 |
| G3.23 | The number system | | 71 |
| G3.23.1 | Numbers smaller than 1 | | 72 |
| G3.23.2 | Dates | | 72 |
| G3.23.3 | Systemic reading changes for counters | | 73 |
| G3.23.4 | Ordinals counters | 〜目/ ^め 第 ^{だい} 〜 | 73 |
| G3.24 | Casual and slang speech | | 73 |
| G3.24.1 | Slang sentence ordering | | 74 |
| G3.24.2 | Seeking positive confirmation with | じゃない and じゃん | 74 |
| G3.24.3 | Showing contempt for an action with auxiliary verb | やがる | 75 |
| G3.24.4 | The ruby{何{なに} mispronunciation and filler word | なんか} | 75 |
| G3.25 | More sentence ending particles | な、さ and gender-specific ones わ、ぞ、ぜ | 75 |
| G3.25.1 | Question particle | かな and gender-specific ones かしら、かい、だい | 76 |
| G3.26 | Example conversations | | 76 |
| G4 | Special expressions | | 78 |
| G4.1 | Causative, passive and causative-passive forms | | 78 |
| G4.1.1 | Causative form | 〜 ^あ せる/す | 78 |
| G4.1.2 | Interlude I: passivisation, direct and indirect/adversative passives | | 79 |
| G4.1.3 | Passive form | 〜 ^あ れる | 80 |
| G4.1.4 | Causative-passive form | 〜 ^あ せられる | 81 |

| | | |
|--------|---|-----|
| G4.2 | Postlude: a deep dive into passivisation in Japanese | 82 |
| G4.2.1 | Introduction into the passive voice ruby{受動態{じゆ どう たい}} | 82 |
| G4.2.2 | Classifications of the passive voice | 82 |
| G4.2.3 | The grammar rules of passives | 84 |
| G4.2.4 | Indirect passives to convey adversative emotions, and involving a third person subject 間接受身のグループ | 87 |
| G4.2.5 | The three passive voice particles に、から、によって | 89 |
| GA | Grammar mega summary | 91 |
| GA.1 | Conjugation rules summary | 91 |
| GA.1.1 | Nouns | 91 |
| GA.1.2 | な-adjectives | 91 |
| GA.1.3 | い-adjectives | 91 |
| GA.1.4 | Verbs | 92 |
| GA.2 | Particle and schema summary | 96 |
| GB | Phrases | 100 |
| GB.1 | I don't know Japanese | 101 |
| SA | 仮名 | 102 |
| SA.1 | 平仮名 (ひらがな) | 102 |
| SA.1.1 | Mnemonics | 102 |
| SA.2 | 片仮名 (カタカナ) | 105 |
| SA.2.1 | Mnemonics | 105 |
| SA.3 | 仮名 Summary | 110 |
| SB | Basic nouns | 115 |
| SB.1 | Numbers | 115 |
| SB.2 | Counting (generic): つ | 116 |
| SB.3 | Counting people: 人 | 117 |
| SB.4 | Counting bus/train stations: 駅 | 117 |
| SB.5 | Counting age: 歳 | 118 |
| SB.6 | Counting thin/flat things: 枚 | 118 |
| SB.7 | Counting thin long things (bottles): 本 | 118 |
| SB.8 | Counting drinks (cups/glasses): 杯 | 119 |
| SB.9 | Counting machines/vehicles: 台 | 119 |
| SB.10 | Counting books: 冊 | 120 |
| SB.11 | Counting clothes: 着 | 120 |
| SB.12 | Counting small things: 個 | 121 |
| SB.13 | Counting shoes and socks: 足 | 121 |
| SB.14 | Counting houses: 軒 | 121 |
| SB.15 | Counting floors: 階 | 122 |
| SB.16 | Counting locations: 箇所 | 122 |
| SB.17 | Counting small animals: 匹 | 123 |
| SB.18 | Counting big animals: 頭 | 123 |
| SB.19 | Counting birds and bats: 羽 | 124 |
| SB.20 | Counting years: 年 | 124 |
| SB.21 | Calendar months and days of a week: 月 and 曜日 | 125 |
| SB.22 | Counting months: ケ月/月 | 125 |
| SB.23 | Days of the month: 日/日/日 | 126 |

| | | |
|-------|---------------------------------------|-----|
| SB.24 | Ordinal days: ~{日/日}自/第~日 | 127 |
| SB.25 | Counting days: {日/日}間 | 128 |
| SB.26 | Counting o'clocks and hours: 時 and 時間 | 129 |
| SB.27 | Counting minutes: 分 | 130 |
| SB.28 | Counting seconds: 秒 | 131 |
| SB.29 | Counting positions: 番 | 131 |
| SB.30 | Counting occurrences: 回 | 132 |
| SB.31 | Counting methods/ways/kinds: 通り | 132 |
| SB.32 | Counting shots/hits/punches: 発 | 133 |
| VA | Interjections and expressions | 134 |
| VA.1 | Greetings | 134 |
| VA.2 | Exclamations | 134 |
| VA.3 | Sentence builders | 136 |
| VB | 普通名詞 (nouns) | 137 |
| VB.1 | Meta: Japanese | 137 |
| VB.2 | Grammatical | 138 |
| VB.3 | Physical | 138 |
| VB.4 | Directions | 138 |
| VB.5 | Navigation | 140 |
| VB.6 | Places | 141 |
| VB.7 | Vehicles | 142 |
| VB.8 | Furniture | 142 |
| VB.9 | Organisms | 142 |
| VB.10 | Food | 143 |
| VB.11 | Small objects: stationery | 144 |
| VB.12 | General objects | 145 |
| VB.13 | Date | 145 |
| VB.14 | Time | 146 |
| VB.15 | Pronouns and question words | 147 |
| VB.16 | Pre-noun adjectivals | 151 |
| VB.17 | Roles and occupations | 152 |
| VB.18 | Family | 155 |
| VB.19 | Body parts | 155 |
| VB.20 | Clothing | 156 |
| VB.21 | Emotions | 157 |
| VB.22 | Production | 158 |
| VB.23 | Sports | 160 |
| VB.24 | Consumption | 160 |
| VB.25 | Interaction | 161 |
| VB.26 | Society and culture | 162 |
| VB.27 | Health | 163 |
| VB.28 | Disasters | 164 |
| VB.29 | Colours | 164 |
| VB.30 | Shapes | 165 |
| VB.31 | Agreeability | 165 |
| VB.32 | Appearance and style | 166 |
| VB.33 | Ability | 166 |

| | | | |
|----|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----|
| | VB.34 | Personalities | 166 |
| | VB.35 | Education and correctness | 167 |
| | VB.36 | Academic fields | 168 |
| | VB.37 | Knowledge, truth and reality | 168 |
| | VB.38 | Courtesy | 170 |
| | VB.39 | Conflict and resolution | 170 |
| | VB.40 | Weapons | 171 |
| | VB.41 | Taste and texture | 171 |
| | VB.42 | Amounts and sizes | 171 |
| | VB.43 | Creatures and divinity | 172 |
| | VB.44 | Nature | 172 |
| | VB.45 | Cosmic | 173 |
| | VB.46 | Physical units | 174 |
| | VB.47 | Hygiene | 176 |
| | VB.48 | Common names | 176 |
| | VB.49 | Character names | 176 |
| VC | けいようし 形容詞 (adjectives) | | 177 |
| | VC.1 | Emotions | 177 |
| | VC.2 | Production | 178 |
| | VC.3 | Consumption | 178 |
| | VC.4 | Health | 178 |
| | VC.5 | Colours | 178 |
| | VC.6 | Agreeability | 179 |
| | VC.7 | Appearance and style | 180 |
| | VC.8 | Ability | 182 |
| | VC.9 | Personalities | 183 |
| | VC.10 | Education and correctness | 184 |
| | VC.11 | Knowledge, truth and reality | 184 |
| | VC.12 | Courtesy | 185 |
| | VC.13 | Conflict and resolution | 185 |
| | VC.14 | Taste and texture | 185 |
| | VC.15 | Amounts and sizes | 186 |
| | VC.16 | Change | 187 |
| VD | どうし 動詞 (verbs) | | 188 |
| | VD.1 | Physical | 188 |
| | VD.2 | Directions | 188 |
| | VD.3 | Clothing | 190 |
| | VD.4 | Emotions | 190 |
| | VD.5 | Production | 191 |
| | VD.6 | Consumption | 192 |
| | VD.7 | Interaction | 193 |
| | VD.8 | Health | 194 |
| | VD.9 | Ability | 195 |
| | VD.10 | Education and correctness | 195 |
| | VD.11 | Knowledge, truth and reality | 195 |
| | VD.12 | Courtesy | 196 |
| | VD.13 | Conflict and resolution | 196 |

| | | | |
|----|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|-----|
| | VD.14 | Change | 197 |
| VE | 副詞と接続詞 (adverbs and conjunctions) | | 198 |
| | VE.1 | Grammatical | 198 |
| | VE.2 | Directions | 198 |
| | VE.3 | Intensity modifiers | 198 |
| | VE.4 | Time | 199 |
| | VE.5 | Attitude | 200 |
| | VE.6 | Emotions | 201 |
| | VE.7 | Appearance and style | 201 |
| | VE.8 | Interaction | 202 |
| | VE.9 | Knowledge, truth and reality | 202 |
| | VE.10 | Ability | 202 |
| | VE.11 | Taste and texture | 203 |
| | VE.12 | Amounts and sizes | 203 |
| | VE.13 | Onomatopoeia | 203 |

0.1 General resources

- Tofugu ひらがな and カタカナ guides
- Dictionaries:
 - ▶ Takoboto Android dictionary
 - ▶ Jisho dictionary (MT)
 - ▶ Jotoba dictionary, an upgraded version of Jisho
 - ▶ bunpro dictionary for JLPT classifications and example sentences
- goo dictionary for synonyms and detailed definitions
- Weblio thesaurus for antonyms
- JLPT 先生 for grammar and 漢字 lists
- Minna no nihongo books (XM)

G1 The writing system

The writing system comprises three scripts: 平仮名 (ひらがな)、片仮名 (カタカナ)、漢字 (かんじ) . For details of the former two scripts, refer to the supplementary PDF.

G1.1 [Interlude] Morphemes, phonemes, phones

This entire section is courtesy of SL.

Phonemes are the smallest unit of mental representation of sound. They do not carry meaning by themselves, but they can alter the meaning pictured by the listener.

Morphemes are the smallest unit of meaning, and comprise two levels: a phonological level and a semantic level. The phonological level states how it is pronounced (a string of phonemes), and the semantic level states what meaning is attached to the phonology.

For instance, 日々 contains a repetition of the same phoneme because the sound and meaning of the two 漢字 are identical. In contrast, 日日 contains two different morphemes, because the sound (and meaning) of the two 漢字 are different!

When determining whether a morpheme is repeated or not, consider the sound and meaning first before looking at the orthography. “Orthography is truly an afterthought[, in the design of languages].”

G1.2 Iteration marks

Read main article on [Wikipedia](#).

Only the (horizontal text) 漢字 iteration mark 々 is commonly used today. It is used to represent a duplicated character representing the same morpheme. For example, 日々 means “daily, day after day”.

Writing 々 instead of repeating the 漢字 is preferred, provided that:

1. (tl;dr: morpheme is repeated) the reading of the repeated 漢字 must be the same, though certain changes are permitted such as *rendaku* (unvoiced consonant becomes voiced, i.e. the dakuten, e.g. in 人々, ひ → び) and *gemination* (consonant lengthening, i.e. the つ, e.g. in 刻々), and
2. the repetition must be within a single word/phrase.

If the above aren't satisfied:

- If repetition isn't repetition of the same morpheme, for disambiguation the second 漢字 is spelt out in 平仮名 (e.g. 日にち).
- If repetition crosses word boundaries, then the 漢字 is repeated (e.g. 民主主義, democracy).

There are exceptions to this! 民主々義 is rarely used but exists. A notable exception is in the signages for neighbourhood associations 「～町内会」. Because the name of neighbourhoods often end in ～町, suffixing with ～町内会 yields ～町町内会, which is then informally abbreviated to ～町々内会, despite the repetition crossing a word boundary.

Interpretations when 々 is used:

- Reduplication (linguistics terminology) to indicate plurality
人々 (people)、日々 (daily/day after day)、山々 (mountains)
- Various alterations in meaning

- ▶ 個 (piece) → 個々 (individually)
- ▶ 時 (time) → 時々 (sometimes)
- ▶ 翌日 (next day, as in 隔天/隔一天 (CN)) → 翌々日 (next next day, as in 隔两天 (CN))

Note that 翌日 is not the same as 明日, just like how 隔天 and 明天 are used in different contexts in CN!

Repetition marks can be typed using commands in Table 1.

Table 1: Miscellaneous keyboard commands. Today, ㄣ, ㄤ, ㄥ and ㄦ only appear in proper names.
As examples, じㄣ = じし and じㄤ = じじ.

| | Keyboard command | Purpose |
|---|------------------|---|
| ㄣ | ㄣ onaji → space* | 平仮名 previous character repeater (enforce without dakuten) |
| ㄤ | ㄤ onaji → space* | 平仮名 previous character repeater (enforce with dakuten) |
| ㄥ | ㄥ onaji → space* | 片仮名 previous character repeater (enforce without dakuten) |
| ㄦ | ㄦ onaji → space* | 片仮名 previous character repeater (enforce with dakuten) |
| 々 | 々 noma → space* | 漢字 previous character repeater (ノ + マ) |

G1.3 漢字

Some preliminary notes:

- There exists over 40000 漢字 but only about 2000 account for >95% of characters actually used in written text.
- There are no spaces in Japanese, so 漢字 is necessary for distinguishing separate words within a sentence, and discriminating between homophones.
- Words that mean practically the same thing can have different 漢字 to distinguish nuances.

Here's an example:

- ▶ 訊く means to ask.
- ▶ 聞く means to listen, or to ask.
- ▶ 聴く means to listen attentively. Preferred when talking about listening to music.

Another example:

- ▶ 見る means to see.
- ▶ 観る means to watch a movie.

Another example:

- ▶ 書く means to write.
- ▶ 描く means to draw.

When depicting/imagining an abstract image (e.g. a scene in a book), we use 描く.

Another example:

- ▶ The different pronunciations 今日, 今日 and 今日 are each preferred in different contexts.

G1.4 Pronunciation

It is not practical to memorise or attempt to logically create rules for pitches, especially since it can change depending on the context or the dialect. Even the intonations provided in dictionaries are there for guidance; they morph when used in different contexts.

The only practical approach is to get the general sense of pitches is by mimicking native Japanese speakers with careful listening and practice.

Some special notes:

- Voiced consonants vibrate the vocal cords, while unvoiced consonants don't (see [Tofugu](#) article).
- In the modern 東京 dialect, ゑ and づ are pronounced exactly the same way: "zu", as expressed in their identical Hepburn romanisation [§G1.5](#).
- When in the middle of words, がぎぐげご may be pronounced with a "ng-" start instead of a "g-" start. This is a regional variation (that's not too uncommon); both ways are acceptable (see [Tofugu](#) article).
- The native Japanese speaker will pronounce the "v" family (ヴ、ヴァ、ヴィ、ヴェ、ヴォ、ヴェュ) as /b/.
- Vowel extensions [§G1.4.1](#) are pronounced as vowel extensions; do not pronounce the extender if it's a different vowel! For example, 先生 is pronounced *sen-se* with an elongated trailing "e" vowel. There is no "i" vowel sound!
- Almost every 漢字 character has two different readings (see [§G1.7](#)):
 - ▶ 音読み: Chinese-derived. Used in compound 漢字 and idioms (both known as 熟語).
 - ▶ 訓読み: native Japanese. Used in solo 漢字, solo 漢字 appended with 送り仮名, adjectives and verbs.

The purpose of trailing 送り仮名 is to preserve the pronunciation of the 漢字, even as the word is conjugated¹ to different forms. It is also used to differentiate transitive and intransitive verbs [§G2.7.1](#).

Note that although sometimes you may see 音読み pronunciations written in 片仮名 and 訓読み pronunciations written in 平仮名, this is only used in dictionaries for differentiation. In standard 振り仮名, only 平仮名 is used.

- The actual readings of 漢字 can change slightly in compound words to make them easier to say (e.g. 一本 is いっぽん instead of いっほん).

When repeating 漢字 using 々, *rendaku* (see [§G1.6](#); unvoiced consonant becomes voiced, i.e. the dakuten, e.g. in 人々, ひ → び) and *gemination* (consonant lengthening, i.e. the っ, e.g. 刻々) may occur.

G1.4.1 Vowel extension

Vowel extensions follow the rules in Table 2. For notes on pronunciation, see [§G1.4](#).

Table 2: Vowel extension rules. Exceptions are bracketed in blue. /a/ is the phoneme representation.

¹Conjugation: change of word form to fit a given context.

| Vowel to extend | Extend by appending | | Example |
|-----------------|---------------------|-----|-------------------------|
| | 平仮名 | 片仮名 | |
| /a/ | あ | | おばあさん、おかあさん |
| /i/ | い | | |
| /u/ | う | ー | |
| /e/ | い (え) | | せんせい、がくせい、(おねえさん) |
| /o/ | う (お) | | きょう、おはよう、(おおきい)、(とおまわり) |

G1.5 Hepburn romanisation

Read main article on [Wikipedia](#).

The official (as of Jan 2024) romanisation system of Japan. There are only a few rules.

Vowel extension (§G1.4.1) When vowels “a”, “e”, “o”, “u” are extended as part of the same morpheme, it is expressed with a macron (overbar), and the extender vowel is dropped. Extension of “i” and the “e+i” combination are exceptions: they remain repeated.

- お婆さん obaasan → obāsan
- 新潟 (city name) niigata
- 数学 suugaku → sūgaku
- お姉さん onesan → onēsan
- 先生 sensei
- 遠回り toomawari → tōmawari
- 勉強 benkyou → benkyō

This does not apply when the repetition crosses word boundaries or morpheme boundaries.

- 邪悪 jaaku
- 灰色 haiiro
- Also for terminal adjectives (???): いい ii
- 湖 mizuumi
- Also for terminal verbs (???): 食う kuu (eat)
- 濡れ縁 nureen (“open veranda (roofed hallway)”)
- 小躍り koodori (dance of joy)
- 仔牛 koushi (calf)
- Also for terminal verbs (???): 迷う mayou (to get lost)

片仮名 loanwords The macron is used iff 「ー」 is used to extend a vowel.

Japanese words adopted into English Common place names like Tokyo, Kyoto and Osaka, while properly romanised as tōkyō, kyōto and ōsaka, are simply romanised as Tokyo, Kyoto and Osaka.

Particles When は、へ、を are used as particles, they are romanised as wa, e and o respectively.

Syllabic ん ん is romanised as n’ (with the apostrophe) if followed immediately by any lone vowel or “y”. This is to disambiguate んあ、んい、んう、んえ、んお、んや、んゆ、んよ (n’a, n’i, n’u, n’e, n’o, n’ya, n’yu, n’yo) from な、に、ぬ、ね、の、にゃ、にゅ、によ (na, ni, nu, ne, no, nya, nyu, nyo) respectively.

Examples: 簡易^{かんい} kan'i (simple), 信用^{しんよう} shin'yō (trust).

Geminated consonants (っ、っ) Double the next consonant, except if “ch” is repeated: in that case we use “tch” instead of “cch”.

Examples: 抹茶^{まっちゃ} maccha → matcha, こっち kocchi → kotchchi

G1.6 Rendaku

Read the main articles on [Tofugu](#).

Rendaku occurs when multiple words join together to form one **compound word**, and the initially unvoiced consonant of a second word becomes a voiced consonant. In written form, the second word's first syllable gains a dakuten/handakuten mark. All dakuten/handakuten-marked characters have voiced consonant beginnings (the “p” sound for handakuten-marked characters are considered to be “semi-voiced”).

Compound words comprise words that can independently exist as words on their own.

Here are some general rendaku rules, though note that exceptions exist:

- Basic conditions:
 1. Two words come together to form a compound word.
 2. The leading consonant of the second word is unvoiced.
 3. The leading consonant of the second word is one of the four sets of characters that can change into a voiced consonant with dakuten or handakuten (“k”, “s”, “t”, or “h”).
 4. Surrounding the leading consonant of the second word are voiced vowels (or sometimes nasals like ん: those do not stop rendaku).

- If the first word ends in つ or ん, the “h” leading consonant of the second word usually rendakus to “p”, “b” otherwise by default.

E.g. 出^{しゅつ} + 発^{はつ} = 出発^{しゅつぱつ}.

E.g. 鉛^{えん} + 筆^{ひつ} = 鉛筆^{えんぴつ}.

- When the second word is of Japanese origin (和語^{わご}), and the basic conditions above are met, then it undergoes rendaku. When the second word is of Chinese origin or a foreign loanword (漢語^{かんご}、外来語^{がいらいご}), rendaku is *usually* prevented (unless the 漢語 is *vulgarised*, meaning it's become so common that it's treated as a 和語 word, which doesn't prevent rendaku).

This is for avoidance of ambiguity in spoken language: 和語 words mostly start with unvoiced consonants, so rendaku makes it clear that a compound word is used instead of two independent words. 漢語 and 外来語 words can and often start with voiced consonants, so rendaku would cause confusion by morphing rendaku-ed words into another different word.

A vulgarised exception is 夫婦^{ふうふ} + 喧嘩^{けんか} = 夫婦喧嘩^{ふうふけんか} (喧嘩 is vulgarised). Other vulgarised words: 会社^{かいしゃ}、写真^{しゃしん}.

- When the first word is a 漢語 (in 漢語 + 和語 compound words, where the first element uses the 音読み reading and the second element uses the 訓読み reading), rendaku can be blocked. A notable example is 「大^{だい}〜」.

In 熟語^{じゅくご} compound words where both constituent words use 音読み, rendaku does not occur in the grand majority of cases.

- Lyman's Law: If the second word has a voiced consonant or handakuten anywhere in it, rendaku does not occur.

This may be explained by the observation that two voiced consonants don't appear together side by side in single 和語 words or phrases.

"Lyman's Law in reverse" says that sometimes, when the second word has a second voiced consonant, that can become unvoiced and the first consonant becomes voiced (rendaku). This is a rarity and won't be discussed further here.

- If voicing in the first word is too close to the second word, rendaku may (50/50) not occur. "Japanese doesn't really like having a bunch of dakuten and handakuten very close to each other."
- In words that come together to mean "X and Y," rendaku does not occur. In English, such words are rare but examples include "bittersweet", "stir-fry" and "sleepwalk".

E.g. 山川 can mean either "mountains and rivers" or "a mountain river". For the former, when both sides are "equal status", rendaku does not happen and it is read 山川^{やまかわ}. For the latter, when the first word is a noun modifier for the second, rendaku happens and it is read 山川^{やまがわ}.

E.g. 白黒^{しろくろ} does not rendaku (white and black are equals), but 色白^{いろしろ} and 色黒^{いろくろ} do (colour is a descriptor of white/black).

- Repeating onomatopoeia do not rendaku.

E.g. キラキラ as the sound of something sparkling/glittering, does not rendaku.

- Certain prefixes block rendaku and certain suffixes resist rendaku.

Blocking prefixes:

- ▶ 半^{はん}〜 (half)
- ▶ 御^お〜/御^み〜 (honorific)

E.g. お手洗^{てあらい}い、御心^{みこころ}

- ▶ 毎^{まい}〜 (every)
- ▶ 一^{ひと}〜 (one)
- ▶ 二^{ふた}〜 (two)
- ▶ 片^{かた}〜 (one-sided)

E.g. 片仮名^{かたかな} (rendaku blocked) vs. 平仮名^{ひらがな} (rendaku happens).

- ▶ 唐^{から}〜 (Chinese)
- ▶ 白^{しろ}〜 (white)
- ▶ 黒^{くろ}〜 (black)

Resisting suffixes:

- ▶ 〜先^{さき} (previous/tip)
- ▶ 〜紐^{ひも} (string/cord)
- ▶ 〜浜^{はま} (beach)
- ▶ 〜姫^{ひめ} (princess)
- ▶ 〜煙^{けむり} (smoke)
- ▶ 〜土^{つち} (dirt)
- ▶ 〜潮^{しお} (tide)
- ▶ 〜血^{けつ} (blood)

・ ~^{した}下 (below)

G1.7 音読み and 訓読み and mixing the two

Read the main article on [Tofugu1](#) and [Tofugu2](#).

G1.7.1 History and why 漢字 is the way it is

According to Tofugu, 漢字 was imported from China via religious texts (which the Japanese appreciated a lot). They merged the Chinese writing system into olden Japanese, but olden Japanese was already established and had its own set of pronunciations. The Japanese decided to adopt Chinese orthography, while co-opting both the Chinese-derived pronunciations (音読み) and the native Japanese pronunciations (訓読み).

While 漢字 words adopted in the above manner have both 音読み and 訓読み readings, some 漢字 words used today only have one:

- Those that only have 音読み readings were imported from China wholesale, either because the concept didn't yet exist in Japanese vocabulary, or because there were multiple incompatible native terms for the concept which cannot be unified properly (back then, Japan wasn't one unified country, but comprised unrelated groups with unique systems of government, and presumably sub-languages).

E.g. 肉 (meat)、材 (lumber)、感 (feeling)、点 (point)、医 (doctor)、茶 (tea)、胃 (stomach)、職 (work)、象 (elephant)、秒 (time second).

- Those that only have 訓読み readings were invented in Japan for a concept that was native to Japan.

E.g. 畑 (field)、姫 (princess)、匂い (fragrant)、峠 (mountain pass)、枠 (frame)、粳 (unhulled rice)、鰯 (sardine)、枳 (horses' chestnut)、込む (to be crowded)、咲く (to bloom).

Furthermore, olden China was always in a state of infighting and changing of powers. As power in China changed, so did the "official" language. The introduction of 漢字 from China to Japan happened over a long period of time, across many Chinese powers and thus many "then-official" versions of the olden Chinese language. This explains why some 漢字 have multiple 音読み readings: Japanese scholars decided to co-opt them as new readings came, without deprecating the "older" readings. (*"There were three major reading adoption periods in the history of the Japanese language: 呉音 (4–6th century; the Wu Dynasty's pronunciation), 漢音 (7–9th century; the Han Dynasty's pronunciation), and 唐音 (1185–1573 the modern day Mandarin Chinese" pronunciation).*)

The presence of multiple 訓読み has a different historical explanation. Spoken Japanese existed before written Japanese. Multiple similar "senses" of a concept (e.g. to raise, to rise, to climb) have different pronunciations in spoken language, but were gathered under the same orthography when the written language was developed (e.g. 「上〜」).

G1.8 When to use 音読み and 訓読み

- (lone 訓読み 漢字: majority) These comprise majority of beginner words found in textbooks. Mostly nouns. 訓読み is used.
- (lone 音読み 漢字: minority) These are characters with significant meaning, and includes things like counters and single 漢字 numbers. 音読み is used.

- (音読み 漢字 compounds: majority; 熟語) These are compound 漢字 words without any trailing 送り仮名. All the constituent 漢字 have Chinese origins and thus 音読み is used.
- (訓読み 漢字 compounds: minority) These are a special class of compound 漢字 and comprise nature concepts (especially the very Japanese ones) and cardinal directions. 訓読み is used for all the constituent 漢字.
- (訓読み 漢字 with trailing 送り仮名) Mostly adjectives and verbs, with the occasional nouns. When trailing 送り仮名 are present, 訓読み is used most of the time.
- (重箱読み 漢字 compounds) These compound 漢字 words take words with mixed origins: the first Chinese-derived and the second Japanese-derived. The first word takes 音読み, the second word takes 訓読み.

E.g. 金色 (gold colour).

- (湯桶読み 漢字 compounds) These compound 漢字 words take words with mixed origins: the first Japanese-derived and the second Chinese-derived. The first word takes 訓読み, the second word takes 音読み.

E.g. 場所 (place), 合気道 (martial arts Aikido).

- (当て字 I: borrow Chinese reading, invent meaning) Part of the precursor to modern-day 平仮名 and 片仮名: 万葉仮名. This archaic orthographic system used (multiple) Chinese characters to represent each Japanese sound.

E.g. 亜米利加 (America; today we use 米国 or アメリカ), 仏蘭西 (France; today we use 仏国 or フランス), 寿司 (sushi), 亜細亜 (Asia; today we use アジア), 珈琲 (coffee; today we use コーヒー), 流石 (as expected; today we use さすが), 沢山 (many; today we use たくさん).

- (当て字 II: borrow Chinese meaning, invent reading) These were adopted when a concept could not yet be expressed directly in the adopted Chinese orthography at the time, but when broken down into simpler concepts, can be expressed using Chinese orthography at the time. The pronunciation follows neither 音読み nor 訓読み of the borrowed Chinese orthography, but instead how the concept would be pronounced in spoken Japanese at the time (that does not later fall into 訓読み).

E.g. 煙草 (Tobacco (smoke + grass); today we use タバコ), 台詞 (speech; today we use セリフ), 南瓜 (Japanese squash/pumpkin; today we use かぼちゃ), 海老 (shrimp; today we use エビ), 海苔 (Japanese seaweed; today we use のり).

- (当て字 III: borrow both Chinese meaning and the associated reading) Sometimes Japanese scholars were able to find Chinese orthography whose meaning and reading were both desired when representing a concept. These are happy coincidences, perhaps.

E.g. 合羽 (raincoat; today we use カッパ), 倶楽部 (club; today we use クラブ), 算盤 (abacus; today we use そろばん), 剃刀 (razor; today we use カミソリ), 田舎 (countryside).

Honestly, any time you see pronunciations that don't fall under 音読み or 訓読み, it's safe to assume they're under 当て字, where things are borrowed and crafted from somewhere else; it's a bit unclear and the concept is probably even more complicated than what Tofugu presents (which is an incomplete overview): some of the pronunciations in 当て字 III come from nowhere.

- (lone 外来語 漢字) These are foreign loanwords that attained their own 漢字. These are units of measure (e.g. metric system) and common words. These readings have been adopted into 訓読み.

E.g. ^{メートル}米 (metres; today we use メートル or ^{トル}トル), ^{ページ}頁 (page; today we use ページ or ^{ページ}ページ), ^{ゼロ}零 (zilch; today we use ゼロ).

Finally, there's the bizarre class of Japanese names (名^の乗り) which we best leave untouched here.

G2 Basic grammar

This section will grant you an overview of basic grammatical structures. The vocabulary associated with this section is fragmented by nature and only present to illustrate the grammatical concepts; vocabulary required for day-to-day conversation is left to §G3.

Some preliminary notes:

- The articles “the” and “a” do not exist in Japanese.
- Japanese does not distinguish between a future action and a general statement (e.g. “I will go to the store” vs. “I go to the store”).

G2.1 Building clauses and sentences

Read the main article on [Tofugu](#).

Essential clause elements are necessary parts of any clause. In 日本語, the only essential clause element is the **predicate**, which is the information about the subject (which is often omitted if clear from context). Concretely, the predicate is either a clause-trailing verb (e.g. 「食べる。」 is a complete sentence) or an [implied] state-of-being (e.g. 「学生[だ]。」 is a complete sentence). In contrast, in English, both subject and predicate are essential to every valid clause.

Non-essential clause elements add complexity to the conveyed meaning. There are multiple:

- An **object** is the element of a clause acted upon by a transitive verb (§G2.7.1). It is suffixed by を, the object marker particle.

A **direct object** is the person or thing that directly receives the action or effect of the verb. It answers the question “what” or “whom”. (**CAUTION:** Using the “The subject verbed what?” as a test for transitivity is **not foolproof** and doesn’t always work! It’s merely a crutch. This is because certain verbs that are purely transitive in English can be expressed intransitively in Japanese (and vice versa). An **indirect object** answers the question “for what”, “of what”, “to what”, “for whom”, “of whom”, or “to whom” and accompanies a direct object. (Source)

E.g. お寿司を作る。 (Make sushi.)

- A **subject** is the entity that controls the verb in a clause. It is suffixed by が, the subject marker particle.

E.g. お父さんがお寿司を作る。 (My father makes sushi.)

- A **topic**. This is NOT to be confused with a subject. In English. It is suffixed by は, the topic-binding particle. For further details, see §G2.2.

E.g. 毎週日曜日はお父さんがお寿司を作る。 (Every Sunday, my father makes sushi.; 日曜日: Sunday.)

- An **adverbial** provides information about the circumstances surrounding a sentence, such as the who, what, when, where, why and how. It is suffixed by the に and で particles.

E.g. 毎週日曜日はお父さんが台所でお寿司を作る。 (Every Sunday, my father makes sushi in the kitchen.; 台所: kitchen.)

- A sentence final particle adds nuance to the sentence. の adds an explanatory nuance (§G2.10.4). よ adds an informational nuance (§G2.12). ね adds an agreement-expecting nuance (§G2.12).

E.g. 毎週日曜日はお父さんが台所でお寿司を作るの。(Every Sunday, my father makes sushi in the kitchen.)

Japanese is primarily an SOV language, but this order is fluid and can be switched up to convey different emphases. We may bring parts-of-speech forwards to the beginning of sentences for emphasis. We may bring parts-of-speech backwards to the end of sentences to tuck away and de-emphasise information. This is possible due to the case-marking particles.

Complex sentences can be formed by linking clauses using **conjunctive particles** (e.g. から (therefore), ので, けど, なら), which makes the connection (e.g. the therefore relationship) more explicit, or the **conjugation** of verbs and い-adjectives (e.g. the てる form), which de-emphasises the connection. Apart from linking clauses, **embedding clauses** is also possible, typically used via **direct quotation** (using optional 「」 marks, or ～と言いました (said).), **indirect quotation** (using ～と思う; the と particle acts like a spoken quotation mark) and **noun modification by adjective-clauses**.

G2.2 Topics vs. subjects: は、が particles

(Read discussion on [Reddit](#), and Tofugu pages for [clauses and sentences](#), [は](#), [が](#), and [their differences](#).)

G2.2.1 Subject as part-of-speech, topic as meta-concept

The subject and topic of a sentence is hard to distinguish from an English perspective, since in English, the subject is also the topic by default. However, in Japanese, they are not necessarily the same. Whereas the subject can change from clause to clause, the topic can remain the same across numerous clauses (spanning a phrase, sentence or even paragraph). Note that the topic is not a grammatical part-of-speech! The topic is the theme of discourse.

G2.2.2 は particle: the topic marker

は roughly translates to “as for” in English, but is used far more often than “as for”.

は casts **focus/spotlight on a topic**, and **implicitly conveys the idea that other potential topics are cast aside**. This strength of this **implicit contrast** depends on context and usage, specifically how unusual it is to see は used in place of case-marking particles. Here is an illustration of the implicit contrast:

- コーヒーを飲みますか? The を particle singles out coffee as the object (which the verb 飲み acts upon) of the question.
- コーヒーは飲みますか? The は particle shines the spotlight on coffee, but implies the existence of other drinks. The speaker may be talking about other drinks, then moved the conversation to coffee. The speaker may want to offer coffee but imply the availability of other options.

The topic is always something already in the listener’s consciousness. Therefore, in clauses containing は, emphasis is placed on the new information following the particle は.

Here are its various purposes:

は as a topic marker Suffixed to a noun-phrase which is the intended topic.

Examples (topic is bolded):

- 日本語は面白い。(Japanese is interesting.)

- これは何ですか？ (What's this?; なに is known from context; “this”)
- ^{なつ}夏は日本へ行くつもりです。 (I plan to go to Japan in the summer.; つもり: plan/intention; the speaker assumed that the listener doesn't know that they were planning to go to Japan.)

日本へ行くのはいつですか？ (When is it that you're going to Japan?; の turns the verb into a noun-phrase; いつ: when)

は for contrasting two topics This happens when two (or more) topics are used in the same sentence.

Examples (topic is bolded):

- E.g. **東京**は物価が高いけど、**田舎**は物価が安い。 (Tokyo has a high cost of living, but the countryside has a low cost of living.; 物価: cost of living; 田舎: countryside; 安い: cheap).
- E.g. **お肉**は食べないけど、**魚**は食べるよ。 (I don't eat meat, but I do eat fish.)

If the effect of contrast isn't required, then が is usually used instead:

- E.g. **東京**が物価が高い。 (The cost of living of Tokyo is high.)
- E.g. **お肉**は食べない。 (I don't eat meat, (but...))

は in middle of negative い-adjectives to add implicit/explicit nuance/spotlight The added nuance is like that of “while”/“although”/“that's not the whole story”, and the clause containing は X い is typically followed by a clause adding continuation (though not compulsory, if the nuance's content is implied).

E.g. 日本語は難しくない。 (Japanese is not difficult.)

E.g. 日本語は難しく**は**ない[けど、ただ時間がかかる]。 (It's not (exactly) difficult, it's just time-consuming.; かかる: take a resource)

E.g. 日本語は難しく**は**ありませんか、時間がかかります。 (It's not (exactly) difficult, it's just time-consuming.; formal language)

E.g. 日本語は難しく**は**あるけど、面白い。 (It is difficult, but it's also fun.; ある: exist, opposite of ない)

は in middle of negative nouns and な-adjectives to add implicit/explicit nuance/spotlight Similar effect to the above.

E.g. 有名**で**はない[が、人気はある]。 (They're not (exactly) famous, but they are popular.; 有名: famous; 人気: popularity; They're not exactly famous, but they are popular.)

E.g. 先生**で**はありませんが、説明が上手な人です。 (They're not (actually) a teacher, but they are really good at explaining things.)

人気 is a noun that is typically used as 人気がある or 人気がない. 人気じゃない is possible, means the same thing, but is colloquial.

These are examples of the **compound particle** では.

は incompatible with question words, but commonly used in answers は cannot be suffixed to question words like 誰, 何 and どこ (except special circumstances). The topic is always something that is already in the listener's consciousness: it isn't unknown! Instead, question words are suffixed by が, を, etc. depending on their role in the sentence.

It is however common to answer such questions は to establish the now known topic.

E.g. 誰がいましたか？ (Who was there?)

E.g. 誰が^{やまだ}山田さんですか？山田さんはあの人です。(Who is Yamada-san? That's Yamada-san.)

は suffix in compound particles to add implicit/explicit nuance/spotlight When forming compound particles, は cannot be suffixed to も, が or を.

- は can either “replace” に or become には.

E.g. 日本に^い行ったことがある。(I've been to Japan; neutral statement.)

E.g. 日本^にには行ったことがある。(I've been to Japan; + implicit comparison with other countries, perhaps I've never been to those.) (は is more casual than には.)

E.g. 台^{だい}所^{どころ}で犬^{いぬ}が吠^ほえています。(The dog is barking in the kitchen; neutral statement.)

E.g. 台所^ででは犬が吠えています。(The dog is barking in the kitchen; + implicit comparison with other locations.)

E.g. 弟^{おとうと}と映画館^{えいが かん}に行きました。(I went to the movies with my younger brother; neutral statement.)

E.g. 弟^ととは映画館に行きました。(I went to the movies with my younger brother; with focus cast on brother, and implicit nuance that we don't know who else I did or didn't go with.)

は to convey hesitation Usually prefixed to ね to form the compound particle はね in such scenarios.

E.g. お寿司は^ね... (Hmm, sushi...)

は for changing scenes The speaker can intentionally break the conversation's storyline or momentum to emphasise something. This is done by repeating and re-shining the spotlight on the topic, even though it's already obvious to the listener.

E.g. 昨日^{きのう}は^{お兄ちゃん}が勉強を教えてくれた。まず、英語の勉強を教えてくれて、それから^{こくご}国語の勉強だった。でも、算数^{さんすう}の宿題^{しゅくだい}をしている途中^{とちゅう}に、お兄ちゃんはゲームを始めた。(Yesterday, my big brother helped me study. To start with, he helped me with English, and then with Japanese. But he started playing a game while we were in the middle of doing my math homework; focus/topic shifted from brother teaching to brother playing game.)

Softening implicit comparison with comma 、 (in writing only) This is commonly done with time phrases such as 来週^{らいしゅう}、先月^{せんげつ}、今年^{ことし}.

E.g. 今年^{ことし}、日本に行くんです。(This year I'm going to Japan.)

E.g. 日本語、面白い。(Japanese is interesting.)

E.g. 少し、食べました。(I ate a little.)

Note that は is NOT a case-marking particle, whose job is to mark the grammatical role an element plays in a sentence. Instead, it binds a sentence to some known context. “は tells us nothing about the grammatical role the item it marks plays in a sentence, it only establishes that item as the context under which the rest of the sentence holds true. So any word or phrase can become the topic, regardless of whatever grammatical role it plays otherwise. So the topic can be the subject, or the topic can be the direct object, or the topic can be the indirect object, or an adverb, etc. The topic can be anything.”

Also note that は cannot be used in adjective phrases if there is no contrast involved:

- ジェニー[の/が/は]落ちた学校に私は受かった。(I was accepted by the school that Jenny failed to get into.)
- ジェニー[の/が]落ちた学校にわたしも落ちた。(は is illegal here because there is no contrast!)

G2.2.3 が particle

Read the main article on [Tofugu](#).

が is simply the grammatical subject marker particle. が is suffixed to noun phrases. It “points a finger at” the subject of a sentence, and implicitly puts emphasis on that subject (making it clear nothing else is the subject).

E.g. あの犬[が]吠えた。(That dog barked.)

E.g. 誰か[が]いる。(Someone’s here.)

E.g. この納豆[が]おいしい。(This natto is delicious.)

The subject is often omitted if clear. In fact, inclusion of the subject in cases where it’s usually omitted brings about a kind of emphasis (e.g. “Did our dog do something to you? *Your* dog barked.”).

Sometimes, が itself is omitted instead, especially in spoken context. There is no change to the level of emphasis. This is up to personal preference. However, if the clause carries the meaning of singling out a particular member from a crowd, then が cannot be omitted: ジェニーが犯人だ。

G2.3 Prelude: Basic grammatical structures

Conjugation is the change in **verb** or **い-adjective** form to fit contexts.

- うん、ううん: informal yes/no
- でも: but

G2.4 Expressing state-of-being

There is no “to be” (is, are, was, were, am) in Japanese.

- だ: declarative/assertive present state-of-being, suffixed to nouns and な-adjectives only.

An “assertive” marker. Using it without a communicative particle like よ or ね would sound standoff-ish and abrupt (i.e. rude) in spoken Japanese. A sentence ending with だ wouldn’t sound like something that’s used in an actual conversation, and is only natural in select cases:

- ▶ inside of indirect quotations (when paraphrasing what someone else said).

E.g. 人間は火星に住めないと思う。(I don’t think that humans can live on Mars.)

E.g. 近所の人から桜が満開だと教えてもらった。(A neighbour told me that the cherry blossoms were in full bloom.)

- ▶ when you find or notice something

E.g. あ、[雪/雨/虹]だ! (Ah, it’s snowing/a rainbow!)

E.g. あ、電話だ。(Ah, it’s my phone.)

- ▶ when you feel strongly about something

E.g. 有名なアイドルのこと写真撮ったんだ！ (I took a picture with a famous idol! 撮る: to take a picture, variant of 取る.)

E.g. 本当だ！ (It's true!)

E.g. はあ、明日は漢字のテストだ。 (Ahh, there is a Kanji test tomorrow.)

- じゃない: negative present state-of-being, suffixed to nouns and な-adjectives only.
- だった: past state-of-being, suffixed to nouns and な-adjectives only.
- じゃなかった: negative past state-of-being, suffixed to nouns and な-adjectives only.

E.g. 元気？元気[だ]。 (Greeting and response)

E.g. 元気じゃない / 元気だった / 元気じゃなかった。

G2.5 Starter particles は、も、が

For は and が, see §G2.2.

- は: introductory topic marker “as for/about”, suffixed to the topic you’re introducing.

Unless you’re making a comparison, you usually do not use more than one は in a sentence (see discussion on [StackOverflow](#)).

E.g. アリスは学生？うん、学生。 (Alice, are you a student? Yeah, I am.)

E.g. 今日は試験だ。ジョンは？ジョンは明日。 (Today is exam. What about John? His exam is tomorrow.)

- も: inclusive topic marker (“also”), suffixed to the topic you’re including.

E.g. アリスは学生？うん、トムも学生。 (Alice, are you a student? Yeah, and Tom is a student too.)

E.g. アリスは学生？うん、でもトムは学生じゃない。 (Alice, are you a student? Yeah, but Tom is not a student.; **it is incorrect to use も here, as it is not inclusive with the positive state-of-being!**)

E.g. アリスは学生？うん、トムも学生じゃない。 (Alice, are you a student? Nope, and Tom is also not a student.)

- が: identifier/subject marker “the one”, suffixed to a question or the identified. Used when the topic is unknown, and you are either asking for what the topic is, or identifying what the topic is.

E.g. 誰が学生？私が学生。 (Who the one student? Me the one student.)

G2.6 Adjectives

Adjectives (adjective phrases) modify a noun that comes after it.

- な-adjectives: act like nouns and use the same particle rules as in §G2.5. Use な to directly modify the noun that comes after な, only in the present-positive case.

E.g. 静かな人、きれいな人。 (Quiet person, pretty person.)

E.g. 友達は親切。 (Friend is kind.) 友達は親切な人だ。 (Friend is kind person.)

E.g. ボブは何が好き[じゃない/だった/じゃなかった]? (What does/doesn't/did/didn't Bob like?) ボブは魚が好き[だ/じゃない/だった/じゃなかった]。(Bob likes/doesn't like/liked/didn't like fish.)

E.g. 魚が[好きな/好きじゃない/好きだった/好きじゃなかった]人。(Person that likes/does not like/liked/did not like fish.) The entire clause before 人 is an adjective.

E.g. 魚が好きじゃない人は、肉が好きだ。(Person who doesn't like fish likes meat.)\ E.g. 魚が好きな人は、野菜も好きだ。(Person who likes fish also likes wild vegetables.)

- い-adjectives: always end with 平仮名「い」 that is not part of a 漢字 word's pronunciation: it must literally be a 平仮名「い」. As examples, 好き、きれい (綺麗)、きらい (嫌い) are all not い-adjectives; they are な-adjectives. 嫌い being a な-adjective has to do with 嫌い being derived from the verb 嫌う. **REVISIT FUTURE**

Do not attach the だ suffix to い-adjectives, just as you don't use だ with じゃない。な is not applicable for い-adjectives: there is no need for any attachments.

E.g. 値段^{ねだん}が高い^{たか}レストランはあまり好きじゃない。(I don't really like expensive restaurants.)²

Regarding conjugation, one い-adjective family is an exception: いい. Historically, the word for good changed over time from 良^よい to いい, but conjugations are still take 良^よい as the base. Same applies to 格^{かつ}好^こいい, which takes 格^{かつ}好^こ良^よい as the base.

Table 3 shows the conjugations and usage syntax for な- and い- adjectives.

Table 3: Adjective conjugations. I purposely use よかった instead of 良かった (and their variants) here to show that you can use either; it's up to personal preference. I personally prefer the use of 漢字 (i.e. 良かった) because it can be more specific and it's easier to read (in that at a glance, it's easier to derive meaning from 漢字's widely varying word shapes, compared to a sea of 平仮名 characters). **Note however that 良^よい is usually written in 仮名 alone when used as part of conjugations, as in this table.**

| | Positive | Negative |
|---------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| Present | <na-adj>な<nn> | <na-adj>じゃない<nn> |
| | <i-adj root>い <nn> | <i-adj root>くない <nn> |
| | いい <nn> | よくない <nn> |
| | かっこいい <nn> | かっこよくない <nn> |
| Past | <na-adj>だった<nn> | <na-adj>じゃなかった<nn> |
| | <i-adj root>かった <nn> | <i-adj root>くなかった<nn> |
| | よかった <nn> | よくなかった<nn> |
| | かっこよかった <nn> | かっこよくなかった <nn> |

G2.7 Verbs

Read the main article regarding verb classes and conjugations on [Tofugu](#).

²あまり is typically used as an intensifier modifier for negative adjectives: "don't really, 25-50%". It can also be used as a modifier for positive adjectives, excessive^{かた}, but in those cases it must be trailing: 食べるあまり、悲しさのあまり。(MT)

Verbs always come at the end of clauses.

Verbs are categorised into three groups, as shown in Table 4. Be flexible: all these terms are used in different textbooks and dictionaries. Thankfully, they are easy to remember, along with the observation that there are way more Group I verbs than Group II verbs, and there are only two Group III verbs (or up to a dozen, depending on how you count them).³

Table 4: Verb classifications. *There isn't a Japanese term for exception verbs; する and 来る are the only members of the 不規則動詞 subclass.

| | Group 1 | Group 2 | Group 3 |
|----------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| | Pentagrade verb ごだんどうし 五段動詞 | Monograde verb いちだんどうし 一段動詞 | Irregular verb ふきそくどうし 不規則動詞* |
| Synonyms | Godan verb | Ichidan verb | Special class |
| | Group I verb | Group II verb | Group III verb |
| | う-verb | る-verb | Exception verb |
| | Consonant-root/stem verb | Vowel-root/stem verb | - |

In a nutshell, **る-verbs is the class of almost all -iru/-eru verbs**. Exceptions include 帰る、切る、知る which are う-verbs.

Conjugations for verbs are the most complicated among all parts-of-speech, and are shown in Table 6.

The reason for the class names are as such:

- う-verbs all end with the ～う sound. As う-verbs conjugate, the ending ～う sound shifts through all five vowels ～あ (negative)、～い (polite)、～う (dict)、～え (potential)、～お (volitional), thus the name 五段 (five-level).

Conjugation of verbs occurs at the phonological level (sounds of the language), which transcends the abilities of the orthography. The **root/stem** of verbs stops at the terminal consonant, thus the name consonant-root/stem. (E.g. the root of 聞く is /kik/ and this remains unchanged through conjugations!)

- る-verbs all end with the る character. As る-verbs conjugate, the る character is replaced for other endings. The **root/stem** (the part before the る ending) remains unchanged through conjugations and doesn't cycle through the five vowels, thus the name 一段 (one-level). The root/stem stops at the terminal vowel, thus the name vowel-root/stem. (E.g. the root of 食べる is /tabe/ and this remains unchanged through conjugations!)

Since there is no consensus on the definitions of root/stem, I'll use "root" to refer to /kik/, and "stem" to refer to the stem form 聞き.

G2.7.1 Transitive and intransitive verbs

Read the main article on [Tofugu](#).

A **transitive verb** takes a direct object, while an **intransitive verb** does not take a direct object. A **direct object** is the person or thing that directly receives the action or effect of the

³Mnemonic I'm using: Group I is the most superior; 五段 is superior to 一段; う comes before る in the 平仮名 alphabet chart.

verb. It answers the question “what” or “whom”. (**CAUTION:** Using the “The subject verbed what?” as a test for transitivity is **not foolproof** and doesn’t always work! It’s merely a crutch. This is because certain verbs that are purely transitive in English can be expressed intransitively in Japanese (and vice versa). An **indirect object** answers the question “for what”, “of what”, “to what”, “for whom”, “of whom”, or “to whom” and accompanies a direct object.} (Source)

Some verbs have two forms: transitive and intransitive. These two forms sometimes have different pronunciations. I guess it comes down to experience. Examples shown in Table 5.

There are no easy tricks to tell whether a verb is transitive or not. There are no simple rules that say a particular 送り仮名 implies a certain transitivity. Japanese verbs are a mess!

DO NOT confuse transitivity with passiveness. English dictionaries like to define verbs using the “to ...” construct, and this is carried over to English-Japanese dictionaries. Intransitive verbs are often defined using passive voice, but

passive voice \nRightarrow verb is intransitive
verb is intransitive \nRightarrow passive voice

A counterexample to the first implication is “The apple was eaten.”. Here, “eat” is transitive (the direct object is the apple, and the subject, now oblique/non-obligatory, is omitted)! A counterexample to the second implication is “I slept”. Here, “sleep” is intransitive, and active voice is used.

Thus we can’t use the passive voice as a marker for intransitivity. In fact, in Japanese, the passive voice has a conjugation of its own, which applies for both transitive and intransitive verbs (yes, intransitive verbs in Japanese can take passive voice too, §G4.1.2). Take special care NOT to interpret the passive voice “to be ...” (endemic to English definitions) in §GA.1.4 as equivalent to intransitivity. **Transitivity and passiveness are intertwined (SL) but remain independent concepts.**

In fact, in English only and not in Japanese, the converse of the two implications above are true, because intransitive verbs do not have a passive form, due to the lack of objects (and thus no object to promote to subject role, which is part of passivisation).

passive voice \Rightarrow verb is transitive
verb is intransitive \Rightarrow active voice

(In fact these two are now contrapositives, i.e. they convey the same meaning.)

Table 5: Example transitive verbs and their intransitive counterparts.

| Transitive | Meaning | Intransitive | Meaning |
|------------|-------------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|
| 起こす | to pick up | 起きる | to rise |
| 落とす | to drop | 落ちる | to fall |
| 入れる | to put in | 入る | to enter/go in |
| 出す | to take out | 出る | to exit/come out |
| 開ける | to open | 開く | to open |
| 閉める | to close | 閉まる | to close |
| つける | to turn on (lights/appliance) | つく | to turn on (lights/appliance) |

| Transitive | Meaning | Intransitive | Meaning |
|-----------------|--------------------------------|------------------|--------------------------------|
| 消す ^け | to turn off (lights/appliance) | 消える ^き | to turn off (lights/appliance) |
| 刺す ^さ | to pierce | 刺さる ^さ | to pierce |
| 抜く ^ぬ | to pull out/extract | 抜ける ^ぬ | to fall out/extract |

G2.8 Nouns, adjectives, verbs conjugation summary

Table 6 shows all the conjugation rules we've seen so far.

Table 6: Basic conjugation rules, for nouns, adjectives and verbs. [] means optional; 「」 is a dictionary-form placeholder; green means additive (without modifying the dictionary-form); blue means substitutive (modifies the dictionary-form); red means exception.

| Category | Positive | | Negative | | Examples |
|------------------|----------|---------|----------|-----------|-------------------|
| | Present | Past | Present | Past | |
| Noun/な-adjective | 「」 [だ] | 「」 だった | 「」 じゃない | 「」 じゃなかった | 学生、友達 |
| な-adjective | 「」 な | 「」 だった | 「」 じゃない | 「」 じゃなかった | 元気、綺麗、好き、嫌い |
| い-adjective | 「」 い | 「」 かった | 「」 くない | 「」 くなかった | 嬉しい、気持ち悪い、難しい |
| | いい | よかった | よくない | よくなかった | |
| | かっこいい | かっこよかった | かっこよくない | かっこよくなかった | |
| う-verb | 「」 す | 「」 した | 「」 さない | 「」 さなかった | 話す、出す |
| | 「」 く | 「」 いた | 「」 かない | 「」 かなかった | 聞く、書く、描く |
| | 行く | 行った | 行かない | 行かなかった | |
| | 「」 ぐ | 「」 いだ | 「」 がない | 「」 がなかった | 泳ぐ |
| | 「」 む | 「」 んだ | 「」 まない | 「」 まなかった | 飲む、読む、盗む |
| | 「」 ね | 「」 んだ | 「」 ない | 「」 なかった | 死ぬ |
| | 「」 ぶ | 「」 んだ | 「」 ばない | 「」 ばなかった | 遊ぶ |
| | 「」 る | 「」 った | 「」 らない | 「」 らなかった | 知る、切る、帰る、走る、降る |
| | ある | あった | ない | なかった | |
| | 「」 つ | 「」 った | 「」 たない | 「」 たなかった | 待つ |
| | 「」 う | 「」 った | 「」 わない | 「」 わなかった | 買う、会う |
| る-verb | 「」 る | 「」 た | 「」 ない | 「」 なかった | いる、食べる、出る、見る* |
| Exception verb | 「」 する | 「」 した | 「」 しない | 「」 しなかった | 勉強する、楽しみにする、質問をする |
| | 来る | 来た | 来ない | 来なかった | |

G2.9 Verb particles を、に、へ、で

- を: direct object marker, suffixed to the target object of transitive verbs.

E.g. 魚を食べる。(Eat fish.)

E.g. ジュースを飲んだ。(Drank juice.)

Direct objects can be **places** in Japanese too, since the motion verb is done *to* the place.

This is the only exception where を can be used for intransitive verbs. <location>を<motion verb> expresses the meaning that the motion verb is performed to traverse the location.

E.g. 街をぶらぶら歩く。(Aimlessly walk through town.; ぶらぶら: aimlessly, 歩く: walk (intransitive)).

E.g. 高速道路を走る。(Run through expressway.; 走る: run (intransitive))

Invisible を in <noun>をする: する (do) can be suffixed to nouns, and the を while technically needed, is optional.

E.g. 毎日、日本語を勉強をする。(Study Japanese everyday.; 勉強をする)

E.g. メールアドレスを登録^{とうろく}した。(Registered email address.; 登録^{とうろく}をする)

- に: target marker, suffixed to the target (physical or abstract) of any verb (transitive or non-transitive). The target is emphasised as the final destination. The notion of a “target” is not restricted to motion verbs; the location of objects is the target of the verbs for existence (ある and いる); time (e.g. today, last week) is also a common target.

% E.g. ボブは日本に行った。(Bob went to Japan.)

E.g. 家^{いえ}に帰らない。(Not go back home.; 家^{いえ} means home, 家^{うち} means own home.)

% E.g. 部屋^{へや}に来る。(Come to room.)

E.g. 椅子^{いす}が台所^{だいどころ}にあった。(Chair was in the kitchen.)

E.g. 猫は部屋にいる。(Cat is in room.)

E.g. いい友達^{ともだち}に会^あった。(Met good friend; past tense of 会^あう.)

E.g. ジムは医者^{いしや}になる。(Jim will become doctor; なる: become)

E.g. 先週^{せんしゅう}に図書館^{としょかん}に行った。(Went to library last week.)

When suffixed to time, に is not always required. Its presence emphasises a “promise” element to the target. To remove this emphasis, use 「、」 instead.

E.g. 友達^{ともだち}は、来年^{らいねん}に日本に行く。(Friend go to Japan next year.)

To mean “from”, use the 「から」 from-marker particle.

E.g. アリスは、アメリカ^きから来た。(Alice came from America.; past tense of 来る^{くる})

The start and end can be specified with 「<from>から<to>まで」.

E.g. 宿題^{しゅくだい}を今日^{けふ}から明日^{あした}までする。(cWill do homework from today to tomorrow.)

- へ: direction marker, suffixed to direction of verbs (transitive or non-transitive). Pronounced え. Unlike に, which specifies target/destination, へ specifies the general direction we're heading towards, from the starting point. Also, unlike に, it does not guarantee that the target is the final destination. へ is restricted to verbs with a physical direction (in the physical or abstract sense) like 行く、来る、向かう; verbs like なる (become) have no direction associated with it and so clauses containing なる as the trailing verb cannot use へ!

E.g. 部屋^{へや}{に/*へ*}来る。(Come {towards/to} room.)

E.g. 勝ち^{かち}へ向かう。(Go towards victory.)

- で: context marker; “by way of”. It provides supplementary context: where, what, how.

E.g. 映画館^{えいがかん}で見た。(Saw at movie theatre.)

E.g. バスで帰る。(Go home by bus.)

E.g. レストランで昼^{ひる}ご飯を食べた。(Ate lunch at restaurant.)

Note that を can only be used with transitive verbs, unless the direct object is the **location** of an intransitive motion verb, as mentioned above when introducing 「を」.

E.g. 私が電気^{でんき}をつけた。(I turned on the lights; past tense of つける)

E.g. 電気^けを消す。(Turn off the lights.)

E.g. 電気がついた。(The lights turned on; **incorrect to use を here as つく is intransitive and doesn't have any active agent**)

E.g. 電気が消えた。(The lights turned off; past tense of 消える; **incorrect to use を here as 消える is intransitive and doesn't have any active agent**)

E.g. 誰が窓を開けた? (Who opened the window?; 窓: window)

E.g. 窓がどうして開いた? (Why did the window open?; past tense of 開く; **incorrect to use を here as 開く is intransitive and doesn't have any active agent**)

E.g. 部屋を出た。(past tense of 出る)

G2.9.1 なにで and なんで in questions

“What” is expressed as **なに**. “Why” is expressed as どうして (proper)、なぜ (forceful/formal)、**なん****で** (colloquial). Note that **なん****で** has nothing to do with the で particle; it is a completely separate word.

When asking a question as a speaker, use the correct one: なにで for “what”, and なんで for “why”. When reading written text, obtain context from the answer. **As a general rule of thumb, asking why (なんで) is much more common.**

E.g. 何で来た? バスで来た。(Came by way of what? Came by way of bus.) (So in this case, the question is read なにで来た?)

E.g. 何で来た? 暇だから。(Why did you come? Because I am free.) (So in this case, the question is read なんで来た?)

Note that だから here has got nothing to do with から as in “from”, we’ll see this later in compound sentences (§G3.6.3).

G2.9.2 Compound particles には、にも、へは、へも、では、でも to set location topic

に、へ、で can be suffixed with は/も to set the topic/inclusive topic when the location becomes a topic.

E.g. 学校に行った? 行かなかった。図書館には? 図書館にも行かなかった。
(Did you go to school? Didn't go. What about library? Also didn't go to library.)

E.g. どこで食べる? イタリアレストランでは思う? (Eat where? How about Italian restaurant?; 思う: think)

G2.9.3 Particle は to set direct object topic

を cannot form compound particles. To set direct object as topic, simply use は.

E.g. 日本語{を/は}習う。(Learn Japanese.; **It is incorrect to use をは; that compound particle doesn't exist.**)

G2.10 Noun modification

な-adjectives and い-adjectives can be used to modify a following noun, using “connectors” like {な、じゃない、だった、じゃなかった} and {の、くない、かった、くなかった} respectively.

Verbs and nouns too can be used to modify a following noun.

G2.10.1 Relative verb clauses as adjectives: verbs modifying following nouns

Relative verb clauses (verb phrases) can be directly used to modify nouns.

- (present-positive) ボブは、いつも勉強する人だ。(Bob is a person who always studies.)
- (present-negative) 赤いズボンを買った友達はボブだ。(Friend who buy red pants is Bob.;
ズボン: pants)
- (past-positive) 先週に映画を見た人は誰？(Who is person who watched movie last week?)
- (past-negative) 晩ご飯を食べなかった人は、映画で見た銀行に行った。(Person who did not
eat dinner went to the bank she saw at the movie.)

G2.10.2 Noun chain

A string of present-positive nouns is grammatically correct only if they are not meant to modify each other.

E.g. 国際教育センタ (International Education Centre)、登場人物 (stage character)、立入禁止
(no entry/trespassing)、通勤手当 (travel allowance).

G2.10.3 Noun phrases as adjectives: nouns modifying following nouns

Present-positive modifiers require noun-related particles (と、や、とか、の, see §G2.10.4). The other three tenses (present-negative, past-positive, past-negative) can directly modify nouns without any additional particle.

- (present-negative) 学生じゃない人は、学校に行かない。(Person who is not a student do not go to school.)
- (past-positive) 先週医者だったボブは、仕事を辞めた。(Bob who was a doctor last week quit his job.)
- (past-negative) 友達じゃなかったアリスは、いい友達になった。(Alice who was not a friend, became a good friend.)

G2.10.4 Noun-related particles と、や、とか、の

Noun-related particles are used to connect nouns together.

- と: inclusive noun connector (exclusive listing or together-with). It is used *between nouns in a list, not as a marker at the end of each noun*. It is similar to 「も」 in terms of *inclusivity*. It can also be used to show an action was done together with something or someone.

E.g. 本と雑誌と葉書を買った。(Bought book, magazine and postcard.)

E.g. 友達と話した。(Talked with friend.)

E.g. 先生と会った。(Met with teacher.)

- や: noun vague listing connector. Similar to と, it is used *between nouns in a list, not as a marker at the end of each noun*, with the implied meaning that the list is non-exhaustive, and some items on the list may not apply. In English, this is like the “and/or, etc.” constructs.

E.g. 飲み物やカップやナプキンは、いらない？(You don't need (things like) drink, cup, or napkin, etc.?.; present-negative of いる as in 要る)

E.g. 靴やシャツを買う。(Buy shoes and shirt, etc.)

- とか: vague listing particle (colloquial). Used exactly like や but in informal settings. It is used *between nouns in a list, not as a marker at the end of each noun*.

E.g. 飲み物とかカップとかナプキンは、いらない？(You don't need (things like) drink, cup, or napkin, etc.?.; present-negative of いる as in 要る)

E.g. 靴^{くつ}とかシャツを買う。(Buy shoes and shirt, etc.)

- の: possession marker, generic noun, or explanatory particle. The の particle has three uses:

Possession marker <Owner>の<ownee>. Can refer to hierarchical classifications too.

E.g. ボブの本。(Book of Bob).

E.g. 本^{ほん}のボブ。(Bob of book; probably a mistake.)

E.g. ボブは、アメリカの大学の学生だ。(Bob is student of college of America.)

The ownee (noun that is modified) may be omitted if clear from context.

E.g. そのシャツは誰の~~シャツ~~? ボブの~~シャツ~~だ。(Whose shirt is that shirt? It is the shirt of Bob.)

Note that この、その、あの are abbreviations of この、その、あの respectively.

Generic noun (nominaliser) The の particle can be suffixed to relative clauses (adjective-phrases and verb-phrases) to represent a generic noun, taking the place of an actual noun. This usage allows us to treat adjectives, adjective-phrases, verbs and verb-phrases as nouns using a の suffix. Then, particles applicable to nouns can be used as a suffix to the noun-phrase: は、も、が、を. Detailed uses are in §G2.10.6.

E.g. (な-adjectives) 静かなのが、アリスの部屋だ。(Quiet one is room of Alice.) (Note that the な cannot be dropped! All previous rules still apply.) 「静かな部屋が、アリスのだ。」 (“The quiet room is Alice’s.”) is also ok.

E.g. (い-adjectives) 白いのは、かわいい。(Thing that is white is cute.)

E.g. (verbs) 毎日勉強するのは大変。(Studying every day is tough.)

E.g. (verbs) 授業^{じゅぎょう}に行くのを忘れた。(Forgot the event of going to class.)

E.g. (relative clause) 毎日同じ物を食べるのは、面白くない。(It’s not interesting to eat the same thing every day.)

Alternatively, 物^{もの} and こと can be used for generic objects and events respectively, instead of の.

E.g. 白い物は、かわいい。(Thing that is white is cute.)

E.g. 授業^{じゅぎょう}に行くことを忘れた。(Forgot the thing of going to class.)

Note that in the case of verbs/relative verb clauses (verb phrases), the plain form must be used; the polite ~ます form is wrong.

E.g. お父さんが買ったのは、バナナです。(The thing that dad bought, is a banana.; It is incorrect to use 買いました in place of 買った.)

The nominaliser の can be modified by prefixing the *こそあど* words (Japanese demonstratives). These are *こんな*、*そんな*、*あんな*、*どんな* and *こういう*、*そういう*、*ああい*、*どうい* (this kind/that kind/that kind/what kind, respectively for both; we use the former set in more emphatic settings and the latter in more literal settings, see discussion on [StackOverflow](#)). These correspond to the pronouns *これ*、*それ*、*あれ*、*どれ* (this, that, that (far), which (between 3 or more)).

E.g. *こん*なの要らないよ。(I don’t need things like this.)

E.g. **そういうのは、前もって教えてください。** (Please let me know things like that in advance.)

Abstract noun/explanatory の as a sentence-ending particle conveys an explanatory tone in responses, and explanation-seeking tone in questions. It represents the abstract noun “the thing is...”, and is believed to be an abbreviation of 「～のです」. の can also be used as a suffix to な-adjectives or state-of-being noun-phrases, though in those cases **なの** must be used in order to differentiate it from the possession marker or generic noun purposes of の. **One exception to this disambiguating function is な-adjectives: both generic noun and explanatory purposes use ～なの. Prefer ～なん{だ/です} for explanatory.**

E.g. ^{いま}今は^{いそが}忙しい**の**?今は忙しい**の**[だ]。 (Is it that you are busy now? The thing is that I'm busy now.; 忙しい: busy; the absence of the trailing だ in the response is feminine; adult males add the だ in the response; **だ cannot be used in the question**)

E.g. ジム**のだ**。 (It belongs to Jim.)

E.g. ジム**なの**だ。 (It is Jim; with explanatory tone.)

This explanatory tone results in の being used in strong commands, explaining things you should or shouldn't do, or explaining parts of a procedure.

E.g. ^{じゅぎょうちゅう}授業中は、おしゃべりしない**の**! (Don't chat during class!; しゃべる: chat)

E.g. まずは、^{あら}洗う**の**? (Do you clean first?) まずは、あらう**の**[です]。それで、きれいになったら、こうやって切る**の**[です]。 (First, clean it. Then, once it is clean, cut it like this; the 「です」, if dropped, causes the reply to become informal/childish/feminine.)

The の in sentence-end expressions are typically substituted by ん as it's easier to say (e.g. のだ → んだ). んだ is however also used with all forms of nouns, adjectives, and verbs, and has its own set of conjugation rules, as shown in Table 7.

E.g. ジム**なんだ**。 (It is Jim; with explanatory tone.)

Further examples with polite speech:

E.g. どうして^{おく}遅れた**{の/ん}**ですか? (Why were you late?)

E.g. どうしてパーティーに行きませんでしたか?時間がなかった**{の/ん}**です。 (Why didn't you go to the party? Because I didn't have time.; polite)

E.g. パーティーに行かなかったの?うん、時間がなかった**{の/のだ/んだ}**。 (You didn't go to the party? Yeah, because I didn't have time.; casual)

E.g. 私は学生**な{の/ん}**で、お金がない**ん**です。 (I am a student, therefore I have no money.)

E.g. ここは静か**な{の/ん}**で、とても^{おだ}穏やかです。 (It is quiet here, therefore it is very calm here.)

E.g. **な{の/ん}**で、友達に会う時間がない。 (Therefore, there is no time to meet friend.; this omits the reason and thus the な is compulsory, see §G3.6.3)

For verbs, any form is usable (beyond {positive, negative} × {present, past}), except forms like the command form or the volitional form, which do not make sense for explanations. Also, the

polite verb form 「～ます」 and polite い-adjective form 「～です」 cannot be used with 「～んだ」; use the plain form. If you want to be polite, use 「～なんです」.

の is used in formal settings and ん in informal settings. The first casual form attaches んだ to any tense of a noun/adjective/verb; the second casual form attaches んだ to the dictionary-form, then conjugating the だ. Both casual forms have slightly different nuances.

- の/のだ/のです/んだ/なんです: these are simply the sentence-ending explanatory の particle.
- なんだった: used to express that you just remembered to do something, typically used with そういえば.

E.g. あ、そういえば出かける^でなんだった。(Ah, that reminds me, I am going out.)

- んじゃない/んじゃありません: mildly slang, to prohibit or request that something not be done: “don’t, mustn’t”. The latter form is more formal, and used when the speaker wants to forbid something but not sound angry (e.g. adult talking to a child).

E.g. 馬鹿にする^でんじゃない! (Don’t make fun of me!)

E.g. 嘘をつく^でんじゃありません。(You shouldn’t lie.; 嘘をつく: to lie)

- んじゃなかった: mildly slang, to express nuance of regret/disappointment: “shouldn’t have”.

E.g. こんな安い車を買う^でんじゃなかった。(I shouldn’t have bought a cheap car like this one.)

E.g. 食べる^でんじゃなかった。(Shouldn’t have eaten it.)

Read more about these nuances at Sources [1](#), [2](#), [3](#).

Table 7: caption

| の Purpose | Category | Dictionary form | Positive | | Negative | |
|--------------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| | | | Present | Past | Present | Past |
| Possession | Noun | 「」 | 「」の[だ]” | 「」のだった | 「」のじゃない | 「」のじゃなかった |
| Generic noun | な-adjective | 「」 | 「」 ^な の | 「」だったの | 「」じゃないの | 「」じゃなかったの |
| | い-adjective/verb | 「」 | 「」の | 「」<conj>の | 「」<conj>の | 「」<conj>の |
| Explanatory | Noun/な-adjective | 「」 | 「」 ^な の[だ]” | 「」だったの[だ]” | 「」じゃないの[だ]” | 「」じゃなかったの[だ]” |
| | | | 「」 ^な のです。 | 「」だったのです。 | 「」じゃないのです。 | 「」じゃなかったのです。 |
| | | | 「」 ^な んだ。 | 「」だったんだ。 | 「」じゃないんだ。 | 「」じゃなかったんだ。 |
| | い-adjective/verbs | 「」 | 「」 ^な んです。 | 「」だったんです。 | 「」じゃないんです。 | 「」じゃなかったんです。 |
| | | | 「」の[だ]” | 「」<conj>の[だ]” | 「」<conj>の[だ]” | 「」<conj>の[だ]” |
| | | | 「」のです。 | 「」<conj>のです。 | 「」<conj>のです。 | 「」<conj>のです。 |
| Special | Noun/な-adjective | 「」 | 「」 ^な だ。 | 「」<conj> ^な だ。 | 「」<conj> ^な だ。 | 「」<conj> ^な だ。 |
| | | | 「」 ^な です。 | 「」<conj> ^な です。 | 「」<conj> ^な です。 | 「」<conj> ^な です。 |
| | い-adjective/verbs | 「」 | 「」 ^な だ。 | 「」 ^な だった。 | 「」 ^な じゃない。 | 「」 ^な じゃなかった。 |

Read the supplementary んだ (and んです) article on [Tofugu](#), if you need more clarification.

G2.10.5 の particle I: the noun modifier (label maker)

Read the main article on [Tofugu](#).

Applicable schemae:

- <noun label>の[<noun labelled>]. The labelled can be omitted if clear from context. The label can be stacked.

E.g. 私の^{くるま}[車]。

E.g. 犬のおもちゃ^{みせ}の店。(おもちゃ: toy)

- <particle>の<noun labelled>.
 - ▶ への: “to” label. E.g. アメリカへの飛行機。 (Airplane bound for America.)
 - ▶ からの: “from” label. E.g. アメリカからの飛行機。 (Airplane from America.)
 - ▶ だけの: “only” label. E.g. 寝るだけの人生。 (A life of only sleeping.)
 - ▶ との: “quote” label. E.g. 「早く帰ってきてね！」とのメッセージ。 (A message saying “Come back soon!”.)

Here are its various purposes. Note that possession isn’t the only one!

の as possession marker <owner>の<ownee>.

E.g. 私の母。 (Ny mother.)

の as affiliation marker <affiliation>の<affiliated/position>. Typically used in business settings to show which organisation someone belongs to.

E.g. トーフグのキョーコです。 (This is Kyoko from Tofugu.)

E.g. 東京大学の教授。 (Professor at Tokyo university.)

の as “about” marker <about>の<labelled>.

E.g. バナナ[について]の{知識/研究}。 (について: regarding; used for disambiguation because バナナの研究 could mean research of someone named バナナ.)

の as location/time label Whereas with the に particle we needed to specify a verb after に, with the の particle the location/time is treated as a label for the main noun.

E.g. 朝五時のアラーム。 (The 5am alarm.)

の as “degree” marker This refers to labels indicating amount, quantity, price, size, etc.

E.g. 五十人のアメリカ人。 (Fifty American people.)

E.g. 四千円のマンゴー。 (A four-thousand yen mango.)

の as order/rank marker Things like first, second, third, etc.

E.g. 最初のテスト。 (First test.)

E.g. 世界一の温泉。 (World’s number one hot spring.)

の for apposition Apposition: the relationship between different words that mean the same thing.

E.g. フルーツのバナナ。 (The fruit, banana.)

E.g. 校長のスズキ先生。 (The principal, Suzuki Sensei.)

の as materials/ingredients marker Typically used in menus to indicate ingredients used in dishes.

E.g. アサリの味噌汁。 (Miso soup with clam.)

E.g. プラスチックのカップ。 (Plastic cup.)

の as a replacement for な for の-adjectives (compared to な-adjectives) Adjective-like nouns like 普通 and 久しぶり take の when modifying nouns.

E.g. 普通の車。 (Normal car.)

E.g. 久しぶりの再会。 (long-awaited reunion)

の as a replacement for が in relative clauses Relative clauses are clauses that precede and modify nouns.

For further elaboration on の-adjectives, see §G2.10.7.

E.g. カナエ{が、の}作ったネックレス。(The necklace Kanae made.)

G2.10.6 の particle II: the nominaliser

Read the main article on [Tofugu](#).

Basic usage is as in the initial description of の earlier, under “generic noun” and “explanatory”. This section covers the various contexts in which we use の to nominalise other parts-of-speech:

Non-physical things の can turn immaterial things like events, ideas, facts, and thoughts (expressed as embedded clauses ending with verbs) into nouns. These are covered under the nominaliser こと.

E.g. 一人でトイレに行った{こと/の}が、よく思い出せない。(I can't really remember having gone to the bathroom by myself; 思い出す: to recall.)

E.g. バック転できない{こと/の}が、悔しい。(I'm frustrated about not being able to backflip; できる: to be able to do.)

Material things の can turn adjective-phrases describing material things into nouns.

E.g. 甘いのが食べたい。(I want to eat sweet things.)

E.g. 昔飼っていたのは、犬です。(What I used to have as a pet was a dog; 昔: olden days; 飼う: to keep a pet)

E.g. そこにいるのは、誰ですか？(Who's there?)

Time and location の can turn clauses describing time or location of events (expressed as embedded clauses ending with verbs) into nouns. The resultant outer clause often contains elements indicating a particular time or location.

E.g. スーツケースが届くのは明日です。(The suitcase will be delivered tomorrow; 届く: to be delivered/arrive)

E.g. この町が美しかったのは、五十年前です。(This city was beautiful fifty years ago.)

E.g. 次のオリンピックが開催されるのは東京です。(The next olympics will be held in Tokyo; 開催する: to host an event)

E.g. 生まれたのはニューヨークです。(I was born in New York; 生まれる: to be born)

Reason の can be a placeholder for an explanation, similar to its sentence-ending explanatory usage.

E.g. アメリカに住みたいのは、英語の勉強がしたいからです。(The reason why I want to live in the U.S. is because I want to study English; したい: want to do; から: because (also means from))

E.g. そう思ったのは、なぜですか？(Why did you think so?)

Listing の can be used to *complainingly* list things (similar to the inclusive noun particle と and vague listing particle や, with the added complaining tone). When listing verbs, use 〜

の. When listing nouns or な-adjectives, use **～だの** (not **なの!** That is for the explanatory usage.). while emphasising the similarity or contrast between items in a list.

E.g. レストランに行く**の**行かない**の**でもめた。(We argued over whether to go to a restaurant or not; もめる: to dispute)

E.g. テスト勉強**だ**の部活**だ**ので忙しいよ。(I'm busy with things like studying for exams and club activities.)

There is a special idiomatic pattern used to enthusiastically say that something is extraordinary. Take the same adjective and repeat it twice, once in the positive and once in the negative, using the **～の** suffix.

E.g. ポートランのピール、そりゃおいしい**の**、おいしくない**の**って！ (Beer in Portland is beyond delicious!; そりゃ is a variant of **それは** and both are adverbs meaning very/extremely) (Literally: Beer in Portland is not even a matter of delicious or not delicious.)

This can often also be expressed with another idiomatic expression **～のなんのって** (supplementary reading [here](#)).

E.g. ポートランのピール、美味しい**のなんのって**！ (Beer in Portland is beyond delicious!)

G2.10.7 The adjective-noun spectrum: な-adjectives and の-adjectives

Read the main article on [Tofugu](#).

In short, な is used when you want to describe nouns, and の is used when you want to label nouns (e.g. **きれいな人** vs. **きれいの人** respectively).

Many な-adjectives exhibit this flexibility of converting between adjectives and nouns, based on whether they are suffixed by な or の. Linguists refer to な-adjectives as “*adjectival nouns*” or “*nominal adjectives*”.

There exists a adjective-noun spectrum for adjectives: some are suffixed with な more often, and others の more often. Table 8 provides examples.

Table 8: な/の-adjectives on the adjective-noun spectrum. い-adjectives do not apply.

| な ≧ の | Meaning | な > の | Meaning | の > な | Meaning | の ≧ な | Meaning |
|-------|---------------------|-------|-----------------------|-------|-------------------------|-------|------------------|
| 好き | like | 元気 | well/fine | 大量 | large amount | 少し | a little |
| 簡単 | simple | 健康 | health(y) | 病気 | illness/disease | 本当 | true/truth |
| 大切 | important | 安全 | safe(ty) | 最高 | best/highest | 永遠 | eternity |
| だめ | no good/not allowed | 美人 | beautiful woman | 普通 | normal/ordinary | 最大 | largest/maximum |
| 静か | quiet | 不思議 | wonderful/miraculous | 未定 | to be decided/pending | 最小 | smallest/minimum |
| 大変 | very | 平和 | peace/harmony | 独自 | unique/original | たくさん | a lot |
| 素敵 | splendid | 幸せ | happiness | 最速 | fastest | 真実 | truth/reality |
| 勝手 | selfish(ness) | 不幸 | misfortune/disaster | 一流 | first-class/top-ranking | 一杯 | one cup |
| 複雑 | complicated/complex | 不安 | anxiety/worry/fear | 個別 | individual/separate | | |
| 妙 | strange | 高級 | premium/luxury | 固有 | characteristic/native | | |
| 正解 | correct | 平等 | equality/impartiality | 別 | another/difference | | |
| 変 | strange | | | 無名 | anonymous/nameless | | |
| 必要 | necessary/needed | | | 未知 | unknown | | |
| 深刻 | serious | | | 少量 | small amount | | |
| 困難 | difficulty/hardship | | | | | | |
| 苦手 | weak at/bad at | | | | | | |
| 危険 | danger | | | | | | |
| 嫌い | disliked | | | | | | |
| 無理 | impossible | | | | | | |

| な ≧ の | Meaning | な > の | Meaning | の > な | Meaning | の ≧ な | Meaning |
|---------------------|------------------|-------|---------|-------|---------|-------|---------|
| 異常 ^{いじょう} | strange/abnormal | | | | | | |
| 正直 ^{しょうじき} | honest(ly) | | | | | | |
| 親切 ^{しんせつ} | kind/generous | | | | | | |
| 残酷 ^{ざんこく} | cruel | | | | | | |
| 有能 ^{ゆうのう} | competent | | | | | | |
| 冷静 ^{れいせい} | calm | | | | | | |
| 真剣 ^{しんけん} | serious | | | | | | |
| 慎重 ^{しんちょう} | cautious | | | | | | |

The different parts of the spectrum are described as follows:

- “な-adjectives”: the adjective side of the spectrum. These are frequently used to describe nouns, and are tagged as な-adjectives in many Japanese-English dictionaries.
- “の-adjectives”: the noun side of the spectrum. These are frequently used with the の suffix to form labels for nouns, and are tagged as の-adjectives in many Japanese-English dictionaries.

Words in this category are broadly divided into two groups: those that express absolutes (e.g. 本当、最大、最小) and those that express quantities (e.g. 少し、たくさん、少量^{しょうりょう}、大量^{たいりょう}).

Those that express absolutes usually cannot take adverbs (there is no “little” absolute or “big” absolute; an absolute is a binary thing, either it’s absolute or not). Those that express quantities can.

E.g. 昨日^{きのう}すごくたくさんの魚が釣^つれました。(I was able to catch incredibly many fish yesterday.)

E.g. 電源^{でんげん}が切れた途端^きに、かなり大量^{たいりょう}のデータが消^けされてしまいました。(Right when the power ran out, quite a large amount of data was erased.)

- Words in the middle of the spectrum: these have subtle shifts when suffixed with な vs. の, but one is typically used more frequently than the other. Typically, の is used with a slight bias towards the act of objective labelling, while な is used with a slight bias towards the act of subjective describing/judging. As a result, using な for some of the adjectives can seem negative or even rude. It’s safer to use の, if unsure.

E.g. 新しい彼氏^{あたらし}、有名人^しなの？ (Is your new boyfriend a famous person?; 氏: Mr./Mrs./Ms. polite suffix) ううん、普通^{ふつう}の人だよ。(No, he’s a normal (objectively ordinary) person.)

E.g. 新しいの彼氏、変^{へん}な人なの？ (Is your new boyfriend a weirdo?) ううん、普通^{ふつう}な人だよ。(No, he’s a normal (not weird) person.)

E.g. その施設^{しせつ}には、病気^{しん}の人が多い。(There are many sick (objective) people at that institution; 施設: facility)

E.g. その施設^{しせつ}には、病気^{しん}な人が多い。(There are many sick (judgmental) people at that institution; 施設: facility)

Lastly, there is the 「～な気分^{きぶん}」 construct. Although 気分 is typically used as 気分がいい or 気分が悪い, we can suffix nouns with ～な気分 to convey the “mood” associated with the noun. Examples include ワインな気分 (“I’m feeling like wine tonight/It’s a wine kinda evening.”), 90年代^{ねんだい}な気分 (“I’m feeling really 90’s today”), 海^{うみ}な気分 (“feeling those beachy vibes”) and 終わ^おりな気分 (“feeling like it’s over”).

G2.11 Adverbs

Just as adjectives describe nouns, adverbs describe adjectives, verbs, other adverbs, or whole sentences. They come before the thing they describe, and the common ones are:

- それは/そりゃ: very/extremely
- めっちゃ: very/extremely/excessively
- 大変: very/greatly/terribly
- すごく: super
- とても: very
- たくさん: many/a lot
- 結構/かなり: fairly
- ちょっと: a little
- 少し: a little
- あまり<negative conj>: not very
- 全然: (not) at all

To turn adjectives into adverbs:

- な-adjectives: 「」 → 「」に

E.g. アリスは自分の部屋をきれいにした。(Alice did her own room toward clean / Alice did her room cleanly / Alice cleaned her room; した is the past tense of する)

E.g. 図書館^{なか}の中では、静かにする。(Inside the library, do things quietly.)

- い-adjectives: 「」い → 「」く

E.g. ボブは朝ごはんを早く食べた。(Bob ate breakfast quickly/early (depending on context); 早い → 早く)

E.g. この町^{まち}は、最近^{おと}大きく^か変わった。(This town changed greatly lately; 大きい → おおきく)

Note that not all adverbs are derived from adjectives.

E.g. 映画をたくさん見た。(Saw a lot of movies.)

E.g. 最近、全然食べない。(Lately, don't eat at all.)

G2.12 Sentence ending particles ね、よ、よね

- の: explanatory tone. Explained above in §G2.10.4.
- ね: to express seeking and expectation of agreement, like “right?/isn't it?” in English. In the reply 「そう[だ]ね」, the optional だ is often used in masculine contexts.

E.g. いい天気だね? そう[だ]ね。(Good weather, huh? Sure is; そう: in that way, as such; そう[だ]ね: it is indeed that way/as such.)

E.g. 面白い映画だったね。え? 全然面白くなかった。(That was an interesting movie, wasn't it? Huh? No, it wasn't interesting at all)

- よ: to express that you're informing something *new*, like “you know...” in English.

E.g. 時間がないよ。大丈夫だよ。

E.g. 今日はいい天気だね。うん。でも、明日う雨が降るよ。(Good weather today, huh? Yeah. But it will rain tomorrow, you know.)

よ and ね can be combined to both inform about something new and expect agreement at the same time.

E.g. ボブは、魚が好きなんだよね。そうだね。 (You know, you like fish, don't you? It is indeed the case, huh?)

G3 Essential grammar

Now that we have an understanding of the basics, fundamentals, and foundations of Japanese grammar, this section provides specific grammar for practical situations.

G3.1 Verb stems

It seems that “stem” and “root” are used interchangeably; there is no consensus on their definitions, and different sources use either term to refer to the same concept...

Since there is no consensus on the definitions of root/stem, I'll use “root” to refer to /kik/, and “stem” to refer to the stem form 聞き.

Also known as the ます-stem in other texts (we refrain from that term as the stem is used in many more conjugations, not just in ます), stems can be obtained from verbs via the rules in Table 16.

Verb stems are sometimes (not always!) the noun forms of the verbs, e.g. 休み^{やす} is the noun form of 休む.

We can suffix the stem with target particle に or directional particle へ, then follow with a motion verb (almost always 行く or 来る). This <stem>{に/へ}{行く/来る/...} construct means “to go/come do <stem>”. Use に to mean going/coming for the purpose of doing <stem>; use へ to put emphasis on the literal act of going/coming.

E.g. 明日、映画を見に行く。(Tomorrow, go to see movie.)

E.g. 昨日、友達が遊びへ来た。(Yesterday, friend came towards a playing activity.; sounds weird)

E.g. 昨日、友達が遊びに来た。(Yesterday, friend came to play.)

The expression 「楽しみにする」 (looking forward to) is formed from a similar grammar rule (though it's a special case and should be considered a set expression).

Compound verbs can be formed by appending verbs to stems. However, there aren't formulaic rules for these; memorise them as separate verbs in their own right.

E.g. 走り出す (break into a run)、切り替^かえる (switch to something else)、付け加^くえる (to add something by attaching it)、言^いい出す (to start talking)、言^いいさす (to stop talking)、読^よみ出す (read out data/retrieve)、読^よみさす (to leave half-read).

G3.2 Polite forms ます、です

The Japanese covered thus far in §G2 is fine for five-year-olds, but adults are expected to use 丁寧語^{ていねいご} (polite language), 尊敬語^{そんけいご} (honorific language) and 謙譲語^{けんじょうご} (humble language) where appropriate.

丁寧語 is used when speaking to people of higher social rank or people you're unfamiliar with. 尊敬語 and 謙譲語 are used in professional settings, and builds upon 丁寧語.

The only indicator of which language style is in use is sentence endings. It's not possible to tell whether someone is speaking in casual or polite speech until the sentence is finished.

In 丁寧語, use 「～ます」 and its conjugations to make verbs polite, and use 「～です」 for nouns and adjectives (note that the polite です is incompatible with the assertive だ). Detailed rules are in Table 16. Note that ます and です must come at the end of a complete sentence, and never inside any embedded/relative clauses. Refer to §GA.1 for a full table of 丁寧語 conjugations.

Polite verb examples:

- (present-positive) 明日、大学に行きます。(Tomorrow, I go to university.)
- (present-negative) 面白くない映画は見ません。(I did not see uninteresting movies.)
- (past-positive) 先週、ボブに会いましたよ。(Last week, I met Bob, you know.)
- (past-negative) 昼ご飯を食べませんでしたね。(Didn't eat lunch, right?)

Polite adjective examples:

- (present-positive) 子犬はとても好きです。(I like puppies very much/puppies like something very much.)
- (present-negative) その部屋はあまり静かじゃないです。(The room is not very/really quiet.)
- (past-positive) 先週に見た映画は、とても面白かったです。(The movie I saw last week was very interesting.)
- (past-negative) 昨日、時間がなかったんです。(Yesterday, there was no time.; ある → なかった (past negative) → なかったんだ (explanatory) → なかったんです (polite))

G3.2.1 です is NOT the polite form of だ, they are completely separate constructs

This is a common misconception! です and だ are two fundamentally different concepts:

- だ is declarative, whereas です is polite.

E.g. そうだ is the declarative form of そう. そうです is the polite form of そう (see Table 16), but not the polite form of そうだ!

- だ can be used both at the end of both complete sentences and relative clauses, whereas です can only be used at the end of complete sentences.

E.g. そうだと思います。(In an indirect quote, it is wrong to quote です: it must be changed to だ.)

E.g. 「はい、そうです」と答える。(The only place where です can be in an embedded clause is in direct quotes.)

G3.3 Addressing people

Take care to use the correct level of politeness.

G3.3.1 Referring to yourself

To refer to yourself, use one of the following (in descending order of politeness):

- 私^{わたくし}: used by both males and females, formal
- 私^{わたし}: used by both males and females, normal polite (you should use this most of the time)
- 僕: used by males, semi-polite to semi-casual
- 俺: used only by males, very casual, very rough
- あたし: used by females, cutesy and girly (most girls today use 私^{わたし} instead)
- your own name: used by children, feminine
- わし: used by elderly (males)

E.g. 私の^{なまえ}名前はジャッキーです。

G3.3.2 Referring to the listener (second-person)

Even when directly addressing other people, you rarely use variants of “you”, as constantly hammering the listener with “you” that comes across as accusatory and confrontational.

Instead, we use one of the following (in descending order of politeness):

- <title>: common polite (e.g. 社長 ^{しゃちょう} president/director, 課長 ^{かちょう} section manager, 先生 teacher/ anyone with significant expertise including doctors)
- <last name><title>: common polite
- <last name>さん: common polite, in case no suitable title exists
- <first name>さん: common semi-polite
- <last name>くん: for males, casual/endearing, of equal or lower social position
- <last name>ちゃん: for females, casual/endearing, of equal or lower social position
- <last name>: common
- <first name>[{くん, ちゃん}]: only for people you're on first-name basis with
- <nothing>: common. In normal Japanese conversations, the topic/subject is commonly implied to be the listener. It's completely normal not to use anything at all, since you're directly addressing the listener!
- そちら: you, polite
- 君: casual, assuming/very close, used by males to address females, potentially rude
- あなた: **red if spoken**, use only in contexts where you must refer to the audience (e.g. on a physical questionnaire)
- **THOU SHALT NOT CROSS THIS LINE**
- あんた: rude, assuming/familiar, expresses annoyance
- お前/おめえ: rude, rough and coarse, used by males
- てめえ: very rude, sounds like you want to beat someone up (used exclusively in movies and comics)
- 貴様 ^{きさま}: extremely rude, sounds like you want to take someone out (used exclusively in movies and comics)

^{あなた}貴方 is an old-fashioned way for women to refer to their lover or husband, nowadays only used by married middle-aged women.

G3.3.3 Referring to the third person

For people outside of your family, use one of these:

- 彼 ^{かれ}: he
- 彼女 ^{かのじょ}: she
- 彼/ボーイフレンド: boyfriend (prefer former)
- 彼女/ガールフレンド: girlfriend (prefer former)

When referring to family members, there are two levels of politeness: polite and casual. We only use the casual form when we are talking about our own family members to other people. When talking about the listener's family members or when talking directly to your family members, use the polite form.

The polite form comes before the casual form:

- Parents: ご両親 ^{りょうしん} / 両親 ^{りょうしん}
- Mother: お母さん ^{かあ} / 母 ^{はは}
- Father: お父さん ^{とう} / 父 ^{ちち}
- Wife: 奥さん ^{おく} / 妻 ^{つま}
- Husband: ご主人 ^{しゅじん} / 夫 ^{おつと} (don't drag the trailing お vowel)
- Older sister: お姉さん ^{ねえ} / 姉 ^{あね}
- Older brother: お兄さん ^{にい} / 兄 ^{あに}

- Younger sister: 妹さん / 妹 いもうと
- Younger brother: 弟さん / 弟 おとうと
- Son: 息子さん / 息子 むすこ
- Daughter: 娘さん / 娘 むすめ

Yes, ご主人様 (master/husband) is an extension of ご主人 (husband).

G3.4 The question marker か particle

These are common question words (see Table 72 for a more complete list):

- 誰: who
- 何: what
- いつ: when
- どこ: where
- なぜ/どうして/なんで: why

なぜ is formal and forceful

どうして is softer

なんで is informal (Source)

- どう/どうやって: how

どう is more general (Source)

- どれ/どちら/どっち: which

どれ: three or more

どちら: two

どっち: two (informal; Source)

G3.4.1 か in polite questions

The purpose of か is to clearly mark a question in polite sentences. It's not strictly necessary, since polite sentences without a trailing か can be interpreted as a question using a rising trailing intonation during speech. However, it's commonly attached.

There is no need to use a question mark when か is used; the full-stop is used instead. Because か is polite, it is incompatible with the declarative だ.

E.g. お母さんはどこですか。母は買い物に行きました。(Where is your mother? My mother went shopping.; 買い物 can refer to both purchased goods and the act of shopping)

E.g. イタリア料理を食べに行きませんか。すみません。ちょっと、お腹がいっぱいです。(Shall we eat Italian food? Sorry, my stomach is a little full.; いっぱい: full; Note that the question is phrased in the negative, see §G3.4.2)

G3.4.2 Positive and negative polite questions

See discussion at (HiNative).

Positive polite questions are plain questions; negative questions have a nuance of suggestion/invitation.

- 食べに行きますか?: Are you going to eat?

- 食べに行きませんか?: Shall we go eat?

G3.4.3 か in casual questions: binary and sarcasm

か has a slightly different purpose in casual speech. Casual questions usually either use explanatory 「の?」 or nothing at all, so か is not used here to craft questions. Instead, it is used specifically to:

- question whether something is true or not

E.g. こんなのを本当に食べるか? (This kind of thing, will they really eat?; こんなのは is こんな + の (possession), where こんな means this type of)

- make rhetorical questions/express sarcasm

E.g. そんなのは、あるかよ! (That kind of thing, do I look like I would have something like that!; そんなのは is そんな + の (possession), where そんな means that type of)

Most actual questions use explanatory の or nothing at all apart from a rise in intonation.

E.g. こんなのを本当に食べる? (Something like this, are you really going to eat?)

E.g. そんなのは、あるの? (Do you have something like that?)

G3.4.4 か in embedded clauses: referring to embedded questions

This functions similar to direct quoting, and marks the questions in an embedded clause. The outer clause can then talk about the embedded question.

E.g. 昨日何を食べたか忘れた。 (What I ate yesterday, I forgot.)

E.g. 彼は何を言ったか分からない。 (What he said, I don't understand.)

E.g. 先生が学校に行ったか教えない? (Whether the teacher went to school (binary question), would you please inform me (invitation)?)

To ask “whether or not” (binary question), we can use either <positive>かどうか, or <positive>か<negative>か.

E.g. 先生が学校に行ったか行かなかったか知らない。 (Whether the teacher went to school or not, I don't know.)

E.g. 先生が学校に行ったかどうか知らない。 (Whether the teacher went to school or not, I don't know.)

See more detail in §G3.18.2.

G3.4.5 Modifying question words with suffixes か、も、でも

「」か refers to a particular existence (sometextasciitilde), 「」も refers to the universal (everytextasciitilde), and 「」でも refers to a non-particular existence (anytextasciitilde) (not to be confused with でも for “but”). Question words and their variants are showed in Table 9.

Table 9: Question words and their modified variants. Treat these all as normal nouns. †: 誰も is usually used in negative sentences to mean nobody can do the verb, and to express the positive universal everybody we typically use 皆[さん]; ‡: 何も is used exclusively in negative sentences.

| 「」 | Meaning | 「」か | Meaning | 「」も | Meaning | 「」でも | Meaning |
|----|---------|-----|-----------|-----|--------------|------|----------|
| 誰 | who | 誰か | someone | 誰も | nobody† | 誰でも | anybody |
| 何 | what | 何か | something | 何も | nothing‡ | 何でも | anything |
| いつ | when | いつか | sometime | いつも | always/never | いつでも | anytime |

| 「」 | Meaning | 「か | Meaning | 「も | Meaning | 「でも | Meaning |
|-----|----------------------|------|---------------|--------|------------------------|-------|-------------|
| どこ | where | どこか | somewhere | どこ[に]も | everywhere/ nowhere | どこでも | anywhere |
| なぜ | why | なぜか | some reason | | | | |
| どう | how | どうか | somehow | どれも | somehow | どうでも | anyhow |
| どれ | which (3 or more) | どれか | one from many | どれも | all/none | どれでも | any of many |
| どちら | which (2) | どちらか | one of two | どちらも | both/neither | どちらでも | any of two |

To mean “For some reason...” you can say 「どういうわけか...」.

「」か examples:

- 誰かがおいしいクッキーを全部食べた。(Someone ate all the delicious cookies.)
- 誰が盗んだのか、誰か知りませんか。(Who stole it, doesn't anyone know?; 盗む: steal)
- 犯人をどこかで見ましたか。(Did you see the criminal somewhere?)
- この中からどれかを選ぶの。(You are to select a certain one from inside this.; から: from, 選ぶ: choose)

「」も examples:

- この質問の答えは、誰も知らない。(The answer to this question, nobody knows.)
- 友達はいつも遅れる。(Friend is always late.)
- ここにあるレストランはどれもおいしくない。(All restaurants that are here are not tasty.)
- 今週末は、どこにも行かなかった。(This weekend, went nowhere.; どこにも means “target is nowhere”, も is grammatically the topic particle and should come after the target particle に, so ~~どこにも~~ is incorrect. Treat this as an exception.)

「」でも examples:

- この質問の答えは、誰でも分かる。(The answer to this question, anyone understands.)
- 昼ご飯は、どこでもいいです。(For lunch, anywhere is good.)
- あの人は、本当に何でも食べる。(That person really eats anything.)

G3.5 Apologising

Read a full article [here](#).

Use one of the following (in descending order of politeness):

- すみません: formal
- ごめんなさい: semi-formal
- ごめん[ね]: causal
- 悪い: very casual, only for non-serious matters

Can be used for past offence: 悪かった。

G3.6 Compound sentences

This section concerns combining multiple sentences into one complex sentences, such as combining “I ran.” and “I ate.” into “I ran and ate.”.

G3.6.1 て form

The て-form of nouns, adjectives and verbs are used to form sequences of states (nouns/adjectives) or actions. The conjugation rules are in [§GA.1](#).

て-form conjugations for です/ます/ません exist but they are part of 尊敬語 and are outside the scope of 丁寧語. In a chain of nouns/adjectives/verbs, only the last one takes the polite form です/ます/ません; everything before takes the plain form. Since て is used when connecting sentences, there is no need for です/ます/ません to have a て-form in 丁寧語.

G3.6.2 Compound sentences (chain of descriptors/actions) using て/で and て-form

Similarly to how we can join “My room is clean. It is quiet. I like it a lot.” into “My room is clean, quiet, and I like it a lot.” in English using the “and” connector, we can do the same using “て/で” as a connector. Just as と is the noun connector (in exclusive listings), て/で is the connector for nouns, adjectives and verbs.

The syntax is [v te]*[<plain/polite form>]. て/で functions like a connector (between two nouns/adjectives/verbs). The entity that comes before is turned into the て-form. The final one in the list does NOT use て-form (use either plain or polite), and determines the tense (present/past) of the entire chain.

E.g. 食堂^{しょくどう}に行って、昼ご飯を食べて、昼寝をする。 (I will go to canteen, eat lunch, and take a nap.)

E.g. 食堂^{しょくどう}に行って、昼ご飯を食べて、昼寝をした。 (I went to canteen, ate lunch, and took a nap.)

E.g. 時間があって、映画を見ました。 (There was time, and I watched a movie.)

G3.6.3 Causation and reasoning particles から、ので

To express the direct causation (because) and reasoning (therefore) relationships, use から and ので particles:

- から: direct cause marker particle (also from-marker: §G2.9; see also Table 137). The possible syntaxes are: begin{itemize}

- ▶ <direct cause>[だ]から<result>

If the cause is a non-conjugated noun or な-adjective, you must add だ to differentiate it from the from-marker usage of から.

E.g. 時間がなかったからパーティーに行きませんでした。 (There was no time, so didn't go to party.)

E.g. 友達からプレゼントが来た。 (Present came from friend.; from-marker usage)

E.g. 友達だからプレゼントが来た。 (Present came because of friend.; cause marker usage; this sentence sounds a bit odd)

- ▶ だから<result>

The cause can be omitted if clear from context. Here, だ is compulsory.

E.g. 時間がなかった。だからパーティーに行かなかったの? (I didn't have time. Is that why you didn't go to the party?)

- ▶ <direct cause>[だ]から[です]

The result can be omitted if clear from context. から can be treated as a regular noun, so in polite speech, add the です suffix.

E.g. どうしてパーティーに行きませんでしたか？時間がなかったからです。(Why didn't you go to the party? Because I didn't have time.; polite)

E.g. パーティーに行かなかったの？うん、時間がなかったから。(You didn't go to the party? Yeah, because I didn't have time.; casual)

- ので: non-causal explanation/reason marker, carries flavour of explanatory-の. Similar usage patterns as から (almost interchangeable), but less binding than から in that ので doesn't assert that the marked reason is the direct cause of the result. ので is thus softer and more polite, and preferred when explaining a reason for doing something considered discourteous.

Because で is involved, ので is a connector that must exist between two sentences (if dangling, the sentence is implied to be a dangling sentence).

- ▶ <reason>[な]ので<result>.

If the cause is a non-conjugated noun or な-adjective, you must add な to differentiate it from the possession marker usage of の.

E.g. 時間がなかった**ので**パーティーに行きませんでした。(There was no time, therefore didn't go to party.)

E.g. ちょっと忙**し**い**ので**、そろそろ失礼します。(I'm a little busy, therefore I'll be making my leave soon.; 失礼します literally means "I'm doing a discourtesy" and is used to politely mean you're make your leave or disturbing someone's time.)

E.g. 私は学生**な**{の/ん}で、お金がないんです。(I am a student, therefore I have no money.)

E.g. ここは静**か****な**{の/ん}で、とても穏やかです。(It is quiet here, therefore it is very calm here.)

If omitting the reason or result (which is clear from context), use the explanatory-の particle instead (の[だ]/のです/んだ/んです see §G2.10.4).

- ▶ な{の/ん}で<result>

Here, な is compulsory.

E.g. **な**{の/ん}で、友達に会う時間がない。(Therefore, there is no time to meet friend.)

- ▶ <reason>{の/のだ/のです/んだ/んです}

E.g. どうして遅**お**れた**の**です/んですか？(Why were you late?)

E.g. パーティーに行かなかったの？うん、時間がなかった**の/のだ/んだ**。(You didn't go to the party? Yeah, because I didn't have time.; casual)

E.g. どうしてパーティーに行きませんでしたか？時間がなかった**の**です/んです。(Why didn't you go to the party? Because I didn't have time.; polite)

G3.6.4 Despite marker particle のに

To express the idea of "despite", the のに marker is used. The schema is <despite>のに、<sentence>.

E.g. 毎日運動した**のに**、全然**や**瘦せなかった。(Despite exercising every day, I didn't get thinner.; 痩せる: to slim)

Note that non-conjugated state-of-being nouns and na-adjectives must be tagged with the な particle, similar to rules for explanatory の.

E.g. 学生なのに、彼女は勉強しない。(Despite being a student, she does not study.)

G3.6.5 General and contradiction connector particles けど(、けれど、けれども)、が

けど and が are used as general connectors of any two sentences, like how we construct running sentences in English using “and”. Also, they can be used to express the idea of contradiction between the two sentences: in this usage, が is slightly more polite (stronger contradiction) than けど. Politer forms of けど are けれど and けれども (???). The schema is <sentence 1>{が/けど/けれど/けれども}, <sentence 2>.

E.g. マトリックスを見たけど、面白かった。(general connector; I watched “The Matrix” and it was interesting.)

E.g. デパートに行きました~~が~~、いい物がたくさんありました。(general connector; I went to the department store and there was a lot of good stuff.)

E.g. デパートに行きました~~が~~、何も欲しくなかったです。(contradictory connector; I went to the department store but there was nothing I wanted.)

Note that non-conjugated state-of-being nouns and na-adjectives must be tagged with the だ state-of-being assertion.

E.g. 今日は暇~~だ~~けど、明日は忙しい。(I’m free today but I will be busy tomorrow.)

E.g. ~~だ~~けど、彼がまだ好き~~な~~の。(That may be so, but I still like him.)

G3.7 Reason vague listing connector し

し is used to list reasons for a verb or state-of-being. It is vague in the same sense as the や particle (§G2.10.4): there is a nuance that there may be other reasons not listed. The schema is (<reason> し)*<reason>.

E.g. どうして彼が好きなの? 優しいし、かっこいいし、面白いから。(Why do you like him? Because he’s kind, attractive, and interesting (among other things).; から means because here.)

Note that non-conjugated state-of-being nouns and na-adjectives must be tagged with the だ state-of-being assertion.

E.g. どうして友達じゃないんですか? 先生~~だ~~し、^{としうえ}年上~~だ~~し...
(Why aren’t they your friend (seeking explanation)? Well, they are the teacher, and older...)

For a less vague, more closed listing, use the て-form instead.

E.g. どうして彼が好きなの? 優しくて、かっこよくて、面白いから。
(Why do you like him? Because he’s kind, attractive, and interesting (among other things).)

G3.8 Adjective and verb vague listing construct ～たり[です]

This is the verb/adjective version of the や particle (§G2.10.4). For each verb/adjective in the sequence, conjugate to past tense and add 「り」. Additionally, for the final one, tag on a 「する」, which will control the tense ({positive, negative} times {present, past}) of the entire sentence. The schema is (<past adj/v>り、)*<past adj/v>りする.

E.g. 映画を見たり、本を読んだり、昼寝したりする。(I do things like watch movies, read books, and take naps (among other things).)

E.g. この大学の授業は簡単だったり、難しかったりです。(Classes in this university are sometimes easy, sometimes difficult (and sometimes other descriptors).)

The tense of the entire sentence can be changed by conjugating the trailing する.

E.g. 映画を見たり、本を読んだり、昼寝したりしない。(I don't do things like watch movies, read books, and take naps (among other things).)

E.g. 映画を見たり、本を読んだり、昼寝したりした。(I did things like watch movies, read books, and take naps (among other things).)

E.g. 映画を見たり、本を読んだり、昼寝したりしなかった。(I didn't do things like watch movies, read books, and take naps (among other things).)

G3.9 Progressive form 〜ている (enduring state of action, enduring state-of-being)

To express an enduring state of action (-ing in English), conjugate the verb to the てる-form (§G3.6.1), then append 〜ている. This form can be used regardless of whether the verb subject is animate or inanimate. Further conjugations of the progressive form follow rules of the いる verb.

Interestingly, ある does not have a progressive form. See discussion in §G3.13.

E.g. 友達は何をしているの？ 昼ご飯を食べている。(What is friend doing? Eating lunch.; している is the progressive form of する.)

E.g. 何を読んでいますか。教科書を読んでいます。(What are you reading? I am reading textbook.; います is the polite form of いる.)

E.g. 話を聞いていますか。ううん、聞いていません。(Are you listening to me? No, I'm not listening.; いません is the polite form of いない.)

In casual speech (not applicable in writing!), 〜ている can be shortened to 〜てる. However, the い is not dropped in the polite progressive form 〜ています. **Try not to let this casual speak become a habit too early on! Learn the correct form first.**

E.g. 友達は何をしてるの？ 昼ご飯を食べてるの。(What is friend doing? Eating lunch.; 食べてる = eating (casual); 食べる = eat (dict))

In fact, laziness can go further: 何をしているの can be shortened by dropping particles and unnecessary vowels to become 何してんの？ A related lazy casual expression is 「何やってんの」, which is a contraction of 「何をやっているの」.

The same form can also be used to convey **enduring state-of-being**, after a verb is performed. **This is decided by context.** E.g. 結婚している can either mean someone is currently getting married, or that someone is married and is currently in the married state. **This becomes less context-based and more of a rule for the verbs 知る, 分かる, and motion verbs.**

- 知っている means to be/have been in the enduring *state* of knowing. 知る refers to the *change* of state from not knowing to knowing, it's different and rarely used in its unconjugated form! ([HN1], [HN2])

E.g. 道は知^{みち}っていますか？ はい、今日に知りました。(Do you know the way? Yes, I found out about it today.)

E.g. この歌を知^{うた}っていますか。はい、1年前から知^{うた}っていますよ。(Do you know this song? Yes, I've known it for a year now.)

- わかっている means to be/have been in the enduring *state* of understanding. わかる refers to the *change* from not understanding to understanding, it's different! (HN)

E.g. 前方^{ぜんぽう}は危ない、わかりますか。はい、はい、わか^しりました。(The area in front is dangerous, do you understand? Yes, yes, I am aware of that.)

E.g. 前方^{ぜんぽう}は危ない、わかりますか。はい、はい、わか^しっています。(The area in front is dangerous, do you understand? Yes, yes, I am already aware of that, you don't have to tell me.)

わかっている, in certain contexts, can make you sound proud or dismissive. Be careful!

- <motion verb て-form>ている means to <motion verb> and exist (<v> + いる), and refers to the state-of-being after performing the verb.

E.g. 鈴木^{すずき}さんはどこですか。もう、家^{いえ}に帰^{かえ}っている。(Where is Suzuki-san? He is already at home.)

E.g. 美恵^{みえ}ちゃんはどこですか。もう来^こているよ。(Mie-chan is already here, you know.; 行^いって is the て-form of 行く; 来^こて is the て-form of 来る, “来^こって” is wrong!)

G3.10 Resultant state ～てある

To express that an action is completed, with the implicit nuance that the action was completed in preparation for something else, we use ～てある.

E.g. 準備^{じゅんび}はどうですか？準備は、もうしてあるよ。(How are the preparations? The preparations are already done.)

E.g. 旅行^{りょこう}の計画^{けいかく}は終わった？うん、切符を買^かったし、ホテルの予約^{よやく}もしてある。(Are the plans for the trip complete? Uh huh, not only did I buy the ticket, I also took care of the hotel reservations.)

G3.11 The auxiliary verb 置く^お in ～ておく、～とく

To express that an action is completed (or will be completed), with the explicit nuance that the action was completed in preparation for something else, we use the auxiliary verb ～ておく. 置く^お when used directly (meaning “to put/place”) is written in 漢字, but when used as an auxiliary verb it is written in 仮名 alone. Further conjugations of the compound verb follow rules of the 置く^お verb.

E.g. 晩ごはんを作^{つく}ておく。(Make dinner (in advance for the future).)

E.g. 電池を買^かっておきます。(I'll buy batteries (in advance for the future).)

「～ておく」 can be contracted to 「～とく」. Further conjugations follow rules of the とく auxiliary verb (which means to do something in readiness for).

E.g. 晩ごはんを作^{つく}とく。(Make dinner (in advance for the future).)

E.g. 電池を買^かっときます。(I'll buy batteries (in advance for the future).)

G3.12 Spatial and temporal directional auxiliary verbs ～ていく、～てくる

To express that an action is spatially oriented towards or from some place, we use the ～ていく and ～てくる auxiliary verbs respectively. Think of them as “<v> + go” and “<v> + come” respectively. Further conjugations of the compound verb follow the rules of the trailing いく or くる verb.

E.g. 鉛筆^{えんぴつ}を学校へ持っていく？ (spatial; Are you taking pencil to school?)

E.g. 鉛筆^{うち}を家に持ってくる？ (spatial; Are you bringing pencil back home?)

E.g. お父さんは、早く帰ってきました。 (spatial; きました is the polite past-tense of くる)

E.g. 駅^{えき}の方^{ほう}へ走っていった。 (spatial; いった is the past tense of いく; 駅 is train station; 方 is direction)

The same auxiliary verbs have a temporal usage. ～ていく can be used to mean “<v> continuously/progressively into the future”. ～てくる can be used to mean “<v> performed up to the present”.

E.g. 冬^{はい}に入って、コートを着ている人が増えていきます。 (temporal; Entering winter, people wearing coat will gradually increase.; The 入 in 入る is only read as い when used in compound verbs where the meaning of “entering” is faded.)

E.g. 一生懸命^{いっしょうけんめい}、頑張っていく！ (temporal; With all my might, I will try my hardest moving into the future!)

E.g. 色々な人^あ付き合ってきたけど、いい人はまだ見つからない。 (temporal; Went out with various types of people up till the present, but a good person hasn't been found yet.; 付き合ってきた is the past-tense of 付き合ってくる.)

E.g. 日本語をずっと前から勉強^{けつぎよく}してきて、結局早めた。 (temporal; Studied Japanese from way back before, and eventually quit.; 勉強してきて is the て-form of 勉強してくる.)

G3.13 Potential form ～^える/～られる/～できる/～来られる

To express the ability to perform a verb, the verb is conjugated. できる is actually the potential form of する! For detailed conjugation rules, refer to §GA.1. All potential form verbs are る-verbs. Further conjugations follow る-verb rules.

Interestingly, ある does not have a potential form. See more in §G3.13.2.

In casual/slang speech, ～られる (for originally る-verbs and 来る) can be shortened to ～れる, so 食べられる can be shortened to 食べれる. Try not to let this casual speak become a habit too early on! Learn the correct form first.

E.g. 漢字は書けますか？ (Can you write Kanji?; 書けます is the polite potential form of 書く.)

E.g. 残念だが、今週末は行けない。 (行けない is the negative potential form of 行く.)

E.g. もう信じられない。 (信じられない is the negative potential form of 信じる.)

Importantly, potential forms do not have direct objects, since no actual action is taken, so を cannot be used. Whenever を is to be used, use が or the topic particles は、も、etc. instead.

E.g. 富士山^{のぼ}が登れた。 (I could climb Mt. Fuji.; 富士山を登れた is wrong!)

E.g. 重い荷物^{にもつ}は持てます。(I am able to hold heavy luggage.; 持てます is the polite potential form of 持つ: the potential form is 持てる.)

G3.13.1 The special cases 見られる、聞ける and the alternatives 見ることができる、聞くことができる (vs. 見える、聞こえる)

The transitive verbs 見る and 聞く are paired with their intransitive counterparts 見える and 聞こえる. However, the potential forms of 見る and 聞く, 見られる and 聞ける, exist. For these two cases, expression of the “ability to perform a verb” meaning is left to the intransitive counterparts. The potential forms take on a special, additional layer of meaning: **to be given the opportunity** to see or hear something.

E.g. 今日は晴^はれて、富士山が見える。(It cleared up today and Mt. Fuji is visible.; 晴れる: (of sky) to clear up)

E.g. 友達のおかげで、映画はタダで見られた。(Thanks to my friend, I was able to watch the movie for free.; タダ: free-of-charge)

E.g. 周り^{まわ}がうるさくて、彼が言っていたことがあんまり聞こえなかった。(The surroundings were noisy and I couldn't really hear what he was saying.; 周り: surroundings)

E.g. 久しぶりに彼の声が聞けた。(For the first time in a long time, I was able to hear his voice.)

That said, it is actually more common to express “given the opportunity” as “the seeing/hearing thing is doable (～{こと/の}ができる)”, as in the following examples.

E.g. 友達のおかげで、映画はタダで見^みる{こと/の}ができた。(Thanks to my friend, I was able to watch the movie for free.; タダ: free-of-charge)

E.g. 久しぶりに彼の声が聞^きく{こと/の}ができた。(For the first time in a long time, I was able to hear his voice.)

G3.13.2 Potential to exist: あり ruby{得{え/う}る}

Interestingly, ある doesn't have a potential form. The round-about way of saying “possible to exist” is 「あることができる」, but this is almost never used. Instead, we use あり得^{え/う}る, which is actually a compound verb made from ある and the auxiliary verb 得^える (meaning to be able to), and not considered to be a potential form of ある by natives (see discussion on [Reddit](#)).

For 得, the unconjugated form can be read as う (slightly more formal and traditional), but all conjugated forms use え. I'd stick to え always, the modern pronunciation (see discussion on [HN](#)).

E.g. そんなことはあり得る。(That kind of situation/event is possible.)

E.g. そんなことはあり得ない。(That kind of situation/event is impossible.)

E.g. 彼が寝坊^{ねぼう}したこともうあり得るね。(It is possible that he overslept.; 寝坊する: to oversleep)

E.g. 其れは、あり得ない話だよ。(That's an impossible story/scenario.)

G3.14 ～にする、～になる auxiliary verbs

All forms in this section allow further conjugations based on the rules of ～する and ～なる.

For adjectives, both <adj>にする and <adj>になる have the standard interpretation of causing something to become the adjective, or to become the adjective itself respectively:

- (revision and extension of §G2.11) **<na-adj>にする / <i-adj root>くする** means to make something become <adj>.

E.g. 静かにする (be/make quiet)、きれいにする (make clean).

E.g. 強くする (make stronger)、小さくする (make smaller).

- **<na-adj>になる / <i-adj root>くなる** means to become <adj>.

E.g. 去年から背が高くなったね。 (Your height has gotten taller from last year, huh?; 背: height)

E.g. 運動しているから、強くなる。 (Because I am exercising, I'll become stronger.)

E.g. 勉強をたくさんしたから、頭がよくなった。 (Because I studied a lot, I became smarter.)

For nouns, **<nn>にする** has a special meaning, though **<nn>になる** preserves the standard interpretation:

- (new!) **<nn>にする** means to decide on <nn> (“do with <nn> as destination”), and is commonly used when ordering things from a menu.

E.g. 私は、ハンバーガーとサラダにします。 (I'll go with the hamburger and salad.; にします is the polite form of にする.)

E.g. 他にいいものがたくさんあるけど、やっぱりこれにする。 (There are many other good things, but as I thought, I'll go with this one.; 他に: besides/in addition to)

- **<nn>になる** means to become <nn>.

E.g. 医者になる。 (Become a doctor.)

For verbs, while we recognise that adverbs can modify verbs, we do not have a way to convert verbs into a modifying adverb, unlike what we can do with adjectives. Instead, we refer to the verb using **こと** (event/thing) or **様** (manner), then tag on **～にする** or **～になる**. In fact, **～ことにする**、**～ことになる**、**～ようにする**、**～ようになる** have special meanings (the last two are usually written in 仮名 alone).

<v>ことに{する/なる} have an nuance of *deciding to <v>*. **<v>ようにする** specifically means *to try to do <v>*. **<v>ようになる** specifically indicates a *change towards <v> which has/will take place*.

- **<v>ことにする** means to decide to <v>. A related form, **<v>ことにしている**, means to decide to make it a rule/practice to <v> (“to continuously decide to <v>”).

E.g. 海外に行くことにした。 (I decided that I will go abroad.)

E.g. 私は6時に起床することにしている。 (I make a practice of getting up at six.)

- **<v>ことになる** means to have been arranged/decided so that <v>.

E.g. 海外に行くことになった。 (It's been arranged/decided that I will go abroad.)

- **<v>ようにする** means to try to make sure that <v>.

E.g. 肉を毎日食べないようにする。 (I will try not to eat meat everyday.)

To express something like “I’m trying to study”, use 「勉強するようにしている」. My previous attempt “勉強しているようにする” is unnatural, because **ようにする** refers to you trying

to do something *in the future*, and 勉強している is already happening. Furthermore, this incorrect form may be misconstrued as “I’m acting like I’m studying”. [GMN]

- <v>ようになる means to come to be that/start to <v>. The implicit nuance is on a change of state from not <v> to <v>.

E.g. 肉を毎日食べないようになった。 (I started to not eat meat everyday.)

Furthermore, because potential verbs describe a state of possibility rather than an actual action, <v potential>ようになる is often used to describe a change (from a state of infeasibility) to a state of feasibility.

E.g. 日本に来て、寿司が食べられるようになった。 (After coming to Japan, I became able to eat sushi.)

E.g. 1年間練習したから、ピアノが弾けるようになった。 (Because I practised for a year, I became able to play the piano.; 弾く: to play a stringed/keyboard instrument)

E.g. 地下に入って、富士山が見えなくなった。 (After going underground, Mt. Fuji became not visible.; 見える → 見えない → 見えなくなる → 見えなくなった)

G3.14.1 ~なくなる versus ~ないようになる

In the final example in the previous section, 見えないようになった is also acceptable. Both mean the same, though 見えないようになった focuses on the *change*. 見えなくなった focuses on the *result*, and is more commonly used. [HN], [goo], [GMN]

E.g. 地下に入って、富士山が見えなくなった。 (After going underground, Mt. Fuji became not visible.; 見える → 見えない → 見えなくなる → 見えなくなった)

E.g. 地下に入って、富士山が見えないようになった。 (After going underground, Mt. Fuji became not visible.)

G3.14.2 Decoupling form and function in Japanese grammar

Read the main discussion on SOF, courtesy of MT.

The phrase 「見えなくなった」 is grammatically correct, but explaining how it came to is not straightforward.

One important takeaway is that “Japanese is not like Indo-European languages, and so at some point, clinging to Indo-European grammatical categories can get in the way”.

It is a misconception to parse 見えなくなった as “見えなく (adverb form of adjective 見えない) + なった (past tense of なる)”.

An adverb refers to a grammatical *function*, specifically the function of describing the *manner* something is or some action is done. Since 見えなく does not mean “in a manner that is not visible”, it is not serving the function of the adverb. “In English, you can say adverbs end in ‘ly’. Does that mean that *bully* is an adverb or that *silly* is an adverb?”

見えなく merely takes on the same grammatical *form* as adverbs. 見えない is in the *form* of an い-adjectives, and so it conjugates like い-adjectives: conjugation rules are based on form, not function. In Japanese, 見えなく is the 連用形 (conjunctive form) of 見えない, the form used during conjugation with other grammatical units. No native will understand 見えなく as “in a manner

that is not visible”; “it’s just part of the form into which the word must *inflect* to function properly in the sentence”.

Specifically, 見えなくなった is made of 見える + ない + なる. To link these into a phrase, each component must be converted into the 連用形 (actually ない comes after the 未然形 (nai stem of a verb) of 見える, which is 見え). Thus the required forms are 見え (未然形)、なく (連用形)、なった (past), resulting in 見えなくなった.

G3.15 Conditionals

There are four ways to say “if” in Japanese.

G3.15.1 Conditional form ～ば

The Takoboto dictionary refers to this as the “provisional form”, for some reason.

This is the simplest, most general conditional, and is a conjugation of nouns, adjectives and verbs. Refer to §GA.1 for detailed conjugation rules. It means if <future ...>ば, then <...>“. The focus is on the conditional predicate, i.e. the part before the ば, not on the statement that follows.

The conjugation rule for nouns and な-adjectives is suffixing 「～であれば」, which is actually using the conditional form あれば of the verb ある. 「である」 is a formal expression we will see much later (???).

In the examples that follow, the focus is underlined.

E.g. 友達に会えれば、買い物に行きます。(If I can meet my friend, we will go shopping.; 会えれば is the conditional form of the potential verb 会える)

E.g. お金があればいいね。(If I had money, it would be good, huh?)

E.g. 楽しければ、私も行く。(If it's fun, I'll go too.)

E.g. 楽しくなければ、私もう行かない。(If it's not fun, I'll also not go.)

E.g. 食べなければ病気になるよ。(If you don't eat, you will become sick.)

G3.15.2 Past conditional form ～たら[ば]

The past conditional form conveys the same idea as the basic conditional form (§G3.15.1), but with a difference in focus: the focus is on the statement that follows the conditional predicate, i.e. the part after the たら[ば], not on the predicate itself. The optional [ば] is used for formality; in causal speech it is omitted.

The predicate always takes on the past tense, though this doesn't necessarily mean the predicate must have happened in the past. It can be a future, not-yet-happened event too, just like English's “if ... *were* to happen/if I *were* ..., then ...”.

In the examples that follow, the focus is underlined.

E.g. 暇だったら [ば]、遊びに行くよ。(If I am free, I'll go to play.)

E.g. 学生だったら [ば]、学生割引で買えます。(If you're a student, you can buy with a student discount.)

E.g. 友達に会えたら [ば]、買い物に行きます。(If I can meet my friend, we will go shopping.)

E.g. お金があったら [ば]いいね。(If I had money, it would be good, huh?)

There is also a second usage, to express surprise at an unexpected past outcome, via the schema <past predicate/prior event>たら[ば]、<unexpected past outcome>.

E.g. 家に帰ったら^{うち}[ば]、誰もいなかった。(When I went home, there was (unexpectedly) no one there.)

E.g. アメリカに行ったら[ば]、たくさん太りました。(As a result of going to America, I (unexpectedly) got really fat.; 太りました is the past polite form of 太る)

The way to disambiguate between the two usages is to first recognise that in either case, when we see/hear たら[ば], we focus on what comes next. Then, if what comes next is in present tense, there's no surprise nuance; if what comes next is in past tense, then there is a surprise nuance.

G3.15.3 Expected consequence conditionals with と

This is similar in nuance to the Cだったら E construct (see 137), with the added element of expectedness.

A と B means that if A happens, then as a natural consequence B is *expected* to happen. The schema is C[だ]と E. Note that the state-of-being だ must be made explicit for nouns and な-adjectives, for disambiguation with other usages of と!

E.g. 先生だと、きっと^{としよう}年上なんじゃないですか。(If he's a teacher, surely he is senior, right?; きっと: surely; なん is the contraction of なの (noun explanatory ender), じゃないですか is a polite form of asking)

E.g. ボールを落とすと落ちる。(If you drop the ball, it will fall.)

E.g. 電気を消すと暗くなる。(If you turn off the lights, it will become dark.; 暗い: dark)

E.g. 学校に行かないと友達と会えないよ。(If you don't go to school, you can't meet your friends.)

E.g. たくさん食べると太るよ。(If you eat a lot, you will get fat.)

G3.15.4 Contextual conditionals with なら[ば]

Contextual conditionals express the nuance that the statement will occur *given that* the contextual predicate holds. It's translated as "If given <predicate>, then <statement>". The schema is <context>なら[ば]、<statement>. The optional [ば] is used for formality; in casual speech it is omitted.

E.g. みんなが行くなら[ば]私も行く。(If given that everyone is going, then I'll go too.)

E.g. アリスさんが言うなら[ば]問題ないよ。(If given that Alice says so, then there's no problem.)

E.g. 図書館はどこですか。図書館なら[ば]、あそこです。(Where is the library? If given that you're talking about the library, then it's over there.)

G3.15.5 もし as an uncertainty embellishment

The adverb もし (and related ones like もしや、もしかし) are only a supplement to add the nuance of uncertainty on whether the predicate/condition is true ("perhaps/by any chance"). One of the four forms above must still be used.

E.g. もしよかったですら、映画を見に行きますか。(past conditional; If by any chance it's ok with you, go to watch movie?; 見に is the adverb of 見る)

E.g. もし時間がないなら、明日でもいいよ。(contextual conditional; If by chance given that there's no time, tomorrow is fine as well.)

G3.16 Prohibition, requirement and permission

Expressing the idea that something must not be done, must be done, or that it's ok to do/not do is common in Japanese.

G3.16.1 Prohibition (things that must not be done) ～ては{だめ/いけない/ならない}

There are three adjectives that convey prohibition: だめ、いけない、ならない. Of the three, だめ is casual (ダメ is even more casual, used in friendly settings; [HN]). Also, ならない is used more for general rules, laws and policies that apply for more than one person, so it can be interpreted as the sternest of the three. In terms of sternness, だめ < いけない < ならない.

いけない comes from ^い行けない which means bad/wrong/naughty, but when used in the prohibitory manner is written in 仮名 alone.

All conjugations of the three adjectives are shown in Table 10. The polite forms taken by いけない and ならない can be explained by interpreting them as present-negative forms of the verbs いける (meaning to go well) and なる (to become) respectively.

Table 10: Prohibition conjugations.

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------|----------|----------|
| Present prohibition | だめ | いけない | ならない |
| Past prohibition | だめだった | いけなかった | ならなかった |
| Present prohibition (polite) | だめです | いきません | なりません |
| Past prohibition (polite) | だめでした | いきませんでした | ならませんでした |

The long-form schema for prohibition is <v te>は{だめ/いけない/ならない}.

E.g. ここに入ってははいけません。(You must not enter here.)

E.g. それを食べてはだめ！(You can't eat that!)

E.g. 夜、遅くまで電話してはならない。(You must not use the phone until late at night.)

E.g. 早く寝てはなりませんでした。(I wasn't allowed to sleep early.)

E.g. 死んではダメだよ！(You can't die!)

E.g. 泳いではなりません。(Do not swim.)

The contractions for expressing prohibition involve the following replacements. Note that the {だめ/いけない/ならない} must not be omitted for contracted prohibition.

$$\begin{array}{lcl}
 \overbrace{\dots\text{て}}^{\text{v te}}\text{は}\{\text{だめ/いけない/ならない}\} & \mapsto & \overbrace{\dots}^{\text{v te fragment}}\text{ちゃ}\{\text{だめ/いけない/ならない}\} \\
 \overbrace{\dots\text{で}}^{\text{v te}}\text{は}\{\text{だめ/いけない/ならない}\} & \mapsto & \overbrace{\dots}^{\text{v te fragment}}\text{じゃ}\{\text{だめ/いけない/ならない}\}
 \end{array}$$

Equivalently, ては \mapsto ちゃ, では \mapsto じゃ.

The second form is used for verbs with endings in {ぐ, む, ぬ, ぶ}; their て-forms use で.

The contracted schema for prohibition is <v te fragment>{ちゃ/じゃ}{だめ/いけない/ならない}.

E.g. ここに入っちゃいけません。(You must not enter here.)

E.g. それを食べちゃだめ！(You can't eat that!)

E.g. 夜、遅くまで電話しちゃならない。(You must not use the phone until late at night.)

E.g. 早く寝ちゃなりませんでした。(I wasn't allowed to sleep early.)

E.g. 死んじゃダメだよ！(You can't die!)

E.g. 泳いじゃなりません。(Do not swim.)

Side note: 「死んじゃった」 is actually a contraction of 「死んでしまう」, where しまう is an auxiliary verb meaning “to do accidentally”, and しまう is contracted to じゃう, then conjugated into the past tense as じゃった. It's got nothing to do with the 死んじゃ we see in this section, which comes from 死んでは.

Finally, the ちゃ/じゃ contractions here are slightly feminine.

G3.16.2 Requirement (things that must be done)

Requirement is expressed as the negation of prohibition. The <v te> is the one that is negated, and there are three grammatical schemae that can be used. All are correct, and are all used at least in formal writing, so learn them all.

The three long-form grammatical schemae for requirement:

1. <v te-negative>は{だめ/いけない/ならない}.

E.g. 毎日学校に行かなくてはなりません。(I must go to school everyday.)

E.g. 宿題をしなくてはいけなかった。(I had to do homework.)

2. <v negative>と{だめ/いけない/ならない}. This uses the expected consequence conditional (§G3.15.3). The literal meaning is: if you don't do something, the expected consequence is no good. This is the easiest form, and is used even outside of the expected consequence characterisation.

E.g. 毎日学校に行かないとなりません。(I must go to school everyday.)

E.g. 宿題をしなといけなかった。(I had to do homework.)

3. <v conditional-negative>{だめ/いけない/ならない}. This uses the conditional form (§G3.15.1). For requirement, because the verb is negated, the conditional-negative always contains ～なければ.

E.g. 毎日学校に行かなければなりません。(I must go to school everyday.)

E.g. 宿題をしなければいけなかった。(I had to do homework.)

In casual speech, however, people default to either the <v negative>と{だめ/いけない/ならない} or the contractions that follow. When used to express requirement, the expected consequence conditional と (§G3.15.3) loses the expected consequence nuance (it's used in more situations that what it was originally defined for).

The contractions for expressing requirement involve the following replacements. Note that the {だめ/いけない/ならない} is omitted for contracted requirement.

| | |
|-----------------|--|
| [first schema] | $\overbrace{\dots \text{なくては}\{\text{だめ/いけない/ならない}\}}^{\text{v te-negative}} \mapsto \overbrace{\dots \text{な}}^{\text{v negative fragment}} \quad \text{くちゃ}$ |
| [second schema] | $\overbrace{\dots \text{ない}\{\text{と}\{\text{だめ/いけない/ならない}\}\}}^{\text{v negative}} \mapsto \overbrace{\dots \text{ないと}}^{\text{v negative}}$ |
| [third schema] | $\overbrace{\dots \text{なければ}\{\text{だめ/いけない/ならない}\}}^{\text{v conditional-negative}} \mapsto \overbrace{\dots \text{な}}^{\text{v negative fragment}} \quad \text{きゃ}$ |

Equivalently, なくては \mapsto なくちゃ, なければ \mapsto なきゃ.

For the first schema contraction, なくちゃ is the colloquial form of なくては, which is an abbreviation of なくてはいいけない. For the third schema contraction, なきゃ is the colloquial form of なければ, which is the conditional-negative form of the verb ある. In a sense, every verb has two colloquial “requirement” forms: …なくちゃ and …なきゃ, based on their negative forms.

Note that these contractions cannot be conjugated into the past tense, i.e. “～なくちゃった”, “～なきちゃった”, “～なくちゃない”, “～なきやない” do not exist! [TNSJ] If you want to mean requirement in the past, use any of the three long form schemae above. If you want to mean prohibition, use the one contracted schema in §G3.16.1. If you want to mean not a requirement (i.e. okay to not do), use the one schema in §G3.16.3.

Here are the three contracted grammatical schemae for requirement.

1. <v negative fragment ending in な>くちゃ.

E.g. 毎日学校に行かなくちゃ。 (I must go to school everyday.)

E.g. 宿題をしなくちゃ。 (I have to do homework.)

2. <v negative>と.

E.g. 毎日学校に行かないと。 (I must go to school everyday.)

E.g. 宿題をしないと。 (I have to do homework.)

3. <v negative fragment ending in な>きゃ.

E.g. 毎日学校に行かなきゃ。 (I must go to school everyday.)

E.g. 宿題をしなきゃ。 (I have to do homework.)

(Notice that the homework example has been changed to present tense; the past tense has no contractions.)

Finally, the なくちゃ contraction here is slightly feminine.

G3.16.3 Permission (things that are okay to do or not to do) ～てもいい

The schema for permission is simply <allowed v te>も{いい/大丈夫/構^{かま}わない}. Other permissive enders work too but these three are the most common. 構^{かま}わない is the negative form of 構^{かま}う, meaning to mind. For <v te>もいい, the も may be dropped in casual speech.

E.g. 全部食べて[も]いいよ。 (You can go ahead and eat it all.; “Even if you eat it all, it’s good, you know.”)

E.g. 全部食べなくて[も]いいよ。 (You don't have to eat it all.)

E.g. もう帰って[も]いい? (Can I go home already?)

E.g. これ、ちょっと見て[も]いい? (Can I take a quick look at this?)

E.g. 全部飲んでも大丈夫だよ。 (It's okay if you drink it all.)

E.g. 全部飲んでも構わないよ。 (You can drink it all, I don't mind.)

G3.17 Desires, invitation and suggestions

This section concerns the expression of direct desires and discreet suggestions.

G3.17.1 Desiderative form ～たい

Takoboto and most sources simply call this the たい form, but desiderative, meaning expressing a desire to, is more descriptive.

The conjugation rule is simple: <stem>たい. This transforms the verb into an い-adjective (in terms of form), but still retaining the behaviour of verbs to use verb particles を、に、へ (§G2.9). Its form conjugate like い-adjectives: ～たい (present-positive desiderative), ～たくない (present-negative desiderative), ～たかった (past-positive desiderative), ～たくなかった (past-negative desiderative).

Note that ある does not have a desiderative form: inanimate objects cannot desire anything. いる's desiderative form is いたい.

The desiderative form can only be used from the first person, because you cannot read other people's mind and express what they want to do. To refer to other people's desires, use direct or indirect quotations (???). Questions about other people's desires are permitted because we are not making presumptions.

E.g. ずっと一緒にいたい。 (I want to be together forever.)

E.g. 何をしたいですか。 (What do you want to do?)

E.g. 犬と遊びたいですか。 (Do you want to play with dog?)

E.g. オン前に行きたい。 (I want to go to a hot spring.)

E.g. ケーキ、食べたくないの? (You don't want to eat cake?)

E.g. 食べなくなかったけど食べなくなった。 (I didn't want to eat, but I became wanting to eat.)

E.g. 食べなくなかった。 (I became not wanting to eat.; to parse this, split it as 食べた|くな|くなった: eat + negative desire + became.)

G3.17.2 Auxiliary adjective ほしい

The 「<nn>が欲しい」 construct means to want <nn>. To express that we want a verb <v> done, or that we want the listener to do <v>, we use the auxiliary adjective ほしい. This auxiliary usage is written in 仮名 alone.

The auxiliary adjective ほしい is actually rarely used in practice, since there are other more appropriate ways to make requests (???).

E.g. 大好きぬいぐるみが欲しい! (I want a big stuffed doll!; ぬいぐるみ: stuffed toy)

E.g. 全部食べてほしいんだけど…。 (I want it all eaten but...; This does not say “I want to eat it all”: that would be 全部食べたいんだ。)

E.g. 部屋をきれいにしてほしいのよ。 (I want the room cleaned up, you know.)

G3.17.3 Volitional form: invitation 〜^{〜お}う/〜よう/〜ましょう

“Volitional” means “relating to the use of one’s will”. The volitional form is used to express that the speaker is setting out to do something. In simpler terms, it expresses the idea of invitation, and translates to “Let’s/Shall we” in English. Refer to §GA.1 for a full table of conjugations. The volitional conjugations for the two exception verbs are best memorised, there’s no simple rule explanation (しよう、来よう).

Both casual and polite volitional forms exist, and the polite form must come at the end of the sentence.

Note that the volitional form only has one tense: starting from the present, looking into the future. It cannot be used with a past tense verb like “食べたよう”.

E.g. 今日は何をしようか。 (What shall we do today?)

E.g. 今日は何をしましょうか。 (What shall we do today? (polite))

E.g. テマパークに行こう！ (Let’s go to the theme park!)

E.g. テマパークに行きましょう！ (Let’s go to the theme park! (polite))

E.g. 明日は何を食べようか。カレーを食べよう！ (What shall we eat tomorrow? Let’s eat curry!)

E.g. 明日は何を食べましょうか。カレーを食べましょう！ (What shall we eat tomorrow? Let’s eat curry! (polite))

G3.17.4 Suggestions {ば/たらどう}

Suggestions are expressed by suffixing 「どう」 to the conditional form (ば; §G3.15.1) or the past conditional たら (§G3.15.2). In English, the literal translation is “If you do <v>, how is it?” and the natural translation is “How about doing <v>?”

E.g. たまにご両親と話せばどう？ (How about talking with your parents once in a while?; たまに: occasionally; 話せば is the conditional form of 話す)

E.g. 銀行に行ったらどうですか。 (How about going to the bank?)

G3.18 Quotation: performing actions on relative clauses

We first came across relative clauses in §G2.10.1, where they are used as noun modifiers using the schema <relative verb clause><nn>.

In order to perform an action (e.g. thinking, saying, hearing, variants of each, or even simply referring to it in a bigger complex sentence) on a relative clause, we use the concept of **quotation**, which encapsulates the relative clause into a unit, upon which we can perform actions. This is an important construct in Japanese as the Japanese seldom affirm definite statements, and prefer to express uncertainty or probability, which requires performing corresponding actions (e.g. thinking) on relative clauses.

G3.18.1 Direct quotation 「...」 と

The と particle is the quote marker particle, as first seen in §G2.1. The syntax is 「<quote>」 と <v>. <v> can be anything like 言う、聞く、呼ぶ (to call)、叫ぶ (to scream)、呟く (to mutter), etc. The <v> doesn't need to immediately follow と; other adverbs and sentence parts-of-speech can come in between, so long as <v> appears in the clause somewhere after と.

E.g. アリスが、「寒い」と言った。(“Cold”, said Alice.)

E.g. 「寒い」とアイリスが田中に言った。(“Cold”, said Alice to Tanaka)

E.g. 「今日は授業がない」と先生から聞いたんだけど。(It is that I heard from the teacher “there is no class today”...)

G3.18.2 Indirect quotation と、って

Also known as interpreted quotation, indirect quotation quotes *along the lines* of what the speaker actually said. Thoughts and considerations are often expressed as indirect quotes, with the verbs 思う and 考える respectively. The と particle is used here too, **except that unconjugated nouns and な-adjective state-of-being must be explicitly declared with な**.

In the following examples, the indirect quotation is underlined.

When 何 is used to mean “what”, it is read as なに; when it is used to mean “how many”, it is read as なん. [NHK]

E.g. 先生から今日は授業がないと聞いたんだけど。(I heard from the teacher that there is no class today.; Note the absence of direct quotation marks.)

E.g. カレーを食べようと思ったけど、食べる時間がなかった。(I thought about setting out to eating curry but didn't have time to eat.; **DO NOT confuse なかった and なった: the former is the past-negative of ある, and the latter is the past tense of なる.**)

E.g. 今、どこに行こうかと考えている。(Now, I'm considering where to set out to go.; this is an example of the question marker in indirect quotations, §G3.4.4)

E.g. 彼は、これは何だと言いましたか。(What did he say this is?; **Here, the explicit state-of-being assertion だ is compulsory!**)

E.g. 彼は、何と言いましたか。(What did he say?)

E.g. 彼は、これは何かと言いました。(He asked what this is.)

E.g. 彼は高校生だと聞いたけど、信じられない。(I heard that he is a high school student, but I can't believe it.)

The casual version of the と particle is って. Specifically, <quote>と<v> can be shortened to <quote>って. The verb is dropped and the speaker will hope that the listener can **understand everything from context! Usually, the omitted verb after って is 言った (“to say”), so if it's any other verb, don't drop it.**

E.g. 今、時間がないと聞いたんだけど、本当? (I heard you don't have time now, is that true?)

E.g. 今、時間がないって聞いたんだけど、本当? (I heard you don't have time now, is that true?)

The following are examples of contextual guessing in action. **The omitted verb is assumed to be 言った by default.**

E.g. 今、時間がないってけど、本当？ (You **said** you don't have time now, is that true?)

E.g. 智子^{ともこ}は来年、海外に行くんだって。 (Tomoko **said** that she's going overseas next year.)

E.g. もうお金がないって。 (I already **told** you I have no money.)

E.g. え^{なん}？何だって？ (Huh? What did you **say**?)

G3.18.3 って as a replacement for topic particle は

って can be used to talk about practically anything, not just as the informal form of the quotation marker と. It is used everywhere in casual speech, usually to bring up a topic.

E.g. 明日^{あした}って、雨が降るんだって。 (About tomorrow, I hear that it's going to rain.; first って is a replacement for は, second って contains the hidden verb “to hear”. [A bit weird. I wouldn't use the trailing って like this; I'll just omit it.](#))

E.g. アリスって、すごくいい人でしょう？ (Alice is a very good person, right?; でしよ[う] is the [formal] conjectural form of です.)

G3.19 Definitions and descriptions with the abstract という/って (and slang つう)

言う means to say, and when used in the abstract way, is written as いう. It can be used with the と particle to define, describe and to refer to something itself.

G3.19.1 Definition という

言う has a second meaning, “to call/name”. However, since nothing is actually said, it is common to write it in 仮名 only (also ok to write it in 漢字).

E.g. これは、日本語で何といいますか。 (What do you call this in Japanese?; 言う here means to call/name)

E.g. 私は、アリスといいます。 (I am called Alice.; 言う here means to call/name)

In the following examples, the <called> という <thing> schema is used.

E.g. これは、何という魚ですか。この魚は、鯛^{たい}といいます。 (What is this fish referred to as? It's known as Tai.)⁴

E.g. ルミネというデパートはどこにあるか、知っていますか。 (Do you know where the department store called “Lumine” is?)

E.g. 「友達」は、英語で「friend」という意味です。 (The meaning of “tomodachi” in English is “friend”).

G3.19.2 Referring to relative clause という{の/こと} and {こう/そう/ああ/どう}いう{の/こと} and って

When a relative clause is encapsulated with 「と」, it must be followed by a verb. Sometimes, we want to simply refer to the relative clause in a bigger complex sentence, and in this case the いう verb serves as a generic verb (it can but in this usage it doesn't mean that you're saying the quote). The schema <quote>という{の/こと} is a very common construction.

⁴This example can also be written as 「この魚は何といいますか。」 HN, but could technically be misconstrued as “About this fish, what does it say?”. Prefer the <called> という <thing> schema.

E.g. 主人公が犯人だったという{の/こと}が一番面白かった。(The most interesting thing was that the main character was the criminal.)

E.g. 日本人はお避けに弱いという{の/こと}は本当？(It is true that Japanese people are weak to alcohol?)

E.g. 独身だという{の/こと}は、嘘だったの？(Was it a lie that you are single?)

E.g. リブートという{の/こと}は、パソコンを再起動するという{の/こと}です。(Reboot means to restart your computer.)

E.g. みきさんが洋介別れたということだ。ということは、みきさんは、今彼氏がいらないということ？そう。そういうこと。(I heard that Miki-chan broke up with Yousuke. Does that mean Miki-chan doesn't have a boyfriend now? That's right. That's what it means.; **ということだ specifically indicates hearsay or conjecture about others' feelings**)

If the relative clause can be inferred from context, it can be replaced with a generic way of doing something, using the pre-noun adjectivals こういう、そういう、ああいう、どういう (and the こんあ、そんあ、あんあ、どんあ forms too).

E.g. あんたは、いつもこういう時に来るんだから、困るんだよ。(It's because you always come at times like these that I'm trouble.)

E.g. そういう人と一緒に仕事をするのは、嫌だよね。(Doing work together with that type of person would be unpleasant, huh?)

E.g. ああいう人と結婚できたら、幸せになれるとお見ます。(I think if you can marry that type of person, you can become happy.)

E.g. 大学にいかないって、どういう意味なの？(What do you mean, "I'm not going to university"?)

Finally, って is not only a short form for と<v> after quotations. It is also a short form for the generic verb という and any following particles, so <quote>という<particles> can be shortened to <quote>って. Again, the speaker will hope that the listener can **understand everything from context**.

E.g. 来年留学するという{の/こと}は、智子のこと？(The studying abroad next year thing, is that Tomoko?)

E.g. 来年留学するって智子のこと？(The studying abroad next year thing, is that Tomoko?)

There's a further abbreviation of って to て (and replacement of と with て, which is slightly easier to say), **but this only works for the generic verb. For actually said things, this contraction is invalid! This is stepping into the territory of native lazy speak, I'd say don't worry about this too much.**

E.g. てことは、みきさんは、いま彼氏がいなくてこと？(both て replaced という; the second one could've also replaced the trailing こと)

E.g. ていうか、もう帰らないとだめですけど。(ていうか instead of というか for rephrasing and refining definitions, §G3.19.3)

E.g. みきさんが、明日来ないって。(Miki-chan says she isn't coming tomorrow.; **“みきさんが、明日来ないて。” is wrong!**)

G3.19.3 Rephrasing and refining definitions with というか、connector

The definition expression いう (§G3.19.1) can be suffixed with the question marker か to add a questioning element, useful for rephrasing or redefining something. This is common in casual speech. As a connector, it tags to the thing that's being rephrased, as in <to rephrase> いうか、<rephrase>.

E.g. みきちゃんは、あんたの彼女でしょう？う～ん、彼女というか、友達というか、なんというか...{} (Miki-chan is your girlfriend, right? Um, you might say girlfriend, or friend, or something...)

E.g. お酒は好きというか、ないと生きていけない。(I like alcohol, or rather, I can't live on without it.; 生きていけない is the negative potential form of 生きていく (meaning to live on). This is tricky to parse. The presence of けない correctly hints to us that some negative potential form is in use, but it is not the negative potential form of 生きている (that would be 生きてられない). The presence of いけない might also wrongly lead us to think 生きる is prohibited (that would be 生きてはいけない). The correct way to parse is to recognise that け must be the え form of some く verb, which leads to 生きていく. To disassociate from the prohibition いけない, recognise that the は particle is missing, which is required by the prohibition schema てはいけない.)

E.g. 多分行かないと思う。というか、お金がないから、行けない。(Don't think I'll go. Or rather, I can't go because I have no money.)

E.g. というか、もう帰らないとだめですけど。(Rather than that, I have to go home already.)

G3.19.4 Referring to relative clause with annoyance つう (slang)

The generic verb いう can be shortened to つう. It is harder to say (violates core slang principle of making things easier to say, §G3.24), but it has a hard, hissing sound, so it is used to convey anger. It is masculine. It can sometimes be further shortened to just つ. つって is the て-from of つう.

E.g. つうかというか、なんでお前がここにいんるんのよ！(Or rather, why are you here?!)

E.g. 宿題で時間がないつってと言ってんのに、みきちゃんとデートしに行ったらしい。(Although he's saying he doesn't have time because of homework, I hear he went on a date with Miki-chan.; デートする → デートし (stem); らしい: appearance, based on evidence/trustworthy hearsay)

E.g. 明日は試験だぞ。つっても、勉強はしてないだろうな。(Yo, tomorrow's the test. Even if I say that, you probably didn't study anyway, huh?; してない is a contraction of していない (from している))

E.g. だから、違うんだつうの！(Like I said, you're wrong!)

The annoyance can be further emphasised using つつう.

E.g. だから、違うんだつつうの！(Like I said, you're wrong!)

G3.19.5 Referring to relative clause with exasperation ってば/ったら (slang)

To take annoyance to the next level, the generic verb 「いう」's conditional form 「といえば」 (§G3.15.1) and past conditional form 「といったら」 (§G3.15.2) can be abbreviated to ってば or ったら respectively. The (abbreviated) conditionals of いう are used to express the exasperation of repeating yourself multiple times, or with someone not listening to you.

E.g. もう行くってば！(I told you I'm going already!)

E.g. あなたったら、いつも忘れるんだから。 (Because you're always forgetting.)

G3.19.6 Expressing disagreement or dissatisfaction (whiningly) with **だって**

だって is a conjunction used to express disagreement or dissatisfaction whiningly.

E.g. しないとだめだよ。だって、時間がないからできないよ。 (Have to do it, you know. But (even so), can't do it because there is no time.)

E.g. 行かなくなくてもいいよ。だって、みんな行くって。私もいかないと。 (Don't have to go, you know. But (even so), everybody said they're going. I have to go too.)

G3.20 Trialling something out or attempting something

The "try" in English is heavily overloaded. In Japanese, there are separate grammatical expressions for each sense of "try". We've already seen one sense: <v>ようにする, meaning to try to make sure that <v>, as in *putting in effort* to make a habit of <v>.

This section concerns two other senses: *trialling* something out, and *attempting* to do something.

G3.20.1 Trialling something out with the auxiliary verb **てみる**

This is expressed with <v te>みる, using the auxiliary verb みる (from 見る). Think of it as <v> and see (the outcome). Further conjugations follow rules of the 見る verb. The polite form is みます.

E.g. お好み焼きを初めて^き食べてみたけど、とてもおいしかった！ (I tried eating okonomiyaki for the first time and it was very tasty!)

E.g. お酒を飲んでみましたが、すごく眠くなりました。 (I tried drinking alcohol and I became extremely sleepy.; 眠く is the adverbial form of 眠い)

E.g. 新しいデパートに行ってみる。 (I'm going to check out the new department store.)

E.g. 広島^{ひろしま}のお好み焼き^きを^や食べてみたい！ (I want to try eating Hiroshima okonomiyaki!; みたい is the desiderative form of みる)

G3.20.2 Attempting something with <v volitional>と{する/<v>}

This is expressed with <v volitional>とする. Attempting to do something requires exercising the will to set out to do something, hence the involvement of the volitional form. The volitional (and と) together convey the information that we're discussing *attempting*. Further conjugations follow the rules of the verb する.

E.g. 毎日、勉強を^き避けようとする。 (Everyday, she attempts to avoid study.; 避けよう is the volitional form of 避ける.)

E.g. 無やりに部屋に入ろうとしている。 (He is attempting to force his way into the room.)

E.g. 早くな寝ようとしたけど、結局^{けっきょく}は徹夜^{てつや}した。 (I attempted to sleep early but ended up staying up all night.)

E.g. お酒を飲もうとしたが、奥さんが止めた。 (he tried to drink alcohol but his wife stopped him.)

To describe the attempt itself with another verb <v> (e.g. to think to attempt, to decide to attempt), use <v volitional>と<v>.

E.g. 勉強をなるべく避けようと思った。(I thought I would attempt to avoid as much as possible studying.; なるべく: as much as possible)

E.g. 毎日事務に行こうと決めた。(I decided to attempt to go to the gym everyday.)

G3.21 Giving and receiving objects and favours

Giving and receiving gifts is a big part of Japanese culture. There are four verbs of interest: あげる、やる、くれる、もらう。

The act of giving is associated with the imagery of the gift/favour “going up” to the recipient, and the act of receiving is associated with the imagery of the gift/favour “coming down” from the giver. This leads to the verbs for giving (first person) あげる (上げる), and giving (second person) くれる (whose honorific version of 下さる).

G3.21.1 Giving [as a favour] [て]あげる、[て]やる、[て]くれる

There are three verbs for the act of giving, each with their own use.

- あげる: to give (first person, or third person from giver's POV). The speaker must use あげる when the speaker is giving something, and the auxiliary verb <v te>あげる when the speaker is doing someone a **favour**.

E.g. 私が友達にプレゼントをあげた。(first person; I gave present to friend.; the sentence ordering can be mixed up, e.g. 「私がプレゼントを友達にあげた。」)

E.g. これは先生にあげる。(first person; I'll give this to teacher.)

E.g. 学生がこれを先生にあげる。(third person; The student give this to teacher (looking at it from the giver's POV).; changing POV to that of recipient warrants a change to くれる)

E.g. 車を買ってあげるよ。(first person; I'll give you the favour of buying the car./I'll buy the car for you.)

E.g. 代わりに行ってあげる。(first person; I'll give you the favour of going as your substitute.; かわりに: as a substitute for)

E.g. 友達が父にいいことを教えてあげた。(third person; Friend gave the favour of teaching something good to my dad (looking at it from giver's POV).; changing POV to that of recipient warrants a change to くれる)

- やる: to give (first person), when the receiver is a pet/animal. This is never used for people, but is included here to point out that やる here means “to give” and not “to do” (colloquial).

E.g. 犬に餌をやった? (Did you give the dog food?; 餌: food for animals)

- くれる: to give (second person, or third person from recipient's POV). The speaker must use くれる when someone else is giving something to the speaker, or the auxiliary verb <v te>くれる when someone else is doing the speaker a favour.

As the recipient, the speaker uses くれる to emphasise the action of giving, and もらう to emphasise the action of receiving.

E.g. 友達が私にプレゼントをくれた。(second person; Friend gave present to me.)

E.g. これは、先生がくれた。(second person; Teacher gave this to me.)

E.g. 車を買ってくれるの? (second person; Will you give me the favour of buying a car?/
Will you buy me a car?)

E.g. 代わりに行ってくれる? (second person; Will you give me the favour of going as my
substitute?/Will you go as my substitute?)

E.g. 先生がこれを学生にくれる。 (third person; The teacher give this to student (looking at
it from the recipient's POV).; changing POV to that of giver warrants a change to あげる)

E.g. 友達が父にいいことを教えてくれた。 (third person; Friend gave the favour of teaching
something good to my dad (looking at it from recipient's POV).; changing POV to that of
giver warrants a change to あげる)

To better illustrate the difference between first and second person (あげる、くれる), compare the
following sentences.

E.g. 先生が教えてあげるんですか。 (Teacher, will you be giving the favour of teaching to (anybody
other than the speaker)?)

E.g. 先生が教えてくれるんですか。 (Teacher, will you be giving the favour of teaching to (anybody
including the speaker)?)

When speaking as the recipient of an action or favour, as a recipient the verb くれる must be used.

E.g. 私が全部食べてあげました。 (I gave the favour of eating it all.; **it's incorrect to use 食べて
くれる here as "I" am not receiving the favour**)

E.g. 友達がプレゼントを私にくれた。 (Friend gave present to me.; **it's incorrect to use あげた
here because "I" am not the giver**)

G3.21.2 Receiving [as a favour] [て]もらう

There is only one verb for receiving, もらう. To indicate who the speaker is receiving something
from, use the from-marker particler から. The past form もらった is much more commonly used,
to indicate that the speaker received something. The auxiliary verb <v te>もらう is used when
the speaker is receiving the favour of someone doing <v te> for their sake.

As the recipient, the speaker uses くれる to emphasise the action of giving, and もらう to emphasise
the action of receiving.

Important: for もらう, に marks the **giver**! <receiver>が, <giver>{に/から}. The subject is
performing the receiving, and the target of receiving is the giver.

E.g. 私が友達にプレゼントをもらった。 (I received present from friend.)

E.g. 友達からプレゼントをもらった。 (I received present from friend.)

E.g. これは友達に買ってもらった。 (About this, I received the favour from friend of buying this.)

E.g. 宿題をチェックしてもらいたかったけど、時間がなくて無理だった。 (I wanted to receive
the favour of homework checking, but there was no time and it was impossible.; もらう → もら
いたい → もらいたかった)

As a non-typical use case, もらう can be used by the giver speaker if they want to emphasise that
they are the one from whom the receiver received something.

E.g. その時計は私からもらったのよ。 (He received that watch from me.)

G3.21.3 Soliciting favours (≠ request) with auxiliary verbs てくれる、もらえる}

Not to be confused with making requests (§G3.22)! Asking for favours is softer and less direct: “would you do X for me”, while making a request is more direct: “please do X”.

The previous sections dealt with expressing the *actual event* of giving a gift or favour. The *solicitation* of a positive favour can be expressed as a question with <v te>てくれる? or <v te>もらえる? (note the potential form of もらえる). Because the speaker is the recipient of the favour, あげる is not applicable.

～てくれる is used to ask for favours, but when its imperative form is used, it becomes a command
～てくれ (§G3.22.4).

E.g. あなたが、私に千円を貸してくれる? (Will you give me the favour of lending 1000 yen?; 貸す: to lend)

E.g. 私が、あなたに千円を貸してもらえる? (Can I receive the favour of you lending 1000 yen?)

The examples include the explicit giver and receiver. They are usually omitted if obvious.

E.g. 千円を貸してくれる? (Will you give me the favour of lending 1000 yen?)

E.g. 千円を貸してもらえる? (Can I receive the favour of you lending 1000 yen?)

The request can be made softer by using the negative てくれない? てもらえない? (and their polite forms てくれませんか、てもらえませんか。).

E.g. ちょっと静かにしてくれない? (Won't you be a little quiet?)

E.g. 感じて書いてもらえませんか。 (Can you write this in kanji for me?)

The solicitation of a negative favour can be expressed as a question as <v te-negative>でくれる? or <v te-negative>でもらえる?. Basically negate the <v te> and attach で instead of て, then either くれる? or もらえる? as before.

E.g. 全部食べないでくれませんか。 (Can you not eat it all?)

E.g. 高いものを買わないでくれる? (Can you not buy expensive things?)

G3.22 Making requests (≠ favours)

Not to be confused with asking for favours (§G3.21.3)! Asking for favours is softer and less direct: “would you do X for me”, while making a request is more direct: “please do X”.

The following sections discuss four ways to issue requests, in decreasing order of politeness:

ください > ちょうだい > なさい > imperative form.

G3.22.1 Honorific requests with ～てください、～て

ください。 is the most common way of making requests. It is a special conjugation of くださる, the honorific form of くれる (§G3.21.1, §G3.21.3). ～ください must come at the end of the sentence or relative clause, just like です、ます.

On its own, くれる/ください can mean “please give me/hand me an object” as a transitive verb, using the schema <object>をください.

E.g. それをください。 (Please give me that.)

E.g. それをくれる？ (Can you give me that?)

E.g. 「それをください」とお父さんが言った。 (Father said, “Please give me that”).

ください can also mean “please do for me” as an auxiliary verb, with the schema <v te>ください. Negative requests are made the same way as with solicitation of favours (§G3.21.3), using <v te-negative>てください.

E.g. 漢字で書いてください。 (Please write it in kanji.)

E.g. ゆっくり話してください。 (Please speak slowly.)

E.g. 落書きを書かないでください。 (Please don’t draw graffiti.; 落書き: graffiti)

E.g. ここに来ないでください。 (Please don’t come here.)

In casual speech, the ください is commonly dropped, so the naked te-form (or naked te-negative form) is used for making requests. Potential confusions with って, which is a short form for the indirect quotation <quote>と<v> (§G3.18.2) or the generic verb <quote>という<particles> (§G3.19.2).

E.g. 日本語で話して。 (Please speak in Japanese.)

E.g. 消しゴムを貸して。 (Please lend me the eraser.; 消しゴム: eraser)

E.g. 遠いところに行かないで。 (Please don’t go to a far place.)

G3.22.2 Casual requests with ～ちょうだい。

頂戴 is 謙譲語 (humble language) for the transitive verb “to receive” and the auxiliary verb “please give me/do for me” (as ～をちょうだい/～てちょうだい). It is usually written using 仮名 alone. When written in 漢字, it is used as part of very formal expressions like 頂戴致します (いたす: to do (humble)).

The grammatical rules for ちょうだい are exactly the same as ください, so it must come at the end of the sentence or relative clause. The same schemae apply: <object>をちょうだい and <v te>ちょうだい.

E.g. スプーンをちょうだい。 (Please give me the spoon.)

E.g. ここに名前を書いてちょうだい。 (Please write your name here.)

G3.22.3 Polite firm requests with ～なさい/～な

なさい is a special honorific conjugation of する, and is a soft (polite) yet firm way of issuing a command. Common example usage situations include a mother scolding her child and a teacher wanting a delinquent student to pay attention. The schema is <v stem>なさい.

E.g. よく聞きなさい！ (Listen well!)

E.g. ここで座りなさい。 (Sit here.; 座る: to sit)

E.g. やめなさい！ (Stop!)

In casual speech, さい can be dropped, leaving <v stem>な. Do not confuse this (e.g. 返信しな) with the imperative-negative form (e.g. 返信するな, §G3.22.4), which is <v dict>な!

E.g. まだいっぱい合うから、たくさん食べな。 (There’s still a lot, so eat a lot.; 食べな is the contraction of 食べなさい)

E.g. それでいいと思うなら、そうしなよ。 (If you think that's fine, then go ahead and do it.; しな is the contraction of しなさい)

G3.22.4 Imperative form

The imperative form is the most direct and is thus rarely used in everyday conversation. It is a coarse type of speech that's only really used in fictional works, or in places where a stern command must be given (e.g. traffic stop signs). Refer to §GA.1 for a full table of conjugations. Here, する、来る and くれる are exceptions (しろ、こい、くれ).

～てくれる is used to ask for favours (§G3.21.3), but when its imperative form is used, it becomes a command ～てくれ.

E.g. 好きにしろ。 (Do as you please.)

E.g. あっち行け! (Go away!)

E.g. 頑張れ! (Keep at it!; imperative form of 頑張る)

E.g. 早く酒を持ってきてくれ。 (Hurry up and bring some alcohol.; 持つ → 持ってくる → 持ってきてくれ)

E.g. 日本語で話してくれ。 (Speak in Japanese.)

E.g. 消しゴムを貸してくれ。 (Lend me the eraser.; 消すゴム: eraser)

E.g. 遠いところに行かないでくれ。 (Don't go to a far place.)

E.g. 止まれ。 (Stop (road sign).)

E.g. やめろ! (Stop!)

E.g. 死ね! (Die!)

Do not confuse this (e.g. 返信するな) with the polite firm request contraction ～な (e.g. 返信しな, §G3.22.3), whose schema is <v stem>な!

E.g. それを食べるな! (Don't eat that!)

E.g. 変なことを言うな! (Don't say weird things!)

G3.23 The number system

Read the supplementary article on [Tofugu](#).

Finally we reach the point in the textbook that talks about the number systems in the Japanese language. There are three counting languages, based on the origins of the words: 和語 (Japanese language), 漢語 (Chinese origin/Sino-Japanese word), and 外来語 (loanword of Western origin).

The 漢語 counting method is the most common (いち、に、さん、し、よん、ご、ろく、しち、はち、く、じゅう). However, 4 is most often pronounced as よん (from 和語) to avoid the homophone with 死 (death), 7 is most often pronounced as なな (from 和語) to avoid confusion with いち, and 9 is most often pronounced as きゅう to avoid the homophone with 苦 (suffering). Above 10, the reading is almost always よん and なな.

The 和語 counting method (ひ、ふ、み、よ、い、む、な、や、こ、とお) is exclusively used for small numbers from 1 to 10 (and exceptions like 20 days/-th day, 20 years old, sometimes 30 and 40).

The exception is the reading for 4 (よん) and 7 (なな), which are almost always used regardless of how big or small the number is.

The 外来語 counting method follows English pronunciations (ワン、ツー、スリー、フォー、ファイブ、シックス、セブン、エイト、ナイン、テン) and is most notably used for the セット counter (for sets). It is rarely used for pure counting.

It is customary to write large numbers only in numbers as even 漢字 can become difficult to decipher. Even though Japanese uses a new word for every 10^4 (like Chinese, and instead of the 10^3 divide used by English and other languages), when written in numerals, the same 10^3 divide is used. E.g. 一萬^{いちまん} is written 10,000 or 1 0 0 0 0.

G3.23.1 Numbers smaller than 1

Zero in Japanese is 零^{れい}, but more commonly pronounced as either ゼロ or マル. For reading decimals, we say 点^{てん} for the dot, and read each individual number after the decimal point.

E.g. 0.0021 is ゼロ、点、ゼロ、ゼロ、二^に、一^{いち}.

For negative numbers, simply say 「マイナス」 before the number.

E.g. -29.0021 is マイナス、二十^{にじゅうきゅう}九、text{点}{てん}、ゼロ、ゼロ、二^に、一^{いち}.

G3.23.2 Dates

Read the main article on [Wikipedia](#).

A date is formally written as YYYY 年 MM 月 DD 日. For instance, at the time of writing, today's date is 2024 年 1 月 6 日.

The date can alternatively be written using the Japanese regnal (counting up from the monarch's ascension) calendar, using the format 元号^{げんごう} n 年 (元号: era name). n starts as 1 in the Gregorian year the era's emperor ascends to the throne (also known as the 元年^{げんねん}, "origin year" of era), and counts up to 2 the following Gregorian year. For instance, at the time of writing, today's date is 令和 6 年 1 月 6 日. The year 令和 6 年 can be abbreviated to R6 as well. Because the final year in a previous era is the same as the first year in the following era, during years of transition there are two ways to refer to that year (e.g. 2019 is both 平成 31^{へいせい} and 令和 1^{れいわ}).

For the modern eras (starting from 1868), each emperor corresponds to one era. Each emperor inherits their era's 元号^{げんごう} posthumously as <元号>天皇^{てんのう}, so it is rude to refer to the emperor using the era name! The reigning emperor is to be referred to as 天皇陛下^{てんのうのへいか} ("His Majesty the Emperor") or 今上天皇^{きんじょうてんのう} ("current emperor").

The eras are summarised in Table 11.

Table 11: Modern eras in the Japanese regnal calendar.

| 元号 ^{げんごう} | Emperor | 元年 ^{げんねん} | Abbreviation range | Notable years |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------------|
| 明治 ^{めいじ} Meiji | 睦仁 ^{むつひと} Mutsuhito | 1868・明治 1 | M1–M45 | |
| 大正 ^{たいしょう} Taishō | 嘉仁 ^{よしひと} Yoshihito | 1912・明治 4 5・大正 1 | T1–T15 | |
| 昭和 ^{しやうわ} Shōwa | 裕仁 ^{ひろひと} Hirohito | 1926・大正 1 5・昭和 1 | S1–S64 | 1945 = 昭和 2 0 |
| 平成 ^{へいせい} Heisei | 明仁 ^{あきひと} Akihito | 1989・昭和 6 4・平成 1 | H1–H31 | |
| 令和 ^{れいわ} Reiwa | 徳仁 ^{なるひと} Naruhito | 2019・平成 3 1・令和 1 | R1–present (令和 7) | 2020 = 令和 2 2025 = 令和 7 |

G3.23.3 Systemic reading changes for counters

Once acquainted with the basic three numbering systems, the next thing is to gain exposure to the various counters (similar to the Chinese language). Pronunciations morph a little based on a largely deterministic set of rules, as shown in Table 12. Detailed examples are in the supplementary PDF.

The known counters 枚、台、秒、番、日、駅 do not encounter these reading changes.

Table 12: Systemic reading changes of numeric counters. The じゅう row always admits じつ, but that pronunciation is rare. [†]Informal pronunciation.

| Numeral | /k/ | /s/ | /t/ | /h/ | /f/ | /p/ | /w/ | /n/ | (rest) |
|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|-------------|--------------------------------|--------|--------|------------|------|-------------------------|
| 既知 個、軒、階、 ヶ月、回 | 歳、冊、足 | 着、頭、通 り | 本、杯、匹、 発 | 分 | ? | 羽 | 人、竿、月、時、時間 | | |
| 何 | (なん/g/) [†] | (なん/z/) [‡] | | なん/b/ (なん/p/) [‡] | なん/p/ | | | | |
| いち | いつ/k/ | いつ/s/ | いつ/t/ | いつ/p/ | いつ/p/ | いつ/p/ | | | |
| に | | | | | | | | | |
| さん | (さん/g/) [†] | | | さん/b/ (さん/p/) [‡] | さん/p/ | | さんば | | |
| よん | | | | | よん/p/ | | | よ/n/ | (し〜) [†] よ〜 |
| ご | | | | | | | | | |
| ろく | ろっ/k/ | | | ろっ/p/ | ろっ/p/ | ろっ/p/ | | | |
| なな | | | | | | | | | しち〜 |
| はち | (はっ/k/) [†] | はっ/s/ | はっ/t/ | はっ/p/ | はっ/p/ | はっ/p/ | | | |
| きゅう | | | | | | | | | く〜 |
| じゅう | じゅっ/k/ | じゅっ/s/ | じゅっ/t/ | じゅっ/p/ | じゅっ/p/ | じゅっ/p/ | じっば | | |
| ひゃく | ひゃっ/k/ | | | ひゃっ/p/ | ひゃっ/p/ | ひゃっ/p/ | ひゃくっぱ | | |
| せん | (せん/g/) [†] | | | せん/b/ (せん/p/) [‡] | せん/p/ | | せんば | | |
| まん | | | | {まん/b/ (まん/p/) [‡] | まん/p/ | | まんば | | |

G3.23.4 Ordinals counters ~目/第~

Read the discussion on [Reddit](#).

The 目 suffix or 第 prefix can be attached to any of the counting numerals to indicate ordinal position. Note that 第 forces 漢語 readings of certain counters (notably 日 → 日), as shown by example in [§SB.24](#).

Use of the 目 suffix is preferred when:

- in slightly casual settings
- order is not predetermined or fixed (e.g. rankings)
- order is not significant (e.g. rankings)

Use of the 第 prefix is preferred when:

- in slightly formal settings
- the order is predetermined and fixed (e.g. chapters in a book, episodes of a show, questions in a test)
- the order is significant (e.g. first impression, first bank)

G3.24 Casual and slang speech

Just like how English slang is designed for communication efficiency (or style), and is pretty wack when compared to proper standard English, Japanese slang is the same. Slang vocabulary is growing with each new generation. Japanese slang is also heavily influenced by local dialects, though most of the content here is suited for the greater 東京 area.

In Japanese slang, anything goes and rules that apply to written Japanese are often broken, but you have to break them correctly. This is something that requires real practice with real people in real-world situations. Generally, the fundamental goal of slang is to make things easier to say by reducing mouth movement: many sounds are shortened or slurred together for that purpose.

E.g. ここはつまないつまらないから、私んち^{うち}の家^{うち}に行こう。(It's boring here, let's go to my place.; つまらない: boring)

E.g. ったく^{まったく}、いつまでこんなところで、グズグズすんだ^{するんだ}よ。(Good grief, when are you going to linger in this kind of place until?; グズグズする: to linger/hesitate)

G3.24.1 Slang sentence ordering

A complete grammatically correct sentence typically ends with a verb. In Japanese slang, this is often bent. In conversations, it's typical to say the first thing that comes up in our thoughts, without thinking about how to structure the whole sentence properly. Often, this first thought is the verb. Once the verb has already out of your mouth, you'd then follow up with an explanation of what you mean: the surrounding context and such.

E.g. それは何? (proper; What is that?)

E.g. 何それ? (slang; What is that?; a contraction of 何?それ。)

E.g. 見た?あの人? (Did you see? That guy?)

E.g. もう食べた?昨日買ったアイス。(Have you eaten it? The ice cream I bought yesterday.)

G3.24.2 Seeking positive confirmation with じゃない and じゃん

じゃない is an い-adjective that can be used as a question to weakly assert the positive (with a seeking confirmation tone, like the ね particle). It expresses the nuance that you're relatively sure but it's still a question. じゃん is its slang contraction, and can be attached to the end of any sentence and any part-of-speech. regardless じゃない is slightly feminine, while じゃん is neutral.

E.g. サラリーマンだから、残業はたくさんするんじゃない? (Because he's a salaryman, he probably does a lot of overtime (don't you think?).)

E.g. まあ、いいじゃない。(Well, it's probably fine (don't you think?).)

E.g. まあ、いいじゃん。(Well, it's probably fine (don't you think?).)

E.g. ほら、やっぱりレポートを書かないとだめじゃん。(See, as I thought, you have to write the report.)

E.g. 誰もいないからここで着替えてもいいじゃん。(Since there's nobody, it's probably fine to change here.)

E.g. たかし君は、ここにいる?知らない。あっ!やっぱ^{やっぱり}、いるじゃん! (Is Takashi-kun here? Dunno. Ah! See, he's here!)

The questioning, seeking confirmation tone can be strengthened by adding the question particle か (じゃんか), even in informal settings.

E.g. 駅の近くにカラオケがあるじゃんか。うん、あそこのすぐ隣^{となり}。(There's a karaoke place near the station, right? Yes, it's right next to it.; すぐ: immediately/directly, 隣^{となり}: next to/adjacent)

G3.24.3 Showing contempt for an action with auxiliary verb やがる

The auxiliary verb やがる (used as <stem>やがる) indicates hatred, contempt or disdain for another's action. This is derogatory and is only used inside of movies, comic books and games.

E.g. あんなやつに負けやがって。じゃ、どうすんだよ？ (Losing to a guy like that. Well, what are you going to do?)

E.g. やる気か？だったらさっさと来やがれ！ (You want to fight? If so, then hurry up and come on!; ~やがれ is the imperative form of ~やがる)

G3.24.4 The ruby{何{なに} mispronunciation and filler word なんか}

% When used to mean “what”, 何 can be read as either なに or なん depending on the word that comes after (e.g. 何色 (what colour), 何人 (how many people)).

何か means “something” and its correct reading is なにか, but in slang it is often contracted to なんかに.

E.g. なんかに食べる？

Also, なんかに is a filler word like “like...” in English. It has no special meaning, though it may express slight uncertainty about the word that comes immediately after. This filler word is written in 仮名 only and has got nothing to do with the word 何か for “something”.

E.g. 今日は、なんか忙しいみたいよ。 (I guess he's like busy today.)

E.g. なんかね。お風呂って超気持ちいいよね！ (Like, baths feel really good, huh?)

E.g. お母さんが、なんか明日まで戻らないんだってよ。 (Mom said she's not coming back until like tomorrow.)

E.g. なんかさ。ボブは、私のことなんか本当に好きかな？ (Hey like, does Bob like really like somebody like me?; さ particle (§G3.25), かな question particle (§G3.25.1)).

G3.25 More sentence ending particles な、さ and gender-specific ones わ、ぞ、ぜ

な、さ are casual forms of the ね、よ particles respectively, which were introduced in §G2.12.

- な: a rough casual form of ね (to express seeking and expectation of agreement, like “right?/ isn't it?” in English), and is preferred when ね sounds too soft or reserved for what you're trying to say.

E.g. 今、図書館に行くんだよな。うん、なんで？ (You are going to the library now huh? (seeking explanation) Yeah, why?)

E.g. 日本語は、たくさん勉強したけどな。まだ全然わからない。大丈夫よ、きっとわかるようになるからさ。ならいいけどな。 (I studied Japanese a lot, right? But I still don't get it at all. No problem, you know? Because you'll become able to understand for sure. If so, it would be good.)

- さ: a very casual form of よ (to express that you're informing something new, like “you know...” in English), and is used like the English filler “like...”. It's not a very sophisticated manner of speech, but it's over-used and an easy habit to fall into, just like how “like” is over-used in English.

あのさ... うん。この間^{あいだ}さ... うん。ディズニーランドに行ったんだけどさ、なんかさ、すごい込んで... うん。何もできなくてさ... (Hey...{} Yeah. This one time...{} Yeah. I went to Disney Land and it was really crowded...{} Uh huh. Couldn't do anything...{}; 間^{あいだ}: period of time during, 込む: to be crowded)

The following three are sentence-ending particles used purely for emphasis and have no further special meaning. They make your statements sound much stronger and gender-specific.

- わ: feminine emphasis version of よ (to express that you're informing something new, like "you know..." in English).

E.g. もう時間がないわ。 (There is no more time.)

- ぞ、ぜ: masculine/"cool" emphasis versions of よ (to express that you're informing something new, like "you know..." in English).

E.g. おい、行くぞ! (Hey, we're going!)

E.g. これで、もう終わりだぜ。 (With this, it's over already.)

Note that females can use ぞ/ぜ, and males can use わ too, for coolness or softness respectively.

G3.25.1 Question particle かな and gender-specific ones かしら、かい、だい

The な (casual ね) particle can be combined with the question particle か to form かな, typically used when the speaker is considering something. かしら is the feminine version of かな.

E.g. 今日は雨が降るかな? (I wonder if it'll rain today.)

E.g. いい大学に行けるかな? (I wonder if I can go to a good university.)

E.g. いい大学に行けるかしら? (I wonder if I can go to a good university.)

かい (only for yes/no question) and だい (only for open-ended question) are masculine question particles.

E.g. おい、どこに行くんだい? (Hey, where are you going?)

E.g. さきちゃんって呼んでもいいかい? (Can I call you Saki-chan?)

E.g. 一体いつに帰ってくるつもりだったんだい? (What time were you planning on coming home exactly?)

E.g. 俺は土曜日、映画を見に行くけど、一緒に行くかい? (I'm going to see a movie on Saturday, want to go together?)

G3.26 Example conversations

Here are two example conversations to apply what we've learnt in this entire "essential grammar" section.

- アイス: 加賀先生、ちょっと質問を聞いてもいいですか。 (Kaga-sensei, is it ok to ask you a question?)

加賀先生: はい、いいですよ。 (Sure.)

アリス: 「Hello」を日本語で何と言えばいいですか。 (How do you say "Hello" in Japanese?; quotation + conditional form of 言う)

加賀先生: そうね。だいたい、「こんにちは」と言うと思いますよ。ただし、書く時は「こ

んにちわ」じゃなくて、「こんいちわ」と書かなくてはなりません。(Well, mostly, I think people say “konnichiwa”. However, when you write it, it is not “konnichiwa”; you must write “konnichiha”.; nested quotation + quotation; negative sequence of states)

アリス：そうですか。他に何かいい表現^{ひょうげん}はありますか。(Is that so? Are there any other good expressions?; 他^{ほか}: other (Do not confuse with 彼^{かれ}!) “Other something good expression, exist?”)
加賀先生：これも覚え^{おぼえ}といてね。朝は、「おはよう」と言うの。でも、上の人には「おはようございます」と言ってください。(Do remember this too (in preparation for the future). In the morning, everybody says “ohayou”. But, to a higher person, please say “ohayou-gozzaimasu”.; 覚える → 覚えておく → 覚えとく → 覚えといてください (te-form request of casual form of 覚えておく))

アリス：はい、わかりました。間違^{まちが}えないようにします。いい勉強になりました！(Ok, I got it. I'll try not to make that mistake. That was very informative (“it became good study”)!)

- 洋介^{ようすけ}：お！アリスだ。あのね、質問を聞いてもいい？(Oh! It's Alice. Hey, can I ask you a question?)

アリス：何？(What's up?)

洋介：ちょっと英語を教^{おし}えてもらいたいんだけどさ、もし時間があれば、教えてくれない？(I want to learn English, so if you have time, can you teach me? 教^{おし}えてもらいたい is the desiderative form of 教^{おし}えてもらう.)

アリス：え？英語を勉強するの？(Huh? You're going to study English?)

洋介：うん、アメリカで留学^{りゅうがく}してみたいなと思ってね。去年も行こうとしたけど、お金がなくて…(Yeah, I was thinking about trying out studying abroad in America. I attempted going last year too, but I didn't have money.; 留学^{りゅうがく}してみたい + な sentence ending particle + quotation + 思って; 行こうとする: to attempt to go)

アリス：そうなの？いいよ。いつ教えてほしいの？(Really? No problem. When do you want me to teach you?)

洋介：いつでもいいよ。(Anytime is good.)

アリス：じゃ、来週の木曜日からはどう？(Then, how about from next Thursday?)

洋介：うん、いいよ。ありがとう！(Yeah, that's good. Thank you!)

ありす：勉強^{なま}を怠^{なま}けたり、来^きなかつたりしないでね。(Don't shirk on your studies or not come, ok?; 怠^{なま}ける: to laze)

洋介：そんなことしないよ！(I won't do anything like that!)

G4 Special expressions

This section is named “special expressions” because except the first few subsections, most of the grammar here applies to more specific use-cases. However, this “special expressions” section as a whole is necessary for everyday conversations.

G4.1 Causative, passive and causative-passive forms

We finally learn the last three major verb conjugations.

G4.1.1 Causative form $\sim\overset{\sim}{\text{あ}}\{\text{せる/す}\}$

The causative form of verbs indicate that someone *was made to* perform the verb. It has two senses: making somebody do something, and letting someone to do something. **Disambiguation between the two senses is based on context!**

When the causative form is used with あげる/くれる, it almost always means to “let someone do”. Otherwise, it usually means “make someone do”.

For detailed conjugation rules, refer to §GA.1. All causative form verbs are る-verbs. Further conjugations follow る-verb rules.

When listening, $\sim\overset{\sim}{\text{あ}}\text{せ}$ is the signal for passive voice, though for る-verbs there is potential conflict with the potential form.

E.g. 全部食べさせた。 (Made/let someone eat it all.)

E.g. 全部食べさせてくれた。 (Let someone eat it all.)

E.g. 先生が学生に宿題をたくさんさせた。 (Teacher made students do lots of homework.)

E.g. 先生が質問をたくさん聞かせてくれた。 (Teacher let someone ask lots of questions.; 聞く → 聞かせる (causative) → 聞かせてくれる (to give the favour))

E.g. 今日は仕事を休ませてください。 (Please let me rest from work today.; 休む → 休ませる (causative) → 休ませてください (desiderative of causative, “let-do” sense))

E.g. その部長は、よく長時間働かせる。 (That manager often makes people work long hours.; 働く (to work) → 働かせる (causative))

When *asking* for permission to let someone do something (including letting yourself do something), it's more common to use the 「～でもいい」 grammar §G3.16.3).

E.g. お手洗いに行かせてくれませんか。 (Can you let me go to the toilet? (sounds like a prisoner, even in English))

E.g. お手洗いに行ってもいいですか。 (Is it ok to go to the toilet?)

In very rough/casual slang, the causative form may be expressed with the う-verb ending $\sim\text{す}$. For detailed conjugation rules, refer to §GA.1. All causative form verbs are う-verbs. Further conjugations follow う-verb rules (with す ending).

E.g. 同じことを何回も言わす言わせるな! (Don't make me say the same thing again and again!)

E.g. お腹空いているんだから、なんか食べさしてくれ食べさせてくれよ。 (I'm hungry, so let me eat something.; 食べる → 食べさす → 食べさしてくれる → 食べさしてくれ (imperative))

G4.1.2 Interlude I: passivisation, direct and indirect/adversative passives

Read the supplementary materials on [TFG1] and [TFG2].

There is no such thing as a “suffering passive”: there is nothing in the language that indicates that someone is suffering from a passive verb. The “suffering” connotation comes the passive verb indicating that the experiencer has no control over the performed action. [TK]

Note that parts-of-speech (e.g. object, subject) are purely grammatical (syntactic) roles. An entity being the performer of the action or the receiver of the action’s effects are semantic roles. Semantic roles do not change under passivisation (otherwise the sentence’s meaning changes), whereas grammatical roles may change.

(SL) In English, passivisation can only be applied to a sentence containing a transitive verb. When it occurs, the object is promoted to the subject position, and the subject is demoted to an oblique (a non-required argument).

In Japanese, passivisation is a bit more flexible: intransitive verbs can be passivised too.

We now distinguish between the direct and indirect/adversative passives *in Japanese*.

- **Direct passive (transitive only)**: used to express that the transitive verb was done to someone/something (subject experiencer; marked by が), by someone (origin oblique/optional performer; marked by に). The effect that the action has on the experiencer is very obvious, since the verb is done directly to them (promoted to subject grammatical role). The subject (demoted to an oblique) is often omitted as it’s not important. The Japanese direct passive is equivalent to the English passive.

The semantic performer is the syntactic origin after passivisation and marked by に. This usage of に as *origin* rather than *destination* is very similar to もらう’s usage (§G3.21.2, [TFG]), since the passive subject is the receiver (experiencer) in the transaction (action).

E.g. ピカソにキスされた。(I was kissed by Picasso.)

E.g. タバコが吸われた。(A cigarette was smoked.)

- **Indirect passive (both transitive and intransitive)**: used to express that someone (origin performer; marked by に) did a transitive/intransitive verb, involving an optional direct object (only for transitive verbs; marked by を), and it had an effect on someone (experiencer; marked by は/が; [TK]). There is no equivalent in English. The adversative nuance is not guaranteed, though very likely present in indirect passive sentences.

E.g. (私は) (あのおじさんに) タバコを吸われた。(I got smoked on (by that man).; [TFG1])

In the above example, the passive verb is 吸われた, the experiencer is me, and the performer is あのおじさん (marked by origin particle に). The indirect passive emphasises that this act of smoking was done to me, and that I did not have control over it, creating the nuance that the act was a nuisance.

E.g. ブラット・ピットに目の前でタバコを吸われて、^{きぜつ}気絶するかと思った。(I got smoked on by Brad Pitt right in front of me, and I thought I was going to faint.; ^{きぜつ}気絶: loss of consciousness; more natural translation would be “Brad Pitt smoked right in front of me, and I thought I was going to faint.”; [TFG1])

In the above example, the indirect passive is used, but the effect may not be adversative depending on the context: I could be fainting from the smoke, or from the fact that it's Brad Pitt.

Except for a few cases, the indirect passive is always formed with verbs that were intentionally performed by *someone*. The performer of the verb (marked by に) is therefore usually a person. Only (some) weather-related verbs are acceptable exceptions to this rule, where the performer is a weather-related object. More details in §G4.2.3.

E.g. 私は本に頭に落ちられた。 (My head was fallen on by a book.; [TFG1]) **Unnatural sentence: the performer should not be an object.**

E.g. 突然雨に降られた。 (All of a sudden, I was rained on.; 降る is intransitive; [TFG1])

E.g. 花子が隣の学生にピアノを朝まで弾かれた。 (Hanako had the student next to her play the piano on her until morning.; a more natural translation is “Hanako was adversely affected by the student next to her playing the piano until morning.”; [Wiki])

For a deeper treatment of the passive voice, refer to the postlude §G4.2.

G4.1.3 Passive form 〜られる

The passive voice in Japanese is often used in written essays and articles. Read more about passivisation in §G4.1.2.

For detailed conjugation rules, refer to §GA.1. All passive form verbs are る-verbs. Further conjugations follow る-verb rules. **Note that for る-verbs and 来る, the passive form is identical to the potential form (〜られる); disambiguation requires context and is otherwise impossible.**

When listening, 〜られる is the signal for passive voice, though for る-verbs there is potential conflict with the potential form.

In Japanese, the standard SOV sentence schema is <subject>が<object>を<transitive v>, or <performer>が<experiencer>を<transitive v> in semantic terms. After passivisation into the **direct passive**, it becomes <performer>に<experiencer>が<transitive v passive form>. Notice that the semantic performer is now the syntactic origin (marked by に), and the semantic experiencer is now the syntactic subject (marked by が/は). This is very similar to もらう's usage of に as a origin particle (§G3.21.2, [TFG]), since **the passive subject is the receiver (experiencer) in the transaction (action).**

E.g. ポリッジが誰かに食べられた! (The porridge was eaten by somebody!)

E.g. みんなに変だと言われます。 (I am told by everybody that (I'm/it's) strange.)

E.g. 光の速さを超えるのは、不可能だと思われる。 (Exceeding the speed of light is thought to be impossible.)

E.g. この教科書は多くの人に読まれている。 (This textbook is being read by a large number of people.)

E.g. 外国人に質問を聞かれたが、答えられなかった。 (I was asked a question by a foreigner, but I couldn't answer.)

E.g. このパッケージには、あらゆる物が含まれている。 (Everything is included in this package.; あらゆる: all, 含む: to contain)

% Because an indirect sentence is more polite in Japanese, the passive voice is used to show a level of politeness above the normal **ます** form. In a similar sense to how it's more polite to address someone indirectly, and how it's more polite to ask negative questions than positive ones (§G3.4.2), the passive form makes the sentence less direct because the subject (now the experiencer) does not directly perform the action. In increasing levels of politeness of expressing “what will you do?”:

1. (active voice) どうする？
2. (active voice, polite) どうしますか。
3. (passive voice, polite) どうされますか。
4. (??? voice, honorific, S???) どうなさいますか。
5. (??? voice, honorific, less certainty, S???) どうなさいますでしょうか。

With increasing indirection and politeness, the sentence grows longer and longer.

E.g. 領収証^{りょうしゅうしょう}はどうされますか。(What about your receipt?)

E.g. 明日の会議^{かいぎ}に行かれるんですか。(Are you going to tomorrow's meeting?; passive voice deliberately used for politeness)

G4.1.4 Causative-passive form ～^あせられる

The causative-passive form is used to express the idea that the action of “making someone do something” was performed to that person, or in short, the idea that someone was made to do something. The verb is first conjugated to the causative then the passive, never the other way round.

For detailed conjugation rules, refer to §GA.1. All passive form verbs are る-verbs. Further conjugations follow る-verb rules.

The causative-passive form is a variant of the passive voice, so the に particle marks the *origin*, i.e. the performer of the action.

When listening, ～^あせられ is the signal for causative-passive voice.

E.g. 朝ごはんは食べたくなかったのに、食べさせられた。(Despite not wanting to eat breakfast, I was made to eat it.)

E.g. 日本では、お酒を飲ませられることが多い。(In Japan, the event of being made to drink is numerous.)

E.g. あいつに二時間も待たせられた。(I was made to wait 2 hours by that guy.)

E.g. 親^{おや}に毎日宿題をさせられる。(I was made to do homework everyday by my parents.; 親^{おや}: parents)

The following shortened causative-passive form only exists for う-verbs with * \{す\}-ending.

In very rough/casual slang, the shortened causative-passive form (derived from the shortened causative form, §G4.1.1) may be used. This form only exists for う-verbs with the exception of those with a す-ending in dictionary form, because wherever the shortened causative form ends with ～さす, the shortened causative-passive form would have 「…さされる」 in it, which is not allowed.

E.g. 学生が廊下^{ろうか}に立た^たされた^{立たせられた}。(The student was made to stand in the hall.; 立^たつ: to stand)

E.g. 日本では、お酒を飲まされる飲ませられることが多い。(In Japan, the event of being made to drink is numerous.)

E.g. あいつに二時間も待たされた待たせられた。(I was made to wait 2 hours by that guy.)

G4.2 Postlude: a deep dive into passivisation in Japanese

Read the article chain starting from [\[TMJK1\]](#).

This website is a teachers' reference, and I obtained it from a [Quora answer](#). For the interest of time and for the sake of not losing focus on the main task at hand (learning how passivisation works in Japanese), I'll be taking notes after translating the website. I hope that one day I'll be able to read such websites directly without the help of translation. What's holding me back at the moment is lacking a fair bit of grammar knowledge and a lot of vocabulary knowledge...

G4.2.1 Introduction into the passive voice ruby{受動態{じゅどうたい}}

Read the main article on [\[TMJK1\]](#).

The passive voice (受身、受動態うけみ じゅどうたい) has multiple interpretations. There are distinct subsets of passive voice (expressions *A* and *B* on TMJK's Venn diagram) that are highly similar. At the beginner level, where the students' grammar and vocabulary knowledge are very limited, it is not possible to cover the nuances between similar usages. Instead, we'll first study parts of *A* and *B* that are as far away as possible from where they may overlap, such that their differences are more perceivable and gentler to learn. Some beginner-level grammar will be used; such grammar is not meant for natives but is useful for non-native learners.

There are over ten types of passive voice, if we want to pedantically differentiate them all.

G4.2.2 Classifications of the passive voice

Read the main article on [\[TMJK2\]](#).

The reason passive voices are difficult for students is that they have to learn so many forms in one day, at one go.

From the みんなの日本語 textbook, there are six:

- 私は部長に褒められました。(I was praised by my boss.; 褒める: to praise (transitive))
私は部長に仕事を頼まりました。(I was requested by my boss to do work.; 頼む: to request/entrust to (transitive))
- 私は誰かに足を踏まれました。(My foot was stepped on by someone. 踏む: to step on (transitive))
私は母に漫画の本を捨てられました。(My manga books were thrown away by my mom.; 捨てる: to throw away (transitive))
- 大阪で展覧会が開かれます。(The exhibition will be held in Osaka.; 開く: to open (business) (intransitive))
大阪で国際会議が行われます。(An international conference will be held in Osaka.; 行う: to perform/carry out (transitive))
- この美術館は来月壊されます。(This art museum will be demolished next month.; 壊す: to break/demolish (transitive))

この美術館は200年前に建てられました。(建てる: to construct (transitive))

5. 日本の車はいろいろな国へ輸出されています。(Japanese cars are exported to many countries.; 輸出する: to export (transitive))

洗濯機はこの工場で組み立てられています。(Washing machines are assembled in this factory.; 組み立てる: to assemble (transitive))

6. 「源氏物語」は紫式部によって書かれました。(The Tale of Genji (Heian-period classic) was written by Murasaki Shikibu.; 書く: to write (transitive))

電話はグラハム・ベルによって発明されました。(The telephone was invented by Graham Bell.; 発明する: to invent (transitive))

There are two particles 「に」 and 「より」 associated with the passive voice. To learn them both in one day is asking too much from learners. みんなの日本語 also misses out passive intransitive verbs such as 「雨に降られた。」.

From the 大地 textbook, there are four:

1. 私は先生に呼ばれました。(I was called by my teacher.; 呼ぶ: to call out to (transitive))

私は先生に注意されました。(I was reprimanded by my teacher.; 注意する: to reprimand)

2. (†) 私は子どもにカメラを壊されました。(I had my camera broken on by my child.; 壊す: to break/demolish (transitive))

(†) 私は雨に降られました。(I was rained on.; 降る: (of precipitation/ash) to fall (intransitive))

3. 大阪で会議が開かれます。(The meeting is held in Osaka.; 開く: to open (business) (intransitive))

金沢は小京都と言われています。(Kanazawa is said to be a Little Kyoto (small town with historical features reminiscent of Kyoto).; 言う: to be called/defined (transitive))

4. 源氏物語は紫式部によって書かれました。(The Tale of Genji (Heian-period classic) was written by Murasaki Shikibu.; 書く: to write (transitive))

Here, (†) are examples of the intransitive passive. The 「～と言われています」 construct (言う → 言われる (passive) → 言われている (progressive passive) → 言われています (polite progressive passive)) is very often used in the passive voice (“it is said that...”).

The burden on learners can be significantly reduced by dividing the teaching up into parts. For the six forms in みんなの日本語, we can group them into two groups: {1, 2} and {3, 4, 5, 6}. The first two kinds involve emotion, while the last four don't.

Furthermore, a distinct feature of the Japanese passive voice is the adversative passive interpretation (迷惑の受身). However, whether an action is adversative depends less on the sentence structure, and much more on the meaning of the verb used. [There is therefore nothing inherently in the grammatical rules and syntax that suggest adversativity.](#) The passive voice can be used for both positive and negative emotions, even if the passive voice always conveys the idea that the experiencer has no control over the action and its performer.

E.g. 私は先生に褒められました。(non-adversative; I was praised by my teacher.; 褒める: to praise (transitive))

E.g. 私は先生にしかられました。 (adversative; I was scolded by my teacher.; しかる: to scold (transitive))

To start off, fix the experiencer to always be “me”, and fix the sentence structure to be 「私は<performer>に<verb passive>」. The experiencer will change later as we progress further (§G4.2.4).

G4.2.3 The grammar rules of passives

Read the main articles on [TMJK3] and [TMJK4].

For the sake of ease of understanding, we categorise the passive voice into two broad groups:

- ちよくせつうけみ 直接受身のグループ (direct passive group). Broadly speaking, in this group, the subject (suffixed by は/が) has something done to them directly by someone (suffixed by に).

Members include:

- ▶ 直接受身 (direct passive), a.k.a. 直接対象たいしょうの受身 (direct target passive)、相手あいての受身 (other party passive)

<experiencer>{が/は}<performer>に<v transitive passive>, where <experiencer> IS the promoted object of the corresponding active voice sentence.

- ▶ ちゅうりつ 中立の受身 (neutral passive)

- かんせつうけみ 間接受身のグループ (indirect passive group). Broadly speaking, in this group, the subject (suffixed by は/が) has something done to them indirectly by someone (suffixed by に).

Members include:

- ▶ 間接受身 (indirect passive)

<experiencer>{が/は}<performer>に<v transitive passive>, where <experiencer> is NOT the promoted object of any active voice sentence.

- ▶ 迷惑めいわくの受身 (adversative passive)
- ▶ 持ち主ぬしの受身 (possessive passive)

<experiencer-owner>{が/は}<performer>に<ownee>を<v transitive passive>, where <experiencer> is NOT the promoted object of any active voice sentence.

- ▶ 自動詞自動詞の受身 (intransitive passive)

<experiencer>{が/は}<performer>に<v intransitive passive>.

At the end of the day, from this landscape, the syntax is mostly the same.

We now look at the direct, indirect, possessive and indirect passives more closely. Here are their definitions (定義).

1. ちよくせつうけみ 直接受身 (direct passive).

<experiencer>{が/は}<performer>に<v transitive passive>, where <experiencer> IS the promoted object of the corresponding active voice sentence.

- There is a corresponding active voice sentence.

のうどうぶん [能動文] 太郎たろうはジョンなぐを殴なぐった。 (Taro punched John.; 殴なぐる: to punch (transitive))

[受動文] ジョンは太郎に殴られた。 (John was punched by Taro.; 殴る: to punch (transitive))

- *Adversative nuance is not guaranteed (depends on the passivised verb).*

[迷惑の意味がない] 私は先生に褒められた。 (I was praised by my teacher.; 褒める: to praise (transitive))

[迷惑の意味がある] 私は先生にしかられた。 (I was scolded by my teacher.; しかる: to scold (transitive))

- *Exists in English.*

Because the direct passive is equivalent to the English passive, the direct passive is easy for English speakers to understand.

2. 間接受身 (indirect passive).

When translating indirect passives into English, purposely place the origin at the end of the sentence as “by <origin>”, then the rest of the sentence is usually expressed as “<experiencer> got <v passive> on by <origin>”.

<experiencer>{が/は}<performer>に<v transitive passive>, where <experiencer> is NOT the promoted object of any active voice sentence.

- *There is no corresponding active voice sentence.*

[能動文] 隣の席の人が大声で話した。 (The person in sitting next to me spoke loudly.; 話す: to speak (transitive))

[受動文] 私は隣の席の人に大声で話された。 (I was spoken to loudly by the person sitting next to me.; 話す: to speak (transitive))

The passive sentence contains the experiencer semantic role 「私」 (syntactic subject). In the closest equivalent active sentence, this subject does not take on the semantic experiencer role (of the verb 話す). Another way to think about this: the semantic experiencer (syntactic subject) in the passive sentence was not promoted from a grammatical object of any active sentence. Therefore, there is no corresponding active sentence.

The *indirect* passive is named as such because 「私」 was not directly affected by verb 「話す」, only *indirectly* so.

- *Adversative nuance is guaranteed.*

See above point.

- *It is difficult to translate to English.*

The indirectness of the indirect passive has no equivalent in English.

3. 持ち主受身 (possessive passive). The possessive passive is sometimes grouped together with 間接受身のグループ, and sometimes considered to be in a category of its own.

<experiencer-owner>{が/は}<performer>に<ownee>を<v transitive passive>, where <experiencer> is NOT the promoted object of any active voice sentence.

E.g. (私は)スリに財布を取られた。 (My wallet was stolen by a pickpocket.; スリ: pickpocket, 取る: to steal (transitive))

The *possessive* passive is named as such because the direct object (suffixed by を) of the passive verb belongs to the subject (suffixed by は/が).

- *There is no corresponding active voice sentence.*

[能動文] 弟が私の携帯電話を壊した。(My younger brother destroyed my cell phone.; 携帯電話: mobile phone; 壊す: to break/destroy (transitive))

[受動文] 私は弟に携帯電話を壊された。(I got my cell phone destroyed by my brother.; 壊す: to break/destroy (transitive))

In the possessive passive sentence, the experiencer semantic role is 「私」 (syntactic subject). In the closest equivalent active sentence, 「私」 is merely a label to 財布 and does not take on the experiencer semantic role. Therefore, there is no corresponding active sentence.

- *Adversative nuance is not guaranteed (depends on the passivised verb).*

[迷惑の意味がある] (私は) 田中さんに日本語をけなされた。(adversative; I got my Japanese disparaged by Tanaka-san.; けなす: to speak ill of/disparage (transitive))

[迷惑の意味がない] (私は) 田中さんに日本語を褒められた。(non-adversative; I got my Japanese praised by Tanaka-san.; 褒める: to praise (transitive))

Some usage pointers.

- When the passive sentence involves body parts of the owner, the direct passive is unnatural.

[自動詞の受身、自然] (私は) 隣の人に満員電車で足を踏まれた。(I got my foot stepped on on me by someone next to me on a fully-booked train.; more natural translation is “My foot was stepped on by someone next to me on a fully-booked train.” 踏む: to step on (transitive))

[直接受身、不自然] 私の足が踏まれた。

- When the passive sentence involves possessions of the owner, the direct passive is also possible.

[自動詞の受身、自然] (私は) 田中さんにパソコンを壊された。(I got my computer broken on me by Tanaka-san.; 壊す: to break/destroy (transitive))

[直接受身、自然] 私のパソコンが田中さんに壊された。(My computer was broken by Tanaka-san.)

- When the passive sentence involves parties related to the owner, the direct passive is also possible.

[自動詞の受身、自然] (私は) 先生に息子をけなされた。(I got my child disparaged on me by his teacher.; けなす: to speak ill of/disparage (transitive))

[直接受身、自然] 私の息子は先生にけなされた。(My child was disparaged by his teacher.)

4. 自動詞の受身 (intransitive passive).

<experiencer>{が/は}<performer>に<v intransitive passive>.

- *There is no corresponding active voice sentence.*

Similar explanation to the other members of the indirect passive group. The experiencer semantic role is present in the intransitive passive (suffixed by は/が), but completely absent in the closest equivalent active sentences: active intransitive verbs only involve a subject (which would be the origin of the passivised intransitive verb, not the experiencer). Therefore, there is no corresponding active sentence.

- *Adversative nuance is not guaranteed.*

[迷惑の意味がある] 恋人に逃げられた。 (adversative; I had my lover run away on me.; 逃げる: to run away (intransitive))

[迷惑の意味がある] 子どもに泣かれた。 (adversative; I had my child cry on me.; 泣く: to cry (intransitive))

[迷惑の意味がある] 雨に降られた。 (adversative; I had the rain fall on me.; 降る: (of precipitation/ash) to fall)

[迷惑の意味がない] 綺麗な女性に微笑まれて、ドキドキした。 (non-adversative; I got smiled on by a pretty lady, and my heart pounded.; 微笑む: to smile (intransitive))

[迷惑の意味がない] 私は風に吹かれていた。 (non-adversative; I got blown on by the wind.; 吹く: (of the wind) to blow (intransitive))

[迷惑の意味がない] 彼女に甘えられると、結構嬉しい。 (non-adversative; If I get fawned on by her, I will be fairly happy.; 甘える: to fawn on/give lots of attention and praise (intransitive verb))

[迷惑の意味がない] 先生に喜ばれた。 (non-adversative; I got being pleased on by the teacher.; 喜ぶ: to be delighted (intransitive))

Some usage pointers.

- Among intransitive verbs, non-volitional ones (非意志) are harder and less natural to passivise. A notable exception is 降る for precipitation/ash.

[非意志、自然] 雨に降られた。 (I had the rain fall on me.; 降る: (of precipitation/ash) to fall (intransitive))

[非意志、不自然] 雨に止まれた。—(止む: to cease/stop/be over (intransitive))

[非意志、不自然] ドアに急に開かれました。

[非意志、不自然] 石に突然、落ちられました。

[非意志、不自然] 電気に消えられて、困りました。

[非意志、不自然] 涙に不意に出られて、恥ずかしかった。

Even though all these attempted intransitive passive verbs have the adversative nuance, they are nonetheless considered unnatural. (Perhaps for a reason only accessible to higher level learners...)

G4.2.4 Indirect passives to convey adversative emotions, and involving a third person subject 間接受身のグループ

Read the main article on [\[TMJK5\]](#).

Indirect passives can be purposefully used to convey negative feelings evoked from an indirect action.

- If the speaker has only a general relationship with 田中さん or アンさん, the speaker state say the following objectively (客観的事実を述べます):

[A1、能動文] アンさんは海外へ引っ越した。(Ann-san moved abroad.; 引っ越す: to change residence (intransitive))

[B1、能動文] 田中さんはアンさんに花束を贈った。(Tanaka-san gifted Ann-san a bouquet.; 贈る: to gift (transitive))

- However, if the speaker likes アンさん and sees 田中さん as a love rival, then the actions of アンさん and 田中さん in A1 and B1 would be unpleasant, even if their actions did not *directly* affect the speaker. The speaker would therefore use the *indirect* passive voice to express their feelings.

[A2、受動文] (私は) あんさんに海外へ引っ越されて、寂しくてたまらない。(I got Ann-San moved abroad on me, and I feel unbearably lonely.; たまらない: intolerable/unbearable)

[B2、受動文] (アンさんに花束を贈ろうと思っていたのに、) (私は) 田中さんに先に贈られてしまった。(Despite me thinking of gifting a bouquet to Ann-sann, I got Tanaka-san gifting before me on me.; しまう: to do/happen unintentionally (AUX))

The subject/experiencer in passive sentences is a person, and is most commonly 「私」. If so, it is often omitted (省略されます). If the subject/experiencer is not a human, then it would be something similar to a person, such as an organisation a person belongs to.

In §G4.2.2, we fixed the subject/experiencer to 「私」. We now vary this. The subject/experiencer can be a third person/party (第三者) that is neither the speaker nor the origin/performer of the passivised action. To do this, simply state the third party subject explicitly, suffixed with は/が.

- [C1#、受動文] 田中さんはアルバイトに休まれました。(Tanaka-san had a day off taken on him by the part-timer.; 休む: to take a day off (intransitive))

[D1#、受動文] E.g. 川口さんは友達に手紙を読まれました。(Kawaguchi-san got his letter read on him by his friend.; 読む: to read (transitive))

However, the above sentences would sound incomplete to the native ear. They are missing the *feelings* of the third party.

(The # here mean “may be acceptable to some readers”; courtesy of SL.)

- [C2、受動文] 田中さんはアルバイトに休まれて、とても困りました。(Tanaka-san had a day off taken on him by the part-timer, and was very troubled.; 休む: to take a day off (intransitive))

[D2、受動文] 川口さんは友達に手紙を読まれて、恥ずかしい思いをしました。(Kawaguchi-san got his letter read on him by his friend, and he felt embarrassed unintentionally.; 読む: to read (transitive), しまう: to do/happen unintentionally (AUX))

When the feelings of the aggrieved party is made explicit, the indirect passive flows more naturally.

G4.2.5 The three passive voice particles に、から、によって

Read the main articles on [\[TMJK5\]](#), [\[TMJK6\]](#), [\[TMJK7\]](#)

The に particle marks the origin/performer of the passive voice. The origin/performer in the indirect passive group can only be suffixed by に.

[間接受身] 私は友達に夜遅く遊びに来られました。(I got visited for playing late at night on by my friend.; 来る: to come (intransitive))

In direct passive sentences, three particles are possible: に、から、によって. The default particle is still に, and there are some cases where に can't be used, or another particle is more suitable.

Some rules of thumb:

- For passivised verbs that act on people, express the origin's emotion, or have a sense of mobility or direction, both に、から can be used to mark the origin/performer.

Examples of verbs expressing emotion: 愛する、憎む^{にく} (to hate)、好む^{この} (to like)、嫌う、恐れる^{おそ} (to fear)、惜しむ^お (to regret/be stingy)、尊敬する、軽蔑する^{けいべつ} (to scorn)、怪しむ^{おそ} (to suspect).

Examples of verbs with a sense of mobility or direction: 招待する^{しょうたい} (to invite)、呼ぶ、誘う^{さそ} (to invite/tempt)、振り向く^{むか} (to turn around)、迎える^{むか} (to go out and greet).

[直接受身] 私は先生{に/から}褒められた。(act on people; I was praised by my teacher.; 褒める^{ほめる}: to praise (transitive); Both に、から are possible, によって is more formal and not used here.)

[直接受身] ジュリエットはロミオ{に/から}愛されました。(emotion; Juliet was loved by Romeo.; 愛する: to love (transitive))

[直接受身] 周恩来は今も中国の人々{に/から}尊敬されている。(emotion; Zhou Enlai is still respected by the Chinese people today.; 尊敬する: to respect (transitive))

[直接受身] たなかさんは、刑事{に/から}怪しまれた。(emotion; Tanaka-san is suspected by the detective.; 怪しむ: to suspect (transitive))

[直接受身] 私は先生{に/から}声をかけられた。(mobility/direction; I was called out to by my teacher.; 声をかける: to call out to (expression/intransitive))

[直接受身] 突然、友達{に/から}呼び止められた。(mobility/direction; Suddenly, I was stopped by my friend.; 呼び止める: to call and stop sb/sth (transitive))

[直接受身] あまりにひどい恰好だったので、みんな{に/から}振り向かれた。(mobility/direction; Because I looked very bad, I was turned around to by everyone.; 恰好/格好^{かっこう}: appearance, 振り向く^{むか}: to turn around (expression/transitive))

[直接受身] 田中選手はチームメイト{に/から}温かく迎えられた。(emotion; The contestant Tanaka was warmly welcomed by his teammates.; 迎える^{むか}: to go out and greet (transitive))

- For passivised verbs that refer to a give-receive transaction, because に already marks the receiver, it cannot be used again in the same sentence to mark the origin (giver) in the same transaction. から must be used to mark the origin.

Examples of verbs related to give-receiving: 授与する^{じゅうよ} (to award)、渡す^{わた} (to hand over)、送る^{おく} (to send)、贈る^{おく} (to gift)、与える^{あた} (to bestow/give to someone of lower status).

[直接受身] 本は先生{から}学生に^{わた}渡された。(give-receive; The book was passed to the student by the teacher.; 渡す: to hand over (transitive))

[直接受身] 花束は部長{から}田中さんに^{おく}贈られた。(give-receive; The bouquet was given to Tanaka-san from boss.; 贈る: to gift (transitive))

[直接受身] 卒業証書は校長先生先生{から/によって}学生に^{じゅよ}授与されました。(give-receive; The graduation certificates were awarded to the students by the principal.; 授与する: to award (transitive))

[直接受身] 金メダルは総理大臣{から/によって}優勝者^{ゆうしょうしゃ}に^{じゅよ}授与された。(give-receive; The gold medal was awarded to the champion by the Prime Minister.; 授与する: to award (transitive))

If the sentence contains に to mark the *location* destination of the verb, then に can still be used (because it's a different sense in the same sentence) to mark the origin.

[直接受身] 私は先生{に/から}お寿司屋さんに^{さそ}誘われた。(I was invited to the Sushi restaurant by teacher.; 誘う: to invite (transitive))

- For *formal* passivised verbs that refer to a give-receive transaction (same as previous point but formal), and for verbs that involve creation of a work, *によって* is used. As an exception, the 罰する verb (to punish (transitive)) must use *によって*.

Example verbs related to creation: 描く (to draw)、作曲する (to compose (music))、^{はつめい}発明する (to invent)、^{はっけん}発見する (to discover)、作る、書く (to write).

[直接受身] 卒業証書は校長先生先生{から/によって}学生に^{じゅよ}授与されました。(give-receive; The graduation certificates were awarded to the students by the principal.; 授与する: to award (transitive))

[直接受身] 金メダルは総理大臣{から/によって}優勝者^{ゆうしょうしゃ}に^{じゅよ}授与された。(give-receive; The gold medal was awarded to the champion by the Prime Minister.; 授与する: to award (transitive))

[直接受身] 運命はベートーベン{によって}作曲^{さつきょく}された。(creation; “Fate” was composed by Beethoven.; 作曲する: to compose (music) (transitive/intransitive))

[直接受身] 東京都庁^{とちょう}は丹下健三氏^{たんげんぞうし}{によって}設計^{せつけい}された。(creation; The Tokyo Metropolitan Government Building was designed by Mr. Kenzo Tange.; 設計する: to design (transitive))

[直接受身] アメリカ大陸^{たいりく}はコロンブス^{はっけん}{によって}発見^{はっけん}された。(creation; The American continent was discovered by Columbus.; 発見する: to discover (transitive))

[直接受身] 田中氏は法律^{ほうりつ}{によって}罰^{ばつ}せられた。(punish; Mr. Tanaka was punished by the law.; 罰する: to punish (transitive))

Further exploration of the passive voice will be left to a future date.

GA Grammar mega summary

GA.1 Conjugation rules summary

GA.1.1 Nouns

Table 13: Noun conjugation rules.

| Purpose | Tense | Casual schema | Polite schema |
|----------------|----------------------|---------------|--------------------------------------|
| State-of-being | Present-positive | <noun>[だ] | <noun>です。 |
| | Present-negative | <noun>じゃない | <noun>じゃないです。 <noun>じゃありません。 |
| | Past-positive | <noun>だった | <noun>でした。 |
| | Past-negative | <noun>じゃなかった | <noun>じゃなかったです。 <noun>じゃありませんでした。 |
| | て-positive | <noun>で | - |
| | て-negative | <noun>じゃなくて | - |
| | Conditional-positive | <noun>であれば | - |
| | Conditional-negative | <noun>じゃなければ | - |

In 丁寧語, 「～した」 indicates the past-tense.

As alternative polite forms:

- 「～ないです。」 can be replaced with 「～ありません。」,
- 「～なかったです。」 can be replaced with 「～ありませんでした。」.

GA.1.2 な-adjectives

Table 14: な-adjective conjugation rules.

| Purpose | Tense | Casual schema | Polite schema |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|--|
| State-of-being (same as nouns) | Present-positive | <na-adj>[だ] | <na-adj>です。 |
| | Present-negative | <na-adj>じゃない | <na-adj>じゃないです。 <na-adj>じゃありません。 |
| | Past-positive | <na-adj>だった | <na-adj>でした。 |
| | Past-negative | <na-adj>じゃなかった | <na-adj>じゃなかったです。 <na-adj>じゃありませんでした。 |
| | て-positive | <noun>で | - |
| | て-negative | <noun>じゃなくて | - |
| | Conditional-positive | <na-adj>であれば | - |
| | Conditional-negative | <na-adj>じゃなければ | - |
| Noun modifier | Present-positive | <na-adj>な<noun> | - |
| | Present-negative | <na-adj>じゃない<noun> | - |
| | Past-positive | <na-adj>だった<noun> | - |
| | Past-negative | <na-adj>じゃなかった<noun> | - |
| Adverb | - | <na-adj>に | - |

GA.1.3 い-adjectives

All い-adjectives end with ～い that is not part of the 漢字's pronunciation.

Table 15: い-adjective conjugation rules.

| Purpose | Tense | Casual schema | Polite schema |
|----------------|----------------------|------------------------|--|
| State-of-being | Present-positive | <i-adj root>い | <i-adj root>いです。 |
| | Present-negative | <i-adj root>くない | <i-adj root>くないです。 <i-adj root>ありません。 |
| | Past-positive | <i-adj root>かった | <i-adj root>かったです。 |
| | Past-negative | <i-adj root>なかった | <i-adj root>なかったです。 <i-adj root>ありませんでした。 |
| | て-positive | <i-adj root>くて | - |
| | て-negative | <i-adj root>くなくて | - |
| | Conditional-positive | <i-adj root>ければ | - |
| | Conditional-negative | <i-adj root>くなければ | - |
| Noun modifier | Present-positive | <i-adj root>い<noun> | - |
| | Present-negative | <i-adj root>くない<noun> | - |
| | Past-positive | <i-adj root>かった<noun> | - |
| | Past-negative | <i-adj root>なかった<noun> | - |
| Adverb | - | <i-adj root>く | - |

Exceptions:

い-adjectives ending with 「～いい」 When in any form other than present-positive, the root changes from 「～い」 to 「～よ」.

GA.1.4 Verbs

Table 16: Verb conjugation rules.

| Class | Tense | Casual schema | Polite schema |
|--------------------------------|------------------|--|------------------------------------|
| う verb | Present-positive | <*end root>○ | <*end root>○ ^{てい} ます。 |
| | Negative | <* \ {う}-end root>○ ^あ ない | <*end root>○ ^{てい} ません。 |
| | | <う-end root>わ ^{ないある} ない | |
| | Past | <す-end root>した | <*end root>○ ^{てい} ました。 |
| | | <く-end root>いた | |
| | | <ぐ-end root>いだ | |
| | | <{む, ぬ, ぶ}-end root>んだ <{る, つ, う}-end root>った | |
| | Past-negative | <* \ {う}-end root>○ ^あ なかった | <*end root>○ ^{てい} ませんでした。 |
| | | <う-end root>わ ^{なかったある} なかった | |
| | (Stem) | - | <*end root>○ ^{てい} |
| Te | | <す-end root>して | - |
| | | <く-end root>いて | |
| | | <ぐ-end root>いで | |
| | | <{む, ぬ, ぶ}-end root>んで <{る, つ, う}-end root>って | |
| | Te-negative | <* \ {う}-end root>○ ^あ なくて | - |
| | | <う-end root>わ ^{なくてある} なくて | |
| Progressive (conjugate ～いる) | | <v te>いる | - |

| Class | Tense | Casual schema | | Polite schema | |
|----------------|--|-------------------------------------|-------|--------------------------------------|----------|
| る verb | Potential (conjugate ～る) | <*-end root>◯ ^ゝ る | ... | <*-end root>◯ ^ゝ ます。 | ... |
| | Conditional | <*-end root>◯ ^ゝ ば | ... | - | |
| | Conditional-negative | <*\{う}-end root>◯ ^ゝ なければ | ... | - | |
| | | <\{う}-end root>わなければ | ... | - | |
| | | なければ ^{ない} | ... | - | |
| | Desiderative (conjugate i-adj) | <*-end root>◯ ^ゝ たい | ... | - | |
| | Volitional | <*-end root>◯ ^ゝ う | ... | <*-end root>◯ ^ゝ ましょう。 | |
| | Imperative | <*-end root>◯ ^ゝ | ... | - | |
| | Imperative-negative | <*-end root>◯ ^ゝ な | ... | - | |
| | Causative (conjugate ～る /conjugate ～す) | <*-end root>◯ ^ゝ せる | ... | <*-end root>◯ ^ゝ せます。 | ... |
| | | <*-end root>◯ ^ゝ す | ... | <*-end root>◯ ^ゝ します。 | ... |
| | | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| | Passive (conjugate ～る) | <*-end root>◯ ^ゝ れる | ... | <*-end root>◯ ^ゝ れます。 | ... |
| | | <*-end root>◯ ^ゝ せられる | ... | <*-end root>◯ ^ゝ せられます。 | ... |
| | Causative-passive (conjugate ～る) | <*\{す}-end root>◯ ^ゝ される | ... | <*\{す}-end root>◯ ^ゝ されます。 | ... |
| | | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| exception verb | Dictionary | ～する | 来る | ～します。 | 来ます。 |
| | Negative | ～しない | 来ない | ～しません。 | 来ません。 |
| | Past | ～した | 来た | ～しました。 | 来ました。 |
| | Past-negative | ～しなかった | 来なかった | ～しませんでした。 | 来ませんでした。 |

| Class | Tense | Casual schema | Polite schema |
|-------|--|--|--|
| | (Stem) | - | ～し 来 ^き |
| | Te | ～して 来 ^き て | - |
| | Te-negative | ～しなくて 来 ^き なくて | - |
| | Progressive (conjugate ～いる) | <v te>いる ... | <v te>います。 ... |
| | Potential (conjugate ～る) | ～できる 来 ^き られる ... | ～できます。 来 ^き られます。 ... |
| | Conditional | ～すれば 来 ^き れば | - |
| | Conditional-negative | ～しなれば 来 ^き なれば | - |
| | Desiderative (conjugate i-adj) | ～したい ... | - |
| | Volitional | ～しよう 来 ^き よう | ～しましょう。 来 ^き ましょう。 |
| | Imperative | ～しろ 来 ^き い | - |
| | Imperative-negative | ～するな 来 ^き るな | - |
| | Causative (conjugate ～る /conjugate ～す) | ～させる 来 ^き させる ... ～さす 来 ^き さす ... | ～させます。 来 ^き させます。 ... ～さします。 来 ^き さします。 ... |
| | Passive (conjugate ～る) | ～される 来 ^き られる ... | ～られます。 来 ^き られます。 ... |
| | Causative-passive (conjugate ～る) | ～させられる 来 ^き させられる ... | ～させられます。 来 ^き させられます。 ... |

Basic rules/observations better expressed via prose:

- All present-negative forms end with 「～ない」.
- The conditional form for all verbs is the same: change the last sound to ^え and attach ば.
- The conditional-negative forms all end in 「～なければ」, which is obtained from replacing い in 「～ない」 with ければ. This replacement rule also applies for い-adjectives, replacing the trailing 「～い」 for 「～ければ」.
- The volitional form for exception verbs kind of follow the rules of る verbs: drop る and replace with よう, but additionally there's also a “hint of past tense” in there, explaining the こ sound in 来よう.
- The imperative-negative form for all verbs is the same, just attach な to the dictionary form.

Exceptions:

- 行く's past-positive form is 行った, not “行いた”. Only 行く uses った; all other ～く verbs still use いた.
- ある's present-negative form is ない, not “あらない”.
- くれる's imperative form is くれ, not “くれろ”.

The following table is a condensed version, showing where the rules come from.

Table 17: Condensed verb conjugation rules. <v negative fragment>/<vnf> refers to <v negative> but dropping the trailing 「い」 character; <v past fragment>/<vpf> refers to <v past> but dropping the trailing 「た/だ」 character.

| Class | Tense | Casual schema | Polite schema |
|--------|------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------|
| | Present-positive | <*-end root>○ | <stem>ます。 |
| | | <* \ {う}-end root> ^え ○ない | |
| う verb | Negative | <う-end root>わない ないある | <stem>ません。 |
| | Past | <す-end root>した | <stem>ました。 |

| Class | Tense | Casual schema | Polite schema |
|--------|--|---|---|
| | | <く-end root>いた | |
| | | <ぐ-end root>いだ | |
| | | <{む, ぬ, ぶ}-end root>んだ | |
| | | <{る, つ, う}-end root>った | |
| | Past-negative | <v negative fragment>かった | <stem>ませんでした。 |
| | (Stem) | - | <*-end root>〇 |
| | Te | <v past fragment>て | - |
| | Te-negative | <v negative fragment>くて | - |
| | Progressive (conjugate 〜いる) | <v te>いる | - |
| | Potential (conjugate 〜る) | <*-end root>〇る ... | <*-end root>〇ます。 ... |
| | Conditional | <*-end root>〇ば | - |
| | Conditional-negative | <v negative fragment>ければ | - |
| | Desiderative (conjugate i-adj) | <stem>たい ... | - |
| | Volitional | <*-end root>〇う | <*-end root>〇ましょう。 |
| | Imperative | <*-end root>〇 | - |
| | Imperative-negative | <v dict>な | - |
| | Causative (conjugate 〜る /conjugate 〜す) | <*-end root>〇せる ... <*-end root>〇す ... | <*-end root>〇せます。 ... <*-end root>〇します。 ... |
| | Passive (conjugate 〜る) | <*-end root>〇れる ... | <*-end root>〇れます。 ... |
| | Causative-passive (conjugate 〜る) | <*-end root>〇せられる ... <*\{す}-end root>〇される ... | <*-end root>〇せられます。 ... <*\{す}-end root>〇されます。 ... |
| る verb | Dictionary | <る-end root>る | <stem>ます。 |
| | Negative | <る-end root>ない | <stem>ません。 |
| | Past | <る-end root>た | <stem>ました。 |
| | Past-negative | <v negative fragment>かった | <stem>ませんでした。 |
| | (Stem) | - | <る-end root> |
| | Te | <v past fragment>て | - |
| | Te-negative | <v negative fragment>なくて | - |
| | Progressive (conjugate 〜いる) | <v te>いる ... | <v te>います。 ... |
| | Potential (conjugate 〜る) | <る-end root>られる ... | <る-end root>られます。 ... |
| | Conditional | <る-end root>れば | - |
| | Conditional-negative | <v negative fragment>ければ | - |
| | Desiderative (conjugate i-adj) | <stem>たい ... | - |
| | Volitional | <る-end root>よう | <る-end root>ましょう。 |
| | Imperative | <る-end root>ろ | - |
| | Imperative-negative | <v dict>な | - |
| | Causative (conjugate 〜る /conjugate 〜す) | <る-end root>させる ... <る-end root>さす ... | {<る-end root>させます。 ... <る-end root>さします。 ... |

| Class | Tense | Casual schema | | Polite schema | |
|-------------------|--|---------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| | Passive (conjugate ～る) | くる-end root>られる ... | | くる-end root>られます。 ... | |
| | Causative-passive (conjugate ～る) | くる-end root>させられる ... | | くる-end root>させられます。 ... | |
| exception verb | Dictionary | ～する | 来る | ～します。 | 来ます。 |
| | Negative | ～しない | 来ない | ～しません。 | 来ません。 |
| | Past | ～した | 来た | ～しました。 | 来ました。 |
| | Past-negative | ～<vnf>かった | <vnf>かった | ～しませんでした。 | 来ませんでした。 |
| | (Stem) | - | - | ～し | 来 |
| | Te | <vpf>て | <vpf>て | - | - |
| | Te-negative | <vnf>くて | <vnf>くて | - | - |
| | Progressive (conjugate ～いる) | <v te>いる ... | <v te>いる ... | <v te>います。 ... | <v te>います。 ... |
| | Potential (conjugate ～る) | ～できる ... | 来られる ... | ～できます。 ... | 来られます。 ... |
| | Conditional | ～すれば | 来れば | - | - |
| | Conditional-negative | <vnf>ければ | <vnf>ければ | - | - |
| | Desiderative (conjugate i-adj) | ～<stem>たい ... | <stem>たい ... | - | - |
| | Volitional | ～しよう | 来よう | ～しましょう。 | 来ましょう。 |
| | Imperative | ～しろ | 来い | - | - |
| | Imperative-negative | ～するな | 来るな | - | - |
| | Causative (conjugate ～る /conjugate ～す) | ～させる ... ～さす ... | 来させる ... 来さす ... | ～させます。 ... ～さします。 ... | 来させます。 ... 来さします。 ... |
| | Passive (conjugate ～る) | ～される ... | 来られる ... | ～られます。 ... | 来られます。 ... |
| | Causative-passive (conjugate ～る) | ～させられる ... | 来させられる ... | ～させられます。 ... | 来させられます。 ... |

GA.2 Particle and schema summary

Table 18: All particles seen so far.

| Particle | Particle name/purpose | Schemae | Sections |
|----------|----------------------------------|--|-------------------|
| は | introductory topic marker | <main/new topic>は | §G2.2.2. §G2.5 |
| も | inclusive topic marker | <inclusive topic>も | §G2.5 |
| が | subject marker | <subj>が | §G2.5 |
| を | direct object marker | <obj>を<v transitive> | §G2.9 |
| | location-traversed marker | <location>を<motion v (intransitive OK)> | §G2.9 |
| に | target marker | <target>に[は/も]<v> | §G2.9 |
| | location-target marker | <location>に[は/も]<v> | §G2.9 |
| | time-target marker | <time>[に[は/も]]<v> | §G2.9 |
| へ | direction marker | <direction>へ[は/も]<v> | §G2.9 |
| で | context marker | <by-way-of (where/what/how) context>で[は/も] | §G2.9 |
| から | from-marker | <from>から | §G2.9 |
| まで | to-marker | <to>まで | §G2.9 |
| と | together-with marker | <nn>と<v> | §G2.10.4 |
| と | noun exclusive listing connector | (<nn>と)*<nn> | §G2.10.4 |
| どか/や | noun vague listing connector | (<nn>{どか/や})*<nn> | §G2.10.4 |

| Particle | Particle name/purpose | Schemae | Sections |
|--------------|---|---|-------------------------------|
| し | reason vague listing connector | (*) (<reason>し)*<reason> | §G3.7 |
| たり[する] | adj/verb vague listing marker | (<past adj/v>り、)*<past adj/v>りする | §G3.8 |
| の | complaining listing marker | {<nn/na-adj>だの/<v>の}* §G2.10.6 | §G2.10.6 |
| と | quote marker | 「<quote>」と<v> <quote>と<v> §G2.1 §G3.18.1 §G3.18.2 | §G2.1 §G3.18.1 §G3.18.2 |
| って | quote marker (abbreviation) | <quote>って §G2.1 §G3.18.1 §G3.18.2 | §G2.1 §G3.18.1 §G3.18.2 |
| って | generic verb (abbreviation) | <quote>って §G3.19.2 | §G3.19.2 |
| て | generic verb (abbreviation) | て<v>、<sentence> §G3.19.2 | §G3.19.2 |
| の | label marker | <label nn>の[<labelled nn>] §G2.10.4 | §G2.10.4 |
| | direction-label marker | <direction>への[<labelled nn>] §G2.10.5 | §G2.10.5 |
| | from-label marker | <from>からの[<labelled nn>] §G2.10.5 | §G2.10.5 |
| | only-label marker | <only>だけの[<labelled nn>] §G2.10.5 | §G2.10.5 |
| | quote-label marker | <quote>との[<labelled nn>] §G2.10.5 | §G2.10.5 |
| | regarding-label marker | <regarding>についての[<labelled nn>] §G2.10.5 | §G2.10.5 |
| の | subjective label marker | <na-adj label>の[<labelled nn>] §G2.10.7 | §G2.10.7 |
| (な) | objective label marker | <na-adj label>な<labelled> §G2.10.7 | §G2.10.7 |
| | mood marker | <nn>な気分 §G2.10.7 | §G2.10.7 |
| の | nominaliser/generic noun | (*) <adj-phrase/v-phrase>の物,こと §G2.10.4 | §G2.10.4 |
| | enthusiastic extraordinary | <positive adj>の、<negative adj>の <adj>のなんのって §G2.10.6 | §G2.10.6 |
| の/ん | explanatory ender | (*) <sentence>{の[だ/です], んだ, んです} §G2.10.4 | §G2.10.4 |
| ので/んで | non-causal explanation/reason marker | (*) <reason>{ので/んで}<result> な{ので/んで}<result> §G3.6.3 (*) <reason>{の[だ/です]/んだ/んです} (*) <direct cause>から<result> §G3.6.3 | §G3.6.3 |
| から | direct cause marker | だから<result> (*) <direct cause>から [です] §G3.6.3 | §G3.6.3 |
| んだった | just-remembered marker | <v dict>んだった §G2.10.4 | §G2.10.4 |
| んじゃない | prohibition marker (slang) | <v dict>ん{じゃない/じゃありません} §G2.10.4 | §G2.10.4 |
| んじゃない かった | feeling regret marker (slang) | <v dict>んじゃないかった §G2.10.4 | §G2.10.4 |
| と | expected consequence marker | (*) <predicate>と<statement> §G3.15.3 | §G3.15.3 |
| ね | seeking agreement ender | <sentence>ね §G2.12 | §G2.12 |
| よ | presenting new information ender | <sentence>よ §G2.12 | §G2.12 |
| のに | despite marker | (*) <despite>のに、<sentence> §G3.6.4 | §G3.6.4 |
| けど/が | general connector | (*) <s1>{けど/が}<s2> §G3.6.5 | §G3.6.5 |
| けれど けれども | contradiction connector | (*) <s1>{けど/が}<contradicting s2> §G3.6.5 | §G3.6.5 |
| の | casual question ender | <sentence>の §G2.10.4 | §G2.10.4 |
| か | polite question ender | <sentence>か §G3.4.1 | §G3.4.1 |
| | casual binary/sarcastic question ender | <sentence>か §G3.4.1 | §G3.4.1 |
| | whether-or-not question marker | <positive v>か<negative v>か <positive v>かどうか §G3.4.4 | §G3.4.4 |
| でも | But | | |
| ばかり | only? approximately? <v te>just (time)? | | |
| くらい | approximately/about/around | | |
| より | than | | |
| しか | nothing but/no more than | | |
| ながら | while | | |
| ながらも | despite | | |

Also (see takoboto): **かも、じゃん**

(*) Important notes:

- For から::direct cause marker, if a non-conjugated na-adj/noun is used at the end of <direct cause>, だから must be used instead of から for disambiguating with the from-marker (e.g. 友達だから).

For けど/が::general connector and けど/が::contradiction connector, if a non-conjugated na-adj/noun is used at the end of <s1>, けど/だが must be used instead (e.g. 友達だ{けど/が}).

For し::reason vague listing connector, if a non-conjugated na-adj/noun is used at the end of <reason>, だし must be used instead (e.g. 友達だし).

- For の::nominaliser/generic noun, if a non-conjugated na-adj is used as the <adj-phrase>, the following な particle must be used for disambiguating with the label marker (e.g. 静かなの...).

For の::explanatory ender:

- if a non-conjugated na-adj/noun is used at the end of <sentence>, the following な particle must be used for disambiguating with the label marker (e.g. 緊張なのです。).
- polite form (～ますの for verbs and ～ですの for い-adjectives) cannot be used; used ～のです/～んです instead.

For ので::non-causal explanation/reason marker, if a non-conjugated na-adj/noun is used at the end of <reason>, なので is used instead for disambiguating with the label marker (e.g. 静かなので).

For のに::despite marker, if a non-conjugated na-adj/noun is used as the end of <despite>, the following な particle must be used (e.g. 静かなのに).

Table 19: Other schemae seen so far. <v te fragment> refers to <v te> but dropping the trailing 「て」 character; <v negative fragment> refers to <v negative> but dropping the trailing 「い」 character.

| Schema (short) | Schema name/purpose | Schemae | Sections |
|----------------|---|---|---------------|
| に行く/に来る | to go/come and then do | <v stem>に行く/に来る | §G3.1 |
| へ行く/へ来る | to go/come for the purpose of doing | <v stem>へ行く/へ来る | §G3.1 |
| である | resultant state (implicit preparation) | <v te>ある | §G3.10 |
| ておく/とく | completed action (explicit preparation) | <v te>おく/<v te fragment>とく | §G3.11 |
| ていく | spatial/temporal do and go | <v te>いく | §G3.12 |
| てくる | spatial/temporal do and come | <v te>くる | §G3.12 |
| ことができる | given opportunity to do | <v>{こと/の}ができる | §G3.13.1 |
| あり得る | potential to exist | <nn>{は/も/etc.}ありえる | §G3.13.2 |
| にする | to make become | {<na-adj>にする <i-adj root>くする} | §G3.14 |
| | to decide on | <nn>にする | §G3.14 |
| ことにする | to decide to do | <v>ことにする | §G3.14 |
| ようにする | to try to do | <v>ようにする | §G3.14 |
| になる | to become | {<na-adj>になる <i-adj root>くなる <nn>になる} | §G3.14 |
| ことになる | to have been arranged/decided to do | <v>ことになる | §G3.14 |
| ようになる | to change state of doing | <v>ようになる | §G3.14 |
| | to change state of feasibility | <v potential>ようになる | §G3.14 |
| なら[ば] | contextual conditional | <context>なら[ば], <statement> | §G3.15.4; AUX |
| - | prohibition | {<v te>は{だめ/いけない/ならない} <v te fragment>{ちゃ/じゃ}{だめ/いけない/ならない}} | §G3.16.1 |

| Schema (short) | Schema name/purpose | Schemae | Sections |
|----------------|---------------------------------|---|--------------------------|
| - | requirement | {<v te-negative>は{だめ/いけない/ならない} <v negative fragment>くちゃ <v negative>と{だめ/いけない/ならない} <v negative>と <v conditional-negative>{だめ/いけない/ならない} <v negative fragment>きゃ} | §G3.16.2 |
| - | permission | {<v te>も{いい/大丈夫/構わない} <v te>いい} | §G3.16.3 |
| - | suggestion | <v conditional>/<v past conditional>どう | §G3.17.4 |
| という | definition connector | <definition>という<thing> | §G3.19.1 |
| というか | re-definition connector | <to be redefined>というか、<redefinition> | §G3.19.3 |
| という{の/こと} | generic verb | <quote>という{の/こと} | §G3.19.2 |
| てみる | trialling something | <v te>みる | §G3.20.1 |
| とする | attempting something | <v volitional>と{する/<v>} | §G3.20.2 |
| てあげる | giving a favour (first person) | <v te>あげる | §G3.21.1 |
| てくれる | giving a favour (second person) | <v te>くれる | §G3.21.1 |
| てもらう | receiving a favour | <v te>もらう | §G3.21.2 |
| てくれる/てもらえう | soliciting a favour | <v te>{くれる/もらえる} | §G3.21.3 |
| てください。/て | honorific request | {<v te>ください。 <v te>} | §G3.22.1 |
| てちょうだい。 | casual request | <v te>ちょうだい。 | §G3.22.2 |
| なさい/な | polite firm request | {<v stem>なさい <v stem>な} | §G3.22.3 |

GB Phrases

- 待ち時間はどのくらいですか。(How long is the wait?)
- はあ!?
- バカにしてる? (Are you making fun of me?) してないしてない。
- フンッ! (Hmph/blow)
- 朝早い^{あさはや}です。(Early in the morning.)
- 爽快^{そうかい}な朝! 総会^{あさ}の目覚め! (Starting a new day full of energy!)
- まだ寝^ねたいの! (I don't want to get up already!) ういちゃん朝^{あさ}だよ! (Wakey, wakey, Ui-chan!) やだ! (No!)
- まだ6時^{ろくじ}だよ? (It's only 6 AM.) もう6時だよ! (It's already 6 AM!)
- 私たち(からしたら)寝^ねる時間^{じかん}だろ? (This is when we normally get into bed.)
- ということで! (And here we are!)
- みんな聞きましたね? (You heard her, everyone.)
- Conversation:

男子: もしもし?

みゆきさん: もしもし。

男子: お疲れ。^{つか}(Glad you could make it.)

みゆきさん: お疲れ。

男子: ちょっとさ、あの、^{ひとつ}1つ、あのちょっと、聞きたいことあって。(So um, there is one thing I'd like to ask you.)

みゆきさん: うん。(Yeah?)

男子: ちょっとあの、^{こんど}今度さ、二人でさ、飯^{めし}でもいかな? (Would you like to go out for a meal together sometime?; 今度: soon; 飯: meal)

みゆきさん: ご飯?

男子: そうそうそう。

男子: ^き気になって、みゆきさんのこと。(I've been interested about you, Miyuki.)

みゆきさん: そうなの? (Is that so?)

男子: そう。

みゆきさん: うん、ごはん、いいよ。行こ。(Yeah, dinner's good, let's go!)

男子: マジ? (Really?)

みゆきさん: うん、^{ほんとう}本当にいいよ。

男子: えじゃちょっとさ、^{くわ}詳しい^{よてい}予定さまた^{あと}後で、あの^{はな}話そう。

みゆきさん: わかった。

男子: ありがと。

みゆきさん: いやこちらこそありがとう。(No thank YOU.)

男子: じゃね、おつかれ。

みゆきさん: うん、おつかれ。

GB.1 I don't know Japanese

See the main reel on IG.

- 日本語話せません。(I cannot speak Japanese.)
- 日本語わかりません。(I don't understand Japanese.)
- 申し訳ございません。努力はしているのですが、日本語の文法が非常に難しく、何をおっしゃっているが理解することができません。誠に恐縮ではございますが、英語で話して頂くことは可能でしょうか。よろしくお願い致します。(I'm deeply sorry. I'm doing my best but, Japanese grammar is extremely difficult so, I can't understand what you're saying. I'm afraid but, would you possibly speak in English? Thank you in advance.)

SA かな 仮名

SA.1 平仮名（ひらがな）

Some general notes:

- The ん character is rarely used by itself, but suffixed to another character to add the “n” sound.

SA.1.1 Mnemonics

Table 20: 平仮名 mnemonic table. [†]Particle romanisations.

| 平仮名 | | Hepburn romanisation | Keyboard command | Mnemonic |
|-----|----|-------------------------|---------------------|---|
| あ | あ | a | a | “A” shape |
| い | い | i | i | <u>e</u> el |
| う | う | u | u | “u” shape |
| え | え | e | e | <u>e</u> xotic swan |
| お | お | o | o | double “o” shape |
| か | か | ka | ka | 咖啡 |
| が | が | ga | ga | |
| き | き | ki | ki | <u>k</u> ey |
| きゃ | きゃ | kya | kya | |
| きゅ | きゅ | kyu | kyu | |
| きよ | きよ | kyo | kyo | |
| ぎ | ぎ | gi | gi | |
| ぎゃ | ぎゃ | gya | gya | |
| ぎゅ | ぎゅ | gyu | gyu | |
| ぎよ | ぎよ | gyo | gyo | |
| く | く | ku | ku | bird <u>k</u> u-ku |
| ぐ | ぐ | gu | gu | |
| け | け | ke | ke | <u>k</u> elp (loose kelp) |
| げ | げ | ge | ge | |
| こ | こ | ko | ko | <u>c</u> o-habiting worms |
| ご | ご | go | go | |
| さ | さ | sa | sa | <u>s</u> alsa (two hand stir) / NOT “5” |
| ざ | ざ | za | za | |
| し | し | shi | <u>s</u> i/shi | <u>s</u> heep; shepherd’s crook |
| しゃ | しゃ | sha | sha | |
| しゅ | しゅ | shu | shu | |
| しょ | しょ | sho | sho | |

| 平仮名 | Hepburn romanisation | Keyboard command | Mnemonic |
|-----|-------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------------|
| じ | ji | zi/ji | |
| じゃ | ja | jya/ja | |
| じゅ | ju | jyu/ju | |
| じょ | jo | jyo/jo | |
| す | su | su | <u>s</u> wing |
| ず | zu | zu | |
| せ | se | se | せかい 世界 |
| ぜ | ze | ze | |
| そ | so | so | <u>s</u> oda / “sword” shape |
| ぞ | zo | zo | |
| た | ta | ta | “ta” shape |
| だ | da | da | |
| ち | chi | ti/chi | the “5” |
| ちゃ | cha | cha | |
| ちゅ | chu | chu | |
| ちょ | cho | cho | |
| ぢ | ji | di | |
| ぢゃ | ja | dya | |
| ぢゅ | ju | dyu | |
| ぢょ | jo | dyo | |
| つ | tsu | tu/tsu | <u>t</u> sunami |
| づ | zu | du | |
| て | te | te | <u>t</u> elescope |
| で | de | de | |
| と | to | to | <u>t</u> oe with splinter |
| ど | do | do | |
| な | na | na | <u>n</u> un praying to cross |
| に | ni | ni | <u>n</u> eedle |
| にゃ | nya | nya | |
| にゅ | nyu | nyu | |
| にょ | nyo | nyo | |
| ぬ | nu | nu | <u>n</u> oodles with tail |
| ね | ne | ne | ねこ (<u>n</u> eko) with tail |
| の | no | no | pig <u>n</u> ose |

| 平仮名 | Hepburn romanisation | Keyboard command | Mnemonic |
|-------|-------------------------|---------------------|---|
| は は | ha/wa [†] | ha | “Ha” shape |
| ば ば | ba | ba | |
| ぱ ぱ | pa | pa | |
| ひ ひ | hi | hi | <u>heel</u> / <u>he</u> has a big nose |
| ひゃ ひゃ | hya | hya | |
| ひゅ ひゅ | hyu | hyu | |
| ひょ ひょ | hyo | hyo | |
| び び | bi | bi | |
| びゃ びゃ | bya | bya | |
| びゅ びゅ | byu | byu | |
| びょ びょ | byo | byo | |
| ぴ ぴ | pi | pi | |
| ぴゃ ぴゃ | pya | pya | |
| ぴゅ ぴゅ | pyu | pyu | |
| ぴょ ぴょ | pyo | pyo | |
| ふ ふ | fu | hu/fu | Mount <u>Fu</u> ji |
| ぶ ぶ | bu | bu | |
| ぷ ぷ | pu | pu | |
| へ へ | he/e [†] | he | <u>head</u> band / Mount St. <u>He</u> lens |
| べ べ | be | be | |
| ぺ ぺ | pe | pe | |
| ほ ほ | ho | ho | mutated santa says <u>ho</u> ho ho |
| ぼ ぼ | bo | bo | |
| ぽ ぽ | po | po | |
| ま ま | ma | ma | mutated mom with snake tail |
| み み | mi | mi | <u>me</u> just turned 21 |
| みゃ みゃ | mya | mya | |
| みゅ みゅ | myu | myu | |
| みょ みょ | myo | myo | |
| む む | mu | mu | cow says <u>moo</u> |
| め め | me | me | eye shape without tail |
| も も | mo | mo | <u>more</u> worms to catch <u>more</u> fish |
| や や | ya | ya | <u>y</u> acht with anchor down |
| ゆ ゆ | yu | yu | <u>u</u> -tensils |

| 平仮名 | Hepburn romanisation | Keyboard command | Mnemonic |
|-------|-------------------------|------------------------|---|
| よ よ | yo | yo | “yo” shape |
| ら ら | ra | ra | <u>r</u> abbit |
| り り | ri | ri | reeds |
| りゃ りゃ | rya | rya | |
| りゅ りゅ | ryu | ryu | |
| りょ りょ | ryo | ryo | |
| る る | ru | ru | weird <u>rou</u> te with tail |
| れ れ | re | re | <u>re</u> tching guy kneeled down |
| ろ ろ | ro | ro | normal <u>ro</u> ad without tail |
| わ わ | wa | wa | <u>w</u> allaby / <u>w</u> asp |
| を を | wo/o [†] | wo | <u>w</u> oah the water is cold |
| ん ん | nn | nn | “n” shape |
| あ あ | ? | la/xa | |
| い い | ? | li/xi | |
| う う | ? | lu/xu | |
| え え | ? | le/xe | |
| お お | ? | lo/xo | |
| や や | ? | lya/xya | |
| ゆ ゆ | ? | lyu/xyu | |
| よ よ | ? | lyo/xyo | |
| っ っ | [†] > | ltu/ltsu/xtsu/repeat > | |

SA.2 片仮名 (カタカナ)

Some general notes:

- Usage of the ・ symbol to denote word boundaries is completely optional.

SA.2.1 Mnemonics

Table 21: 片仮名 mnemonic table. Some entries were taken from [Wikipedia \(Hepburn Romanisation\)](#) but only the orange and blue ones are taken, since the beige and purple ones are regarded as unofficial (by me).

| 片仮名 | Hepburn romanisation | Keyboard command | Mnemonic |
|-------|-------------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| ア ア | a | a | “A” shape |
| イ イ | i | i | eagle perched |
| イエ イエ | ye | ye | |
| ウ ウ | u | u | same shape as う |

| 片仮名 | Hepburn romanisation | Keyboard command | Mnemonic |
|-----|-------------------------|---------------------|--|
| ウィ | wi | wi | |
| ウェ | we | we | |
| ウォ | wo | uxo | |
| ヴ | vu | vu | |
| ヴァ | va | va | |
| ヴィ | vi | vi | |
| ヴュ | vyu | vyu | |
| ヴェ | ve | ve | |
| ヴォ | vo | vo | |
| エ | e | e | <u>e</u> ngineer bar |
| オ | o | o | <u>o</u> pera talent (オ) singing |
| カ | ka | ka | same shape as か |
| ガ | ga | ga | |
| キ | ki | ki | same shape as き |
| キャ | kya | kya | |
| キュ | kyu | kyu | |
| キョ | kyo | kyo | |
| ギ | gi | gi | |
| ギヤ | gya | gya | |
| ギユ | gyu | gyu | |
| ギョ | gyo | gyo | |
| ク | ku | ku | <u>c</u> ook's hat |
| クア | kwa | kwa | |
| クイ | kwi | kwi | |
| クエ | kwe | kwe | |
| クオ | kwo | kwo | |
| グ | gu | gu | |
| グア | gwa | gwa | |
| ケ | ke | ke | “k” shape |
| ゲ | ge | ge | |
| コ | ko | ko | broken 口 (CN) / two <u>c</u> orners |
| ゴ | go | go | |
| サ | sa | sa | <u>s</u> ardines and <u>s</u> almon (bigger) |
| ザ | za | za | |

| 片仮名 | Hepburn romanisation | Keyboard command | Mnemonic |
|-------|-------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| シ シ | shi | si/shi | same direction as し |
| シャ シャ | sha | sha | |
| シュ シュ | shu | shu | |
| シェ シュ | she | she | |
| ショ ショ | sho | sho | |
| ジ ジ | ji | zi/ji | |
| ジャ ジャ | ja | jya/ja | |
| ジュ ジュ | ju | jyu/ju | |
| ジェ ジェ | je | jye/je | |
| ジョ ジョ | jo | jyo/jo | |
| ス ス | su | su | <u>s</u> uperman |
| ズ ズ | zu | zu | |
| セ セ | se | se | same shape as セ |
| ゼ ゼ | ze | ze | |
| ソ ソ | so | so | <u>s</u> ewing needles |
| ゾ ゾ | zo | zo | |
| タ タ | ta | ta | <u>t</u> idal wave |
| ダ ダ | da | da | |
| チ チ | chi | ti/chi | <u>cheer</u> / ち |
| チャ チャ | cha | cha | |
| チュ チュ | chu | chu | |
| チェ チェ | che | che | |
| チョ チョ | cho | cho | |
| ヂ ヌ | ji | di | |
| ヂャ ヌ | ja | dya | |
| ヂュ ヌ | ju | dyu | |
| ヂョ ヌ | jo | dyo | |
| ツ ツ | tsu | tu/tsu | same direction as つ |
| ツァ ヌ | tse | tse | Italy "z" |
| ツィ ヌ | tsi | tsi | Italy "z" |
| ツェ ヌ | tse | tse | Italy "z" |
| ツォ ヌ | tso | tso | Italy "z" |
| ヅ ヌ | zu | du | |
| テ テ | te | te | <u>t</u> elephone pole |

| 片仮名 | Hepburn romanisation | Keyboard command | Mnemonic |
|-------|-------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| ティ ティ | ti | texi | "party" |
| テュ ティ | tyu | texyu | |
| デ デ | de | de | |
| ディ ディ | di | dexi | "candy" |
| デュ デュ | dyu | dexyu | |
| ト ト | to | to | totem pole |
| トゥ トウ | tu | toxu | "two" |
| ド ド | do | do | |
| ドウ ドウ | du | dowu | "dew" |
| ナ ナ | na | na | narwhal |
| ニ ニ | ni | ni | same shape as に |
| ニャ ニャ | nya | nya | |
| ニュ ニュ | nyu | nyu | |
| ニョ ニョ | nyo | nyo | |
| ヌ ヌ | nu | nu | noodles with chopsticks |
| ネ ネ | ne | ne | neckerchief |
| ノ ノ | no | no | long nose |
| ハ ハ | ha | ha | ハ ^ヘ / 八 (CN) |
| バ バ | ba | ba | |
| パ パ | pa | pa | |
| ヒ ヒ | hi | hi | smile hehe |
| ヒャ ヒャ | hya | hya | |
| ヒュ ヒュ | hyu | hyu | |
| ヒョ ヒョ | hyo | hyo | |
| ビ ビ | bi | bi | |
| ビャ ビャ | bya | bya | |
| ビュ ビュ | byu | byu | |
| ビョ ビョ | byo | byo | |
| ピ ピ | pi | pi | |
| ピャ ピャ | pya | pya | |
| ピュ ピュ | pyu | pyu | |
| ピョ ピョ | pyo | pyo | |
| フ フ | fu | hu/fu | flag |
| ファ ファ | fa | fa | |

| 片仮名 | Hepburn romanisation | Keyboard command | Mnemonic |
|-----|-------------------------|---------------------|------------------------------------|
| フィ | fi | fi | |
| フュ | fyu | fyu | |
| フェ | fe | fe | |
| フォ | fo | fo | |
| ブ | bu | bu | |
| プ | pu | pu | |
| ヘ | he | he | same shape as ヘ |
| ベ | be | be | |
| ペ | pe | pe | |
| ホ | ho | ho | <u>h</u> oly cross |
| ボ | bo | bo | |
| ポ | po | po | |
| マ | ma | ma | <u>m</u> ath angles |
| ミ | mi | mi | <u>m</u> issiles |
| ミヤ | mya | mya | |
| ミュ | myu | myu | |
| ミヨ | myo | myo | |
| ム | mu | mu | cow face, says <u>moo</u> |
| メ | me | me | Arlecchino's eyes (め) |
| モ | mo | mo | same shape as も |
| ヤ | ya | ya | same shape as や |
| ユ | yu | yu | <u>u</u> -turn |
| ヨ | yo | yo | <u>y</u> oga pose |
| ラ | ra | ra | <u>r</u> aptor |
| リ | ri | ri | reeds |
| リヤ | rya | rya | |
| リュ | ryu | ryu | |
| リョ | ryo | ryo | |
| ル | ru | ru | tree <u>r</u> oots |
| レ | re | re | <u>r</u> ed hair / right side of ル |
| ロ | ro | ro | cyclic <u>r</u> oad |
| ワ | wa | wa | <u>w</u> atermelon slice |
| ヲ | wo | wo | <u>o</u> atmeal bowl |
| ン | nn | nn | N/A |

| 片仮名 | | Hepburn romanisation | Keyboard command | Mnemonic |
|-----|---|-------------------------|------------------------|----------|
| ア | ア | ? | la/xa | |
| イ | イ | ? | li/xi | |
| ウ | ウ | ? | lu/xu | |
| エ | エ | ? | le/xe | |
| オ | オ | ? | lo/xo | |
| ヤ | ヤ | ? | lya/xya | |
| ユ | ユ | ? | lyu/xyu | |
| ヨ | ヨ | ? | lyo/xyo | |
| ー | ー | <+1 | — key | |
| ッ | ッ | +1> | ltu/ltsu/xtsu/repeat > | |

SA.3 仮名 Summary

Table 22: 仮名 summary table. [†]Particle romanisation applies only for 平仮名.

| 平仮名 | | 片仮名 | | Hepburn romanisation | Keyboard command |
|-----|----|-----|----|-------------------------|---------------------|
| あ | あ | ア | ア | a | a |
| い | い | イ | イ | i | i |
| | | イエ | イエ | ye | ye |
| う | う | ウ | ウ | u | u |
| | | ウィ | ウィ | wi | wi |
| | | ウェ | ウェ | we | we |
| | | ウオ | ウオ | wo | uxo |
| | | ヴ | ヴ | vu | vu |
| | | ヴァ | ヴァ | va | va |
| | | ヴィ | ヴィ | vi | vi |
| | | ヴュ | ヴュ | vyu | vyu |
| | | ヴェ | ヴェ | ve | ve |
| | | ヴォ | ヴォ | vo | vo |
| え | え | エ | エ | e | e |
| お | お | オ | オ | o | o |
| か | か | カ | カ | ka | ka |
| が | が | ガ | ガ | ga | ga |
| き | き | キ | キ | ki | ki |
| きゃ | きゃ | キャ | キャ | kya | kya |

| 平仮名 | 片仮名 | Hepburn romanisation | Keyboard command |
|-----|-----|-------------------------|---------------------|
| きゅ | きゅ | キュ | キユ |
| きょ | きょ | キョ | キヨ |
| ぎ | ギ | ギ | ギ |
| ぎゃ | ギヤ | ギヤ | ギヤ |
| ぎゅ | ギユ | ギユ | ギユ |
| ぎょ | ギョ | ギョ | ギョ |
| く | ク | ク | ク |
| | クァ | クァ | クァ |
| | クィ | クィ | クィ |
| | クエ | クエ | クエ |
| | クォ | クォ | クォ |
| ぐ | グ | グ | グ |
| | グァ | グァ | グァ |
| け | ケ | ケ | ケ |
| げ | ゲ | ゲ | ゲ |
| こ | コ | コ | コ |
| ご | ゴ | ゴ | ゴ |
| さ | サ | サ | サ |
| ざ | ザ | ザ | ザ |
| し | シ | シ | シ |
| しゃ | シャ | シャ | シャ |
| しゅ | シュ | シュ | シュ |
| | シェ | シェ | シェ |
| しよ | シヨ | シヨ | シヨ |
| じ | ジ | ジ | ジ |
| じゃ | ジャ | ジャ | ジャ |
| じゅ | ジュ | ジュ | ジュ |
| | ジェ | ジェ | ジェ |
| じよ | ジヨ | ジヨ | ジヨ |
| す | ス | ス | ス |
| ず | ズ | ズ | ズ |
| せ | セ | セ | セ |
| ぜ | ゼ | ゼ | ゼ |
| そ | ソ | ソ | ソ |

| 平仮名 | 片仮名 | Hepburn romanisation | Keyboard command |
|-----|-----|-------------------------|---------------------|
| ぞ | ゾ | zo | zo |
| た | タ | ta | ta |
| だ | ダ | da | da |
| ち | チ | chi | ti/chi |
| ちゃ | チャ | cha | cha |
| ちゅ | チュ | chu | chu |
| | チェ | che | che |
| ちょ | チョ | cho | cho |
| ぢ | ヂ | ji | di |
| ぢゃ | ヂャ | ja | dya |
| ぢゅ | ヂュ | ju | dyu |
| ぢょ | ヂョ | jo | dyo |
| つ | ツ | tsu | tu/tsu |
| | ツァ | tsa | tsa |
| | ツイ | tsi | tsi |
| | ツェ | tse | tse |
| | ツォ | tso | tso |
| づ | ヅ | zu | du |
| て | テ | te | te |
| | テイ | ti | texi |
| | テュ | tyu | texyu |
| で | デ | de | de |
| | ディ | di | dexi |
| | デュ | dyu | dexyu |
| と | ト | to | to |
| | トゥ | tu | toxu |
| ど | ド | do | do |
| | ドウ | du | dowu |
| な | ナ | na | na |
| に | ニ | ni | ni |
| にゃ | ニャ | nya | nya |
| にゅ | ニュ | nyu | nyu |
| によ | ニョ | nyo | nyo |
| ぬ | ヌ | nu | nu |

| 平仮名 | | 片仮名 | | Hepburn romanisation | Keyboard command |
|-----|----|-----|----|-------------------------|---------------------|
| ね | ね | ネ | ネ | ne | ne |
| の | の | ノ | ノ | no | no |
| は | は | ハ | ハ | ha | ha |
| ば | ば | バ | バ | ba | ba |
| ぱ | ぱ | パ | パ | pa | pa |
| ひ | ひ | ヒ | ヒ | hi | hi |
| ひゃ | ひゃ | ヒャ | ヒャ | hya | hya |
| ひゅ | ひゅ | ヒュ | ヒュ | hyu | hyu |
| ひょ | ひょ | ヒョ | ヒョ | hyo | hyo |
| び | び | ビ | ビ | bi | bi |
| びゃ | びゃ | ビャ | ビャ | bya | bya |
| びゅ | びゅ | ビュ | ビュ | byu | byu |
| びょ | びょ | ビョ | ビョ | byo | byo |
| ぴ | ぴ | ピ | ピ | pi | pi |
| ぴゃ | ぴゃ | ピャ | ピャ | pya | pya |
| ぴゅ | ぴゅ | ピュ | ピュ | pyu | pyu |
| ぴょ | ぴょ | ピョ | ピョ | pyo | pyo |
| ふ | ふ | フ | フ | fu | hu/fu |
| | | ファ | ファ | fa | fa |
| | | フィ | フィ | fi | fi |
| | | フュ | フュ | fyu | fyu |
| | | フェ | フェ | fe | fe |
| | | フォ | フォ | fo | fo |
| ぶ | ぶ | ブ | ブ | bu | bu |
| ぶ | ぶ | プ | プ | pu | pu |
| へ | へ | ヘ | ヘ | he | he |
| べ | べ | ベ | ベ | be | be |
| ぺ | ぺ | ペ | ペ | pe | pe |
| ほ | ほ | ホ | ホ | ho | ho |
| ぼ | ぼ | ボ | ボ | bo | bo |
| ぽ | ぽ | ポ | ポ | po | po |
| ま | ま | マ | マ | ma | ma |
| み | み | ミ | ミ | mi | mi |
| みゃ | みゃ | ミャ | ミャ | mya | mya |

| 平仮名 | | 片仮名 | | Hepburn romanisation | Keyboard command |
|-----|----|-----|----|-------------------------|------------------------|
| みゆ | みゆ | ミュ | ミユ | myu | myu |
| みよ | みよ | ミヨ | ミヨ | myo | myo |
| む | む | ム | ム | mu | mu |
| め | め | メ | メ | me | me |
| も | も | モ | モ | mo | mo |
| や | や | ヤ | ヤ | ya | ya |
| ゆ | ゆ | ユ | ユ | yu | yu |
| よ | よ | ヨ | ヨ | yo | yo |
| ら | ら | ラ | ラ | ra | ra |
| り | り | リ | リ | ri | ri |
| りゃ | りゃ | リャ | リャ | rya | rya |
| りゅ | りゅ | リュ | リュ | ryu | ryu |
| りょ | りょ | リョ | リョ | ryo | ryo |
| る | る | ル | ル | ru | ru |
| れ | れ | レ | レ | re | re |
| ろ | ろ | ロ | ロ | ro | ro |
| わ | わ | ワ | ワ | wa | wa |
| を | を | ヲ | ヲ | wo | wo |
| ん | ん | ン | ン | nn | nn |
| あ | あ | ア | ア | ? | la/xa |
| い | い | イ | イ | ? | li/xi |
| う | う | ウ | ウ | ? | lu/xu |
| え | え | エ | エ | ? | le/xe |
| お | お | オ | オ | ? | lo/xo |
| や | や | ヤ | ヤ | ? | lya/xya |
| ゆ | ゆ | ユ | ユ | ? | lyu/xyu |
| よ | よ | ヨ | ヨ | ? | lyo/xyo |
| | | ー | ー | <+1 | — key |
| っ | っ | ッ | ッ | +1> | ltu/ltsu/xtsu/repeat > |

SB Basic nouns

SB.1 Numbers

Table 23: Basic nouns: numbers.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|--|---------------|---|
| れい れい れい 零/0/〇 | zero | [NHK] also: ゼロ/ (with 漢字 numerals) |
| いち いち いち 一/1/壹 | one | |
| に に に 二/2/弍 | two | |
| さん さん さん 三/3/参 | three | |
| • ぶん ぶん し 四/4/四 | four | [HN] 肆 is obsolete; 四 only when counting up/compound 漢字/banks |
| ご ご ご 五/5/伍 | five | 伍 is obsolete |
| ろく ろく ろく 六/6/六 | six | 陸 is obsolete |
| • なな なな しち 七/7/七 | seven | [HN] 漆 is obsolete |
| はち はち はち 八/8/八 | eight | 捌 is obsolete |
| きゅう きゅう きゅう 九/9/九 | nine | 玖 is obsolete |
| じゅう じゅう じゅう じゅう 十/一〇/10/拾 | ten | |
| じゅういち じゅういち 十一/11 | eleven | |
| じゅうに じゅうに 十二/12 | twelve | |
| じゅうさん じゅうさん 十三/13 | thirteen | |
| じゅうよん じゅうよん 十四/14 | fourteen | |
| じゅうご じゅうご 十五/15 | fifteen | |
| じゅうろく じゅうろく 十六/16 | sixteen | |
| じゅうなな じゅうなな 十七/17 | seventeen | |
| じゅうはち じゅうはち 十八/18 | eighteen | |
| じゅうきゅう じゅうきゅう 十九/19 | nineteen | |
| に じゅう に じゅう に じゅう 二十/二〇/20 | twenty | |
| さんじゅう さんじゅう さんじゅう 三十/三〇/30 | thirty | |
| よんじゅう よんじゅう よんじゅう 四十/四〇/40 | fourty | |
| ごじゅう ごじゅう ごじゅう 五十/五〇/50 | fifty | |
| ろくじゅう ろくじゅう ろくじゅう 六十/六〇/60 | sixty | |
| ななじゅう ななじゅう ななじゅう 七十/七〇/70 | seventy | |
| はちじゅう はちじゅう はちじゅう 八十/八〇/80 | eighty | |
| きゅうじゅう きゅうじゅう きゅうじゅう 九十/九〇/90 | ninety | |
| ひゃく ひゃく ひゃく 百/一〇〇/100 | hundred | |
| に ひゃく に ひゃく に ひゃく 二百/2百/二〇〇/ 200 | two hundred | |
| • さんびゃく さんびゃく さんびゃく 三百/3百/三〇〇/ 300 | three hundred | |
| よんひゃく よんひゃく よんひゃく 四百/4百/四〇〇/ 400 | four hundred | |
| ごひゃく ごひゃく ごひゃく 五百/5百/五〇〇/ 500 | five hundred | |
| • ろくびゃく ろくびゃく ろくびゃく 六百/6百/六〇〇/ 600 | six hundred | |
| ななひゃく ななひゃく ななひゃく 七百/7百/七〇〇/ 700 | seven hundred | |

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|--|------------------|-------|
| • <small>はっぴやく</small> 八百 / <small>はっぴやく</small> 8百 / <small>はっぴやく</small> 八〇〇 / 800 | eight hundred | |
| • <small>きゅうひやく</small> 九百 / <small>きゅうひやく</small> 9百 / <small>きゅうひやく</small> 九〇〇 / 900 | nine hundred | |
| • <small>せん</small> 千 / <small>いっせん</small> 一千 / <small>いっせん</small> 一〇〇〇 / <small>いっせん</small> 1000 | thousand | |
| • <small>にせん</small> 二千 / <small>にせん</small> 二〇〇〇 / <small>にせん</small> 2000 | two thousand | |
| • <small>さんぜん</small> 三千 / <small>さんぜん</small> 三〇〇〇 / <small>さんぜん</small> 3000 | three thousand | |
| • <small>よんぜん</small> 四千 / <small>よんぜん</small> 四〇〇〇 / <small>よんぜん</small> 4000 | four thousand | |
| • <small>ごせん</small> 五千 / <small>ごせん</small> 五〇〇〇 / <small>ごせん</small> 5000 | five thousand | |
| • <small>ろくせん</small> 六千 / <small>ろくせん</small> 六〇〇〇 / <small>ろくせん</small> 6000 | six thousand | |
| • <small>ななせん</small> 七千 / <small>ななせん</small> 七〇〇〇 / <small>ななせん</small> 7000 | seven thousand | |
| • <small>はっせん</small> 八千 / <small>はっせん</small> 八〇〇〇 / <small>はっせん</small> 8000 | eight thousand | |
| • <small>きゅうせん</small> 九千 / <small>きゅうせん</small> 九〇〇〇 / <small>きゅうせん</small> 9000 | nine thousand | |
| • <small>いちまん</small> 一万 / <small>いちまん</small> 一〇〇〇〇 / <small>いちまん</small> 1万 / 老萬 | ten thousand | |
| • <small>じゅうまん</small> 十万 / <small>じゅうまん</small> 一〇〇〇〇〇 / <small>じゅうまん</small> 100000 / 拾万 / 拾萬 | hundred thousand | |
| • <small>ひゃくまん</small> 百万 / <small>ひゃくまん</small> 一〇〇〇〇〇〇 / <small>ひゃくまん</small> 1000000 / 老百万 / 老百萬 | million | |
| • <small>せんまん</small> 千万 / <small>いっせんまん</small> 一千万 / <small>いっせんまん</small> 一〇〇〇〇万 / <small>いっせんまん</small> 10000000 | ten million | |
| • <small>いちおおく</small> 一億 / <small>いちおおく</small> 1億 | hundred million | |
| • <small>いっちょいう</small> 一兆 / <small>いっちょいう</small> 1億 | trillion | |

SB.2 Counting (generic): つ

Table 24: Basic nouns: counting (generic).

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|--------|-------------|-------|
| いくつ | how many? | (幾つ) |
| ひと ひとつ | one item | |
| ふた ふたつ | two items | |
| みつ みっつ | three items | |
| よつ よっつ | four items | |
| いつ いっつ | five items | |
| むっ むっつ | six items | |
| なな ななつ | seven items | |
| やっ やっつ | eight items | |
| ここの 九つ | nine items | |
| とお 十 | ten items | |

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 全部 <small>ぜんぶ</small> | all/entire/whole/altogether | also an adverb |
| 以上 <small>いじょう</small> | and above | SUFFIX, also an expression |
| 以下 <small>いかり</small> | and below/subpar | SUFFIX |
| 次 <small>つぎ</small> | next | |

SB.3 Counting people: 人^{にん}

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 25: Basic nouns: counting people.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|-------------------------------------|--|-------|
| 何人 <small>なんにん</small> | how many people? | |
| • 1人 <small>ひとり</small> | one person; being alone/single | |
| • 2人 <small>ふたり</small> | two people | |
| 3人 <small>さんにん</small> | three people | |
| • 4人 <small>よにん</small> | four people | |
| 5人 <small>ごにん</small> | five people | |
| 6人 <small>ろくにん</small> | six people | |
| • 7人/7人 <small>ななにん しちにん</small> | seven people; former preferred for clarity Actually, we don't talk about しち...right? See grammar book when you get there [HN1], [HN2] | |
| 8人 <small>はちにん</small> | eight people | |
| 9人 <small>じゅうにん</small> | nine people | |
| 10人 <small>きゅうにん</small> | ten people | |
| 100人 <small>ひゃくにん</small> | hundred people | |
| 1000人 <small>せんになん</small> | thousand people | |
| 1万人 <small>いちまんにん</small> | ten thousand people | |
| 一緒 <small>いっしょ</small> | together | |

SB.4 Counting bus/train stations: 駅^{えき}

Table 26: Basic nouns: counting bus/train stations.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|-------|
| 何駅 <small>なんえき</small> | how many stations? | |
| • 1駅 <small>ひとえき</small> | one station | |
| • 2駅 <small>ふたえき</small> | two stations | |
| 3駅 <small>さんえき</small> | three stations | |
| 4駅 <small>よんえき</small> | four stations | |
| 5駅 <small>ごえき</small> | five stations | |
| 6駅 <small>ろくえき</small> | six stations | |
| 7駅 <small>ななえき</small> | seven stations | |
| 8駅 <small>はちえき</small> | eight stations | |
| 9駅 <small>きゅうえき</small> | nine stations | |
| 10駅 <small>じゅうえき</small> | ten stations | |
| 100駅 <small>ひゃくえき</small> | hundred stations | |
| 1000駅 <small>せんえき</small> | thousand stations | |
| 1万駅 <small>いちまんえき</small> | ten thousand stations | |

SB.5 Counting age: 歳^{さい}

才^{さい} may be used as a simpler substitute for 歳^{さい} only in handwriting, but note that 才^{さい} is technically incorrect as it does not mean age ([HN]).

Table 27: Basic nouns: counting age.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|----------------------------|------------------------|--|
| 何歳 ^{なんさい} | how old? | |
| • 1歳未満 ^{いっさいみん} | less than one year old | e.g. 「～の乳児」: [NHK] |
| • 1歳 ^{いっさい} | one year old | |
| 2歳 ^{にさい} | two year old | |
| 3歳 ^{さんさい} | three years old | |
| 4歳 ^{よんさい} | four years old | |
| 5歳 ^{ごさい} | five years old | |
| 6歳 ^{ろくさい} | six years old | |
| 7歳 ^{ななさい} | seven years old | |
| • 8歳 ^{はっさい} | eight years old | |
| 9歳 ^{きゅうさい} | nine years old | |
| • 10歳 ^{じゅうさい} | ten years old | じっさい also possible? |
| 二十歳/20歳 ^{はたち はたち} | twenty years old | the only exception, to do with coming-of-age |
| 100歳 ^{ひゃくさい} | hundred years old | |
| 1000歳 ^{せんさい} | thousand years old | |
| 1万歳 ^{いちまんさい} | ten thousand years old | |

SB.6 Counting thin/flat things: 枚^{まい}

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 28: Basic nouns: counting thin/flat things.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------------------|---|-------|
| 何枚 ^{なんまい} | how many sheets/thin or flat things? | |
| 1枚 ^{いちまい} | one sheet/thin or flat thing | |
| 2枚 ^{にまい} | two sheets/thin or flat things | |
| 3枚 ^{さんまい} | three sheets/thin or flat things | |
| 4枚 ^{よんまい} | four sheets/thin or flat things | |
| 5枚 ^{ごまい} | five sheets/thin or flat things | |
| 6枚 ^{ろくまい} | six sheets/thin or flat things | |
| 7枚 ^{ななまい} | seven sheets/thin or flat things | |
| 8枚 ^{はちまい} | eight sheets/thin or flat things | |
| 9枚 ^{きゅうまい} | nine sheets/thin or flat things | |
| 10枚 ^{じゅうまい} | ten sheets/thin or flat things | |
| 100枚 ^{ひゃくまい} | hundred sheets/thin or flat things | |
| 1000枚 ^{せんまい} | thousand sheets/thin or flat things | |
| 1万枚 ^{いちまんまい} | ten thousand sheets/thin or flat things | |

SB.7 Counting thin long things (bottles): 本^{ほん}

Tofugu: TO READ

bottles/trains/buses/books/films/phone calls

Table 29: Basic nouns: counting thin long things (bottles).

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| • なんぼん 何本 | how many thin long things? | |
| • いっぽん 1本 | one thin long thing | |
| • にほん 2本 | two thin long things | |
| • さんぼん 3本 | three thin long things | |
| • よんぼん 4本 | four thin long things | |
| • ごほん 5本 | five thin long things | |
| • ろっぽん 6本 | six thin long things | |
| • ななぼん 7本 | seven thin long things | |
| • はっぽん 8本 | eight thin long things | |
| • きゅうぼん 9本 | nine thin long things | |
| • じゅうぼん 10本 | ten thin long things | じゅうぼん also possible? |
| • ひゃっぽん 100本 | one hundred thin long things | |
| • せんぼん 1000本 | one thousand thin long things | |
| • いちまんぼん 1万本 | ten thousand thin long things | |

SB.8 Counting drinks (cups/glasses): 杯

Table 30: Basic nouns: counting drinks (cups/glasses).

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|----------------------|
| • なんばい 何杯 | how many drinks/cups/glasses? | |
| • いっぱい 1杯 | one drink/cup/glass | |
| • にばい 2杯 | two drinks/cups/glasses | |
| • さんばい 3杯 | three drinks/cups/glasses | |
| • よんばい 4杯 | four drinks/cups/glasses | |
| • ごばい 5杯 | five drinks/cups/glasses | |
| • ろっぱい 6杯 | six drinks/cups/glasses | |
| • ななばい 7杯 | seven drinks/cups/glasses | |
| • はっぱい 8杯 | eight drinks/cups/glasses | |
| • きゅうばい 9杯 | nine drinks/cups/glasses | |
| • じゅうばい 10杯 | ten drinks/cups/glasses | じゅうばい also possible? |
| • ひゃっぱい 100杯 | hundred drinks/cups/glasses | |
| • せんばい 1000杯 | thousand drinks/cups/glasses | |
| • いちまんばい 1万杯 | ten thousand drinks/cups/glasses | |

SB.9 Counting machines/vehicles: 台

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 31: Basic nouns: counting machines/vehicles.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|--------------|--------------------|-------|
| • なんだい 何台 | how many machines? | |
| • いちだい 1台 | one machine | |
| • にだい 2台 | two machines | |
| • さんだい 3台 | three machines | |
| • よんだい 4台 | four machines | |
| • ごだい 5台 | five machines | |
| • ろくだい 6台 | six machines | |

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|---------------|-----------------------|-------|
| ななだい 7台 | seven machines | |
| はちだい 8台 | eight machines | |
| きゅうだい 9台 | nine machines | |
| じゅうだい 10台 | ten machines | |
| ひゃくだい 100台 | hundred machines | |
| せんだい 1000台 | thousand machines | |
| いちまんだい 1万台 | ten thousand machines | |

SB.10 Counting books: 冊

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 32: Basic nouns: counting books.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|----------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| なんさつ 何冊 | how many books? | |
| • いっさつ 1冊 | one book | |
| に さつ 2冊 | two books | |
| さんさつ 3冊 | three books | |
| よんさつ 4冊 | four books | |
| ご さつ 5冊 | five books | |
| ろくさつ 6冊 | six books | |
| ななさつ 7冊 | seven books | |
| • はっさつ 8冊 | eight books | |
| きゅうさつ 9冊 | nine books | |
| • じゅうさつ 10冊 | ten books | じっさつ also possible? |
| ひゃくさつ 100冊 | hundred books | |
| せんさつ 1000冊 | thousand books | |
| いちまんさつ 1万冊 | ten thousand books | |

SB.11 Counting clothes: 着

Table 33: Basic nouns: counting clothes.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------------|----------------------|-------|
| なんちやく 何着 | how many dresses? | |
| • いっちやく 1着 | one dress | |
| に ちやく 2着 | two dresses | |
| さんちやく 3着 | three dresses | |
| よんちやく 4着 | four dresses | |
| ご ちやく 5着 | five dresses | |
| ろくちやく 6着 | six dresses | |
| ななちやく 7着 | seven dresses | |
| • はっちやく 8着 | eight dresses | |
| きゅうちやく 9着 | nine dresses | |
| • じゅうちやく 10着 | ten dresses | |
| ひゃくちやく 100着 | hundred dresses | |
| せんちやく 1000着 | thousand dresses | |
| いちまんちやく 1万着 | ten thousand dresses | |

SB.12 Counting small things: 個

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 34: Basic nouns: counting small things.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|-------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 何個 | how many small things? | |
| • 1 個 | one small thing | |
| 2 個 | two small things | |
| 3 個 | three small things | |
| 4 個 | four small things | |
| 5 個 | five small things | |
| • 6 個 | six small things | |
| 7 個 | seven small things | |
| • 8 個 / 8 個 | eight small things | 8 個 is casual: [HN] |
| 9 個 | nine small things | |
| • 10 個 | ten small things | |
| • 100 個 | hundred small things | |
| 1000 個 | thousand small things | |
| 1 万 個 | ten thousand small things | |
| 個々 | individual | e.g. 「そのクラスの個々のメンバー...」, like CN's 个个 |

SB.13 Counting shoes and socks: 足

Table 35: Basic nouns: Nouns: counting shoes and socks.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|--------|-----------------------------------|------------------|
| • 何足 | how many pairs of shoes/socks? | |
| • 1 足 | one pair of shoes/socks | |
| 2 足 | two pairs of shoes/socks | |
| 3 足 | three pairs of shoes/socks | [HN] |
| 4 足 | four pairs of shoes/socks | |
| 5 足 | five pairs of shoes/socks | |
| 6 足 | six pairs of shoes/socks | |
| 7 足 | seven pairs of shoes/socks | |
| • 8 足 | eight pairs of shoes/socks | |
| 9 足 | nine pairs of shoes/socks | |
| • 10 足 | ten pairs of shoes/socks | |
| 100 足 | hundred pairs of shoes/socks | also an organism |
| 1000 足 | thousand pairs of shoes/socks | |
| 1 万 足 | ten thousand pairs of shoes/socks | |

SB.14 Counting houses: 軒

UNSURE TERRITORY, exceptions of exceptions popping out!

Table 36: Basic nouns: .

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|-------|------------------|------------------------------|
| • 何軒 | how many houses? | exception ² [myg] |
| • 1 軒 | one house | |
| 2 軒 | two houses | |

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|----------------------|---------------------|---|
| • さんげん 3軒 | three houses | exception ² PREFERENCE? [myg] |
| よんげん 4軒 | four houses | |
| ごげん 5軒 | five houses | |
| • ろっげん 6軒 | six houses | |
| ななげん 7軒 | seven houses | |
| • はちげん はっげん 8軒/8軒 | eight houses | はっげん 8軒 may be casual; [HN] |
| きゅうげん 9軒 | nine houses | |
| • じゅうげん 10軒 | ten houses | |
| • ひゃっげん 100軒 | hundred houses | |
| • せんげん 1000軒 | thousand houses | exception ² ? |
| いちまんげん 1万軒 | ten thousand houses | ? |

SB.15 Counting floors: 階

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 37: Basic nouns: counting floors.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|----------------------|----------------------------|---|
| • なんかい なんがい 何階/何階 | which floor? | かい 階 is special and can choose to rendaku, prefer first for uniformity; [myg], [TFG] |
| • いっかい 1階 | first floor (ground floor) | |
| に かい 2階 | second floor | |
| • さんかい さんがい 3階/3階 | third floor | かい 階 is special and can choose to rendaku, prefer first for uniformity; [myg], [TFG] |
| よんかい 4階 | fourth floor | |
| ご かい 5階 | fifth floor | |
| • ろっかい 6階 | sixth floor | |
| ななかい 7階 | seventh floor | |
| • はちかい はっかい 8階/8階 | eighth floor | はっかい 8階 is informal; [HN] |
| きゅうかい 9階 | nine floor | |
| • じゅうかい 10階 | tenth floor | [HN] |
| • ひゃっかい 100階 | hundredth floor | |
| せんかい 1000階 | thousandth floor | |
| いちまんかい 1万階 | ten thousandth floor | |

SB.16 Counting locations: 箇所

箇所 is sometimes written as ケ所.

Table 38: Basic nouns: counting locations.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------------|---------------------|-------|
| なん かしょ 何箇所 | how many locations? | |
| • いっ かしょ 1箇所 | one location | |
| に かしょ 2箇所 | two locations | |
| さん かしょ 3箇所 | three locations | |
| よん かしょ 4箇所 | four locations | |
| ご かしょ 5箇所 | five locations | |

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|-------------------|------------------------|-------|
| ろっ か しよ 6箇所 | six locations | |
| なな か しよ 7箇所 | seven locations | |
| はち か しよ 八箇所 | eight locations | |
| きゅう か しよ 9箇所 | nine locations | |
| じゅう か しよ 10箇所 | ten locations | |
| ひゃく か しよ 100箇所 | hundred locations | |
| せん か しよ 1000箇所 | thousand locations | |
| いちまん か しよ 1万箇所 | ten thousand locations | |

SB.17 Counting small animals: 匹^{ひき}

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 39: Basic nouns: counting small animals.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|----------------|----------------------------|-------|
| なん ひき 何匹 | how many small animals? | |
| いっ ひき 1匹 | one small animal | |
| に ひき 2匹 | two small animals | |
| さん ひき 3匹 | three small animals | |
| よん ひき 4匹 | four small animals | |
| ご ひき 5匹 | five small animals | |
| ろっ ひき 6匹 | six small animals | |
| なな ひき 7匹 | seven small animals | |
| はっ ひき 8匹 | eight small animals | |
| きゅう ひき 9匹 | nine small animals | |
| じゅう ひき 10匹 | ten small animals | |
| ひゃく ひき 100匹 | hundred small animals | |
| せん ひき 1000匹 | thousand small animals | |
| いちまん ひき 1万匹 | ten thousand small animals | |

SB.18 Counting big animals: 頭^{とう}

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 40: Basic nouns: counting big animals.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|----------------|-----------------------|-------|
| なん とう 何頭 | how many big animals? | |
| いっ とう 1頭 | one big animal | |
| に とう 2頭 | two big animals | |
| さん とう 3頭 | three big animals | |
| よん とう 4頭 | four big animals | |
| ご とう 5頭 | five big animals | |
| ろく とう 6頭 | six big animals | |
| なな とう 7頭 | seven big animals | |
| はっ とう 8頭 | eight big animals | |
| きゅう とう 9頭 | nine big animals | |
| じゅう とう 10頭 | ten big animals | |
| ひゃく とう 100頭 | hundred big animals | |

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|-------|
| 1000頭 <small>せんとう</small> | thousand big animals | |
| 1万頭 <small>いちまんとう</small> | ten thousand big animals | |

SB.19 Counting birds and bats: 羽

Read the main article on [Tofugu](#).

% Be careful: many winged animals don't use the 羽 counter: flying insects, winged monsters, and flying dinosaurs all use 匹 (Table 39) or 頭 (Table 40).

All birds are counted with 羽 except *very* big birds like ostriches and emus, those use 頭 (Table 40).

Table 41: Basic nouns: counting birds and bats.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------|-------|
| 何羽 <small>なんわ</small> | how many birds/bats? | |
| 1羽 <small>いちわ</small> | one bird/bats | |
| 2羽 <small>にわ</small> | two birds/bats | |
| • 3羽 <small>さんぼ</small> | three birds/bats | |
| 4羽 <small>よんわ</small> | four birds/bats | |
| 5羽 <small>ごわ</small> | five birds/bats | |
| 6羽 <small>ろくわ</small> | six birds/bats | |
| 7羽 <small>ななわ</small> | seven birds/bats | |
| 8羽 <small>はちわ</small> | eight birds/bats | |
| 9羽 <small>きゅうわ</small> | nine birds/bats | |
| • 10羽 <small>じゅうわ</small> | ten birds/bats | |
| • 100羽 <small>ひゃくつば</small> | hundred birds/bats | |
| • 1000羽 <small>せんぼ</small> | thousand birds/bats | |
| • 1万羽 <small>いちまんぼ</small> | ten thousand birds/bats | |

SB.20 Counting years: 年

[Tofugu: TO READ](#)

Table 42: Basic nouns: counting years.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|------------------------------|--|-------|
| 何年 <small>なんねん</small> | how many years?/which year? | |
| 1年 <small>いちねん</small> | one year/first year | |
| 2年 <small>にねん</small> | two years/second year | |
| 3年 <small>さんねん</small> | three years/third year | |
| • 4年 <small>よねん</small> | four years/fourth year | |
| 5年 <small>ごねん</small> | five years/fifth year | |
| 6年 <small>ろくねん</small> | six years/sixth year | |
| 7年 <small>ななねん</small> | seven years/seventh year | |
| 8年 <small>はちねん</small> | eight years/eighth year | |
| 9年 <small>きゅうねん</small> | nine years/ninth year | |
| 10年 <small>じゅうねん</small> | ten years/tenth year | |
| 100年 <small>ひゃくねん</small> | hundred years/hundredth year | |
| 1000年 <small>せんねん</small> | thousand years/thousandth year | |
| 1万年 <small>いちまんねん</small> | ten thousand years/ten thousandth year | |

SB.21 Calendar months and days of a week: 月 and 曜日

The days of the week are named after the East Asian Seven Luminaries: the sun, the moon, and the five planets visible to the naked eye (Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn).

Table 43: Basic nouns: Calendar months and days of a week.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|----------|------------------------|--|
| 何月 | which month? | |
| 一月/1月 | January | |
| 二月/2月 | February | |
| 三月/3月 | March | |
| • 四月/4月 | April | |
| 五月/5月 | May | |
| 六月/6月 | June | |
| • 七月/7月 | July | 七 ^{なな} 月/7 ^{なな} 月 is sometimes used for disambiguation; [HN] |
| 八月/8月 | August | |
| • 九月/9月 | September | |
| 十月/10月 | October | |
| 十一月/11月 | November | |
| 十二月/12月 | December | |
| 何曜日 | which day of the week? | |
| 日/日曜/日曜日 | Sunday | Sun |
| 月/月曜/月曜日 | Monday | Moon |
| 火/火曜/火曜日 | Tuesday | fire/Mars (火星) |
| 水/水曜/水曜日 | Wednesday | water/Mercury (水星) |
| 木/木曜/木曜日 | Thursday | wood/Jupiter (木星) |
| 金/金曜/金曜日 | Friday | metal/Venus (金星) |
| 土/土曜/土曜日 | Saturday | earth/Saturn (土星) |

SB.22 Counting months: ケ月/月

Tofugu: TO READ

月 is the 和語 reading, so counting uses the 和語 counting system.

Table 44: Basic nouns: counting months.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------------|------------------|--|
| 何ヶ月/何月 | how many months? | |
| • 1ヶ月/1月 | one month | 1 ^{ひと} 月 is semi-archaic; [HN] |
| 2ヶ月/2月 | two months | 2 ^{ふた} 月 is semi-archaic; [HN] |
| • 3ヶ月/3月 | three months | |
| • 4ヶ月/4月 | four months | |
| 5ヶ月/5月 | five months | |
| • 6ヶ月/6月 | six months | |
| 7ヶ月/7月 | seven months | |
| • 8ヶ月/8ヶ月/八月/8月 | eight months | 8 ^{はっ} ヶ月 may be informal; [HN] |
| 9ヶ月/9月 | nine months | |
| • 10ヶ月/10月 | ten months | |

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|----------------------|---------------------|-------|
| • ひゃっかげつ 1 0 0 ケ月 | hundred months | |
| せんかげつ 1 0 0 0 ケ月 | thousand months | |
| いちまん かげつ 1 万 ケ月 | ten thousand months | |

SB.23 Days of the month: 日/日/日

Read the main article on [Tofugu](#). Also see [Instagram reel](#).

For calendar days, the 和語 counting system (日) is used for {2nd–10th, 14th, 20th, 24th}. All other numbers use standard 漢語 counting system (日). Furthermore, {17th, 27th} use 七, and {19th, 29th} use 九.

For ordinal days (§SB.24), there are two rules. The ~{日/日}日 schema follows the rules of day intervals (§SB.25), so 和語 counting system (日) is used for {2nd–10th, 20th} only. Furthermore, {1st–31st, 49th} use the formal readings: {17th, 27th} use 七 (七 OK for disambiguation) and {19th, 29th, 49th} use 九. On the other hand, the 第~日 schema follows these simplified rules: the standard 漢語 counting system is used for all numbers, and {9th, 19th, 29th, 49th} use 九.

For day intervals (§SB.25), the 和語 counting system (日) is used for {2nd–10th, 20th} only. All other numbers use the standard 漢語 counting system (日). Furthermore, days intervals in {1–31, 49} days use the formal readings: {17, 27} days use 七 (七 OK for disambiguation) and {19, 29, 49} days use 九.

For o’clocks and hour intervals (§SB.26), if the ones place is 4, 7 or 9, then 四、七、九 are used, ad infinitum.

Table 45: Basic nouns: calendar days.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|--------------------------|--|---|
| なんにち 何日 | which day of month/which day?/how many days? | |
| • ついたち いっ び 1 日 / 1 日 | first day of month | いっ び 1 日 is sometimes used in business settings; [TFG] |
| • ふつ か 2 日 | second day of month | |
| • みっ か 3 日 | third day of month | |
| • よっ か 4 日 | fourth day of month | |
| • いっ か 5 日 | fifth day of month | |
| • むい か 6 日 | sixth day of month | |
| • なのか 7 日 | seventh day of month | |
| • よう か 8 日 | eighth day of month | |
| • ここの か 9 日 | ninth day of month | |
| • とおか 1 0 日 | tenth day of month | |
| • じゅういちにち 1 1 日 | eleventh day of month | |
| • じゅう に にち 1 2 日 | twelfth day of month | |
| • じゅうさんにち 1 3 日 | thirteenth day of month | |
| • じゅうよっ か 1 4 日 | fourteenth day of month | |
| • じゅう ご にち 1 5 日 | fifteenth day of month | |
| • じゅうろくにち 1 6 日 | sixteenth day of month | |
| • じゅうしちにち 1 7 日 | seventeenth day of month | じゅうななにち 1 7 日 is sometimes used for disambiguation |
| • じゅうはちにち 1 8 日 | eighteenth day of month | |
| • じゅう く にち 1 9 日 | nineteenth day of month | |

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|------------------|-----------------------------|---|
| • 20日 | twentieth day of month | |
| にじゅういちにち 21日 | twenty-first day of month | |
| にじゅうににち 22日 | twenty-second day of month | |
| にじゅうさんにち 23日 | twenty-third day of month | |
| • 24日 | twenty-fourth day of month | |
| にじゅうごにち 25日 | twenty-fifth day of month | |
| にじゅうろくにち 26日 | twenty-sixth day of month | |
| • 27日 | twenty-seventh day of month | にじゅうななにち 27日 is sometimes used for disambiguation |
| にじゅうはちにち 28日 | twenty-eighth day of month | |
| • 29日 | twenty-ninth day of month | |
| さんじゅうにち 30日 | thirtieth of month | |
| さんじゅういちにち 31日 | thirty-first day of month | |
| しじゅうくにち 四十九日 | forty-ninth day after death | |

SB.24 Ordinal days: ~{日/日}日/第~日

Read the main article on [Tofugu](#).

目 is casual, 第 is formal. 目 is 和語 and follows pronunciations from §SB.25; 第 is 漢語 and forces 日 to take its 漢語 reading.

Table 46: Basic nouns: ordinal days.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|-------------------------|--|-------|
| なんにち 何日 | which day of month/which day?/how many days? | |
| だいにちにち 第何日 | which day? | |
| いちにちめ 1日目/第1日 | first day | |
| • ふつかめ 2日目/第2日 | second day | |
| みっかめ 3日目/第3日 | third day | |
| よっかめ 4日目/第4日 | fourth day | |
| いつかめ 5日目/第5日 | fifth day | |
| • むいかめ 6日目/第6日 | sixth day | |
| • なのかめ 7日目/第7日 | seventh day | |
| • ようかめ 8日目/第8日 | eighth day | |
| • ここのかめ 9日目/第9日 | ninth day | |
| とおかめ 10日目/第10日 | tenth day | |
| じゅういちにちめ 11日目/第11日 | eleventh day | |
| じゅうににちめ 12日目/第12日 | twelfth day | |
| じゅうさんにちめ 13日目/第13日 | thirteenth day | |
| じゅうよんにちめ 14日目/第14日 | fourteenth day | |
| じゅうごにちめ 15日目/第15日 | fifteenth day | |
| じゅうろくにちめ 16日目/第16日 | sixteenth day | |
| • じゅうしちにちめ 17日目/第17日 | seventeenth day | |
| じゅうはちにちめ 18日目/第18日 | eighteenth day | |
| • じゅうくにちめ 19日目/第19日 | nineteenth day | |
| • はつかめ 20日目/第20日 | twentieth day | |
| にじゅういちにちめ 21日目/第21日 | twenty-first day | |
| にじゅうににちめ 22日目/第22日 | twenty-second day | |

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|--|--------------------|-------|
| にじゅうさんにちめだい にじゅうさんにち 23日目/第23日 | twenty-third day | |
| にじゅうよんにちめだい にじゅうよんにち 24日目/第24日 | twenty-fourth day | |
| にじゅうごにちめだい にじゅうごにち 25日目/第25日 | twenty-fifth day | |
| にじゅうろくにちめだい にじゅうろくにち 26日目/第26日 | twenty-sixth day | |
| • にじゅうしちにちめだい にじゅうしちにち 27日目/第27日 | twenty-seventh day | |
| にじゅうはちにちめだい にじゅうはちにち 28日目/第28日 | twenty-eighth day | |
| • にじゅうくにちめだい にじゅうくにち 29日目/第29日 | twenty-ninth day | |
| さんじゅうにちめだいさんじゅうにち 30日目/第30日 | thirtieth day | |
| さんじゅうななにちめだいさんじゅうななにち 37日目/第37日 | thirty-seventh day | |
| さんじゅうきゅうにちめ 39日目/ だいさんじゅうきゅうにち 第39日 | thirty-ninth day | |
| • よんじゅうくにちめだいよんじゅうくにち 49日目/第49日 | forty-ninth day | |
| ごじゅうきゅうにちめだいごじゅうきゅうにち 59日目/第59日 | fifty-ninth day | |
| ひゃくにちめだいひゃくにち 100日目/第100日 | hundredth day | |
| せんにちめ 1000日目/ だいせんにち 第1000日 | thousandth day | |
| いちまんにちめだいいちまんにち 1万日目/第1万日 | ten thousandth day | |

SB.25 Counting days: {日/日}間

Read the main article on [Tofugu](#).

The 「〜間」 suffix here means “interval”. While typically dropped in the absence of ambiguity, it is necessary here to distinguish day intervals from days of the month (§SB.23; [\[WB\]](#)).

For formal settings and specifically **days and hours** (with the exception of day of month ^{なの}七日), ^{しち}七 is preferred over ^{なな}七, though the latter may be used for disambiguation with ^{いち}一.

Table 47: Basic nouns: counting days.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|---------------------|--|--|
| なんにちかん 何日間 | which day of month/which day?/how many days? | |
| いちにちかん 1日間 | one day | |
| • ふつにかかん 2日間 | two days | |
| みつにかかん 3日間 | three days | |
| よっにかかん 4日間 | four days | |
| いつにかかん 5日間 | five days | |
| • むいにかかん 6日間 | six days | |
| • なのかかん 7日間 | seven days | |
| • ようにかかん 8日間 | eight days | |
| ここのにかかん 9日間 | nine days | |
| とおかかん 10日間 | ten days | |
| じゅういちにちかん 11日間 | eleven days | |
| じゅうににちかん 12日間 | twelve days | |
| じゅうさんにちかん 13日間 | thirteen days | |
| じゅうよんにちかん 14日間 | fourteen days | |
| じゅうごにちかん 15日間 | fifteen days | |
| じゅうろくにちかん 16日間 | sixteen days | |
| • じゅうしちにちかん 17日間 | seventeen days | ^{じゅうななにちかん} 17日間 is sometimes used for disambiguation |

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------|---|
| <small>じゅうはちにちかん</small> 18日間 | eighteen days | |
| • <small>じゅうくにちかん</small> 19日間 | nineteen days | |
| • <small>はつかかん</small> 20日間 | twenty days | |
| <small>にじゅういちにちかん</small> 21日間 | twenty-one days | |
| <small>にじゅうににちかん</small> 22日間 | twenty-two days | |
| <small>にじゅうさんにちかん</small> 23日間 | twenty-three days | |
| <small>にじゅうよんにちかん</small> 24日間 | twenty-four days | |
| <small>にじゅうごにちかん</small> 25日間 | twenty-five days | |
| <small>にじゅうろくにちかん</small> 26日間 | twenty-six days | |
| • <small>にじゅうしちにちかん</small> 27日間 | twenty-seven days | <small>にじゅうななにちかん</small> 27日間 is sometimes used for disambiguation |
| <small>にじゅうはちにちかん</small> 28日間 | twenty-eight days | |
| • <small>にじゅうくにちかん</small> 29日間 | twenty-nine days | |
| <small>さんじゅうにちかん</small> 30日間 | thirty days | |
| <small>さんじゅうななにちかん</small> 37日間 | thirty-seven days | |
| <small>さんじゅうきゅうにちかん</small> 39日間 | thirty-nine days | |
| • <small>にじゅうくにちかん</small> 49日間 | forty-nine days | |
| <small>にじゅうきゅうにちかん</small> 59日間 | fifty-nine days | |
| <small>ひゃくにちかん</small> 100日間 | hundred days | |
| <small>せんにちかん</small> 1000日間 | thousand days | |
| <small>いちまんにちかん</small> 1万日間 | ten thousand days | |

SB.26 Counting o’clocks and hours: 時 and 時間

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 48: Basic nouns: counting o’clocks and hours.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| <small>なんじ</small> 何時 | which hour (of day)? | |
| <small>れいじ</small> 0時 | zero o’clock (midnight/noon) | |
| <small>いちじ</small> 1時 | one o’clock | |
| <small>にじ</small> 2時 | two o’clock | |
| <small>さんじ</small> 3時 | three o’clock | |
| • <small>よじ</small> 4時 | four o’clock | |
| <small>ごじ</small> 5時 | five o’clock | |
| <small>ろくじ</small> 6時 | six o’clock | |
| • <small>しちじ</small> 7時 | seven o’clock | <small>ななじ</small> 7時 is sometimes used for disambiguation |
| <small>はちじ</small> 8時 | eight o’clock | |
| • <small>くじ</small> 9時 | nine o’clock | |
| <small>じゅうじ</small> 10時 | ten o’clock | |
| <small>じゅういちじ</small> 11時 | eleven o’clock | |
| <small>じゅうにじ</small> 12時 | twelve o’clock | |
| <small>じゅうさんじ</small> 13時 | thirteen o’clock | |
| • <small>じゅうよじ</small> 14時 | fourteen o’clock | |
| <small>じゅうごじ</small> 15時 | fifteen o’clock | |
| <small>じゅうろくじ</small> 16時 | sixteen o’clock | |

SB.27 Counting minutes: 分

Table 49: Basic nouns: counting minutes.

Page 130 of 204

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------------|----------------------|-------|
| にふん 2分 | two minutes | |
| さんぶん 3分 | three minutes | |
| よんぶん 4分 | four minutes | |
| ごぶん 5分 | five minutes | |
| ろくぶん 6分 | six minutes | |
| ななぶん 7分 | seven minutes | |
| はっぶん 8分 | eight minutes | |
| きゅうぶん 9分 | nine minutes | |
| じゅうぶん 10分 | ten minutes | |
| じゅうごふん 15分 | fifteen minutes | |
| さんじゅうぶん 30分 | thirty minutes | |
| よんじゅうごふん 45分 | fourty-five minutes | |
| ひゃくぶん 100分 | hundred minutes | |
| せんぶん 1000分 | thousand minutes | |
| いちまんぶん 1万分 | ten thousand minutes | |

SB.28 Counting seconds: 秒

Table 50: Basic nouns: counting seconds.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|----------------|----------------------|-------|
| なんびょう 何秒 | how many seconds? | |
| いちびょう 1秒 | one second | |
| にびょう 2秒 | two seconds | |
| さんびょう 3秒 | three seconds | |
| よんびょう 4秒 | four seconds | |
| ごびょう 5秒 | five seconds | |
| ろくびょう 6秒 | six seconds | |
| ななびょう 7秒 | seven seconds | |
| はちびょう 8秒 | eight seconds | |
| きゅうびょう 9秒 | nine seconds | |
| じゅうびょう 10秒 | ten seconds | |
| ひゃくびょう 100秒 | hundred seconds | |
| せんびょう 1000秒 | thousand seconds | |
| いちまんびょう 1万秒 | ten thousand seconds | |

SB.29 Counting positions: 番

Table 51: Basic nouns: counting positions.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|------------|------------------|-------|
| なんばん 何番 | which position? | |
| いちばん 1番 | first position | |
| にばん 2番 | second position | |
| さんばん 3番 | third position | |
| よんばん 4番 | fourth position | |
| ごばん 5番 | fifth position | |
| ろくばん 6番 | sixth position | |
| ななばん 7番 | seventh position | |

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|---------------|-------------------------|-------|
| はちばん 8番 | eighth position | |
| きゅうばん 9番 | ninth position | |
| じゅうばん 10番 | tenth position | |
| ひゃくばん 100番 | hundredth position | |
| せんばん 1000番 | thousandth position | |
| いちまんばん 1万番 | ten thousandth position | |

SB.30 Counting occurrences: 回^{かい}

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 52: Basic nouns: counting occurrences.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|----------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------|
| なんかい 何回 | how many times? | |
| • いっかい 1回 | one time | |
| に かい 2回 | two times | |
| さんかい 3回 | three times | |
| よんかい 4回 | four times | |
| ご かい 5回 | five times | |
| • ろっかい 6回 | six times | |
| ななかい 7回 | seven times | |
| • はちかい ばっかい 8回/8回 | eight times | ばっかい 8回 is probably informal |
| きゅうかい 9回 | nine times | |
| • じゅうかい 10回 | ten times | |
| • ひゃっかい 100回 | hundred times | |
| せんかい 1000回 | thousand times | |
| いちまんかい 1万回 | ten thousand times | |

SB.31 Counting methods/ways/kinds: 通り^と

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 53: Basic nouns: counting methods/ways/kinds.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| なんど 何通り | how many methods/ways/kinds? | |
| • いっど 1通り | one method/way/kind | |
| に ど 2通り | two methods/ways/kinds | |
| さんど 3通り | three methods/ways/kinds | |
| よんど 4通り | four methods/ways/kinds | |
| ご ど 5通り | five methods/ways/kinds | |
| ろくど 6通り | six methods/ways/kinds | |
| なんど 7通り | seven methods/ways/kinds | |
| • はちど ばっど 8通り/8通り | eight methods/ways/kinds | ばっど 8通り is probably informal |
| きゅうど 9通り | nine methods/ways/kinds | |
| • じゅうど 10通り | ten methods/ways/kinds | |
| ひゃくど 100通り | hundred methods/ways/kinds | |
| せんど 1000通り | thousand methods/ways/kinds | |
| いちまんど 1万通り | ten thousand methods/ways/kinds | |

SB.32 Counting shots/hits/punches: 発^{はつ}

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 54: Basic nouns: counting shots/hits/punches.

| Name | Meaning | Notes |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------|
| • 何 ^{なん} 発 | how many shots/hits/punches? | |
| • 1 ^{いっ} 発 | one shot/hit/punch | |
| • 2 ^に 発 | two shots/hits/punches | |
| • 3 ^{さん} 発 | three shots/hits/punches | |
| • 4 ^{よん} 発 | four shots/hits/punches | |
| • 5 ^ご 発 | five shots/hits/punches | |
| • 6 ^{ろっ} 発 | six shots/hits/punches | |
| • 7 ^{なな} 発 | seven shots/hits/punches | |
| • 8 ^{はっ} 発 | eight shots/hits/punches | |
| • 9 ^{きゅう} 発 | nine shots/hits/punches | |
| • 10 ^{じゅう} 発 | ten shots/hits/punches | じっぱつ also possible? |
| • 100 ^{ひゃっ} 発 | one hundred shots/hits/punches | |
| • 1000 ^{せん} 発 | one thousand shots/hits/punches | |
| • 1万 ^{いちまん} 発 | ten thousand shots/hits/punches | |

VA Interjections and expressions

VA.1 Greetings

Table 55: Interjections and expressions: greetings. **TO ORGANISE.**

| Expression | Meaning | Notes |
|-------------|---|-----------------------------|
| おはよ | good morning | colloquial |
| おはよう[ございます] | good morning | (お早う[御座います]); [polite] |
| こんにちは | hello/good afternoon/good day | (今日は) |
| こんばんは | good evening | (今晚は) |
| お休み[なさい] | good night | |
| お疲れ | thanks for coming/glad you could make it; thanks for helping | |
| はじめまして | nice to meet you/glad to make your acquaintance/how do you do | (始めまして) |
| お変わりありませんか | (after some time apart) how have you been?/nothing untoward has happened, has it? | polite |
| よろしく願います/ | I look forward to working with you/please remember me/please treat me favourably/please | (宜しく願います/致します); polite; |
| よろしく願いたします | help me | also in Table 56 |
| ただいま | I'm home/I'm back | (只今) |
| お帰り[なさい] | welcome home | |
| ちょっと | excuse me/hey | also an adverb |
| もしもし | hello (on phone)/excuse me (calling out to someone) | (申し申し) |
| お久しぶり | long time no see | polite |
| こら | hey! (calling out to someone); hey! (to scold) | |
| こいつ | hey, you!/you bastard!/damn you! | derogatory |
| お邪魔します | please excuse my intrusion/I'm coming in ("I'm intruding") | |
| 失礼します | excuse me/I'm sorry/I'm coming in (I'm being rude) | polite |
| ちょっとそこまで | just out for a bit; euphemism for toilet break | |
| これまで | that's enough for today | also a noun |
| お疲れ様 | thank you for your hard work/good work/see you/goodbye/goodnight | |
| また明日 | see you tomorrow | |
| またね | bye/see you later | |
| 行ってくる | I'm off/see you later | |
| 行ってきます | I'm off/see you later | |
| 行ってらっしゃい | have a good day/take care/see you (often in response to 行ってきます) | (行ってらっしゃい) |
| お邪魔しました | please excuse my intrusion/I'm leaving ("I intruded") | |
| 失礼しました | excuse me/I'm sorry/I'm leaving ("I was rude") | polite |
| お先に失礼します | pardon me for leaving first (before everyone else still present) | |
| ようこそ | welcome | |
| いらっしゃい | welcome | honorific; also in Table 56 |
| いらっしゃいませ | welcome (in shops and restaurants) | |
| お待ちせしました | thank you for waiting/sorry to have kept you waiting | polite |
| いただきます | thank you for the meal (just served); I receive (this meal) | (いただきます) |
| ごちそうさま[でした] | thank you for the meal (consumed) | (ご馳走様[でした]); [polite] |

VA.2 Exclamations

Read the main article for apologies on **CM**.

Table 56: Interjections and expressions: exclamations. **TO ORGANISE.**

| Expression | Meaning | Notes |
|------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| はい | yes/that is correct/I'm here/pardon? | |
| うん | yes/yeah/mhmm | |
| ふむふむ | hmm/uh-huh; murmur indicating approval/comprehension | slang |
| イエス | yes | |
| そう/そうだ/[そうです/そうでございます] | that's right/indeed (reference to something that was said/done) | e.g. 「そうだよ」、「そうです」, [polite] |
| そうそう[...] | that's right/indeed/that's it (reference to something that was said/done) | casual |
| そうそう | oh, yes!/that's it/indeed/I remember | |
| そういえば | now that you mention it/that reminds me/speaking of which | |
| ふむ/ふうむ | hmm/I see | |
| 大丈夫 | no thanks/I'm good | (そう言えば) |
| いいえ/いえ | no | (否) |
| ううん/うーん | um/well/no | |
| ノー | no/not needed/not allowed | |
| ちゃう | no/that's wrong/it's not like that; isn't it?/wasn't it? | |
| もういい | skip it/drop it; I've had enough/that's enough | |
| ご遠慮いたします | no thanks/I will refrain | (ご遠慮致します); 遠慮の例文から |
| お願い[します] | please | [humble] |
| 頼む | please/please do | slang, also a verb |
| {よろしく願います | please do/please take care of | (宜しく願います/致します); polite; |
| よろしく願いたします} | | also in Table 55 |

| Expression | Meaning | Notes |
|---------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| (お/<nn>)/<v-te>ください | please do for me | honorific |
| ください | please give me (imperative of くださる) | honorific (下さい); |
| いらっしゃい | please come/go/stay (polite imperative) | also in Table 55 |
| もしよかったら | if you don't mind/if you like/if you're interested | (もし良かったら) |
| かしこまりました | certainly! (in response to superior/customer) | (畏まりました); polite |
| ちゃった | finished doing/did completely | slang of しまった/しまいました |
| ご遠慮ください | please refrain from | |
| 気持ちいい | feels good | also an adjective |
| 乾杯 | cheers/bottoms-up | also a verb |
| うめえ | delicious/skilled/good | colloquial |
| その/あの[-] | um/er/well/say | |
| どれ | well/now | also a pronoun |
| 何だ | what/what the heck/damn | |
| 何だと | what did you just say (to me)?/what's that? | |
| なんてこと | my goodness!/good lord!/holy cow! | |
| なんてこった | what the hell/oh great!/son of a X/holy mackerel/oh no!/holy cow!/damn! | |
| なんでよ | why? why not? what's wrong? | |
| どうしたの | what's the matter?/what's wrong? | |
| <nn>{を/は}どうしたの | what happened to <nn>?/what have you done with <nn>? | |
| どうしよう | what to do | |
| どうするか | what would you do?/what to do about it? | |
| かもしれない | perhaps/possibly (sentence ender) | (かも知れない) |
| みたいだ | it seems that; as if | polite |
| みたいです | it seems that; as if | polite |
| みたいな | something like that/sort of like that/similar to that/in that vein | slang, abbreviation of みたいな感じ |
| ここのだけの話 | confidential talk/conversation between you and me | |
| 助けて | help! | |
| 危ない | watch out!/look out!/be careful! | |
| 気をつけて | take care/be careful | ((気を付けて)) |
| がんばれ | hang in there/go for it/keep at it/do your best | (頑張れ) |
| 悪い | my bad/sorry | casual; also an adjective |
| 悪かった | my bad/sorry (for past mistake) | casual; also an adjective |
| ごめん[ね] | I'm sorry/excuse me/pardon me | (御免[ね]); casual |
| ごめんなさい | I'm sorry/excuse me/pardon me | (御免なさい); semi-formal |
| 許してください | please forgive me | (許して下さい); honorific, semi-formal |
| お許ください | please forgive me | (お許下さい); honorific, formal |
| {反省/後悔}しています | I'm sorry ("I am regretful") | (({反省、後悔}して居ます); semi-formal |
| {反省/後悔}しております | I'm sorry ("I am regretful") | (({反省、後悔}して居ります); humble, formal |
| 謝罪いたします | I'm sorry (esp. in written apology) ("I perform apology") | (謝罪致します); humble, formal |
| お詫びいたします | I'm sorry ("I perform apology") | (お詫び致します); humble, formal |
| お詫び申し上げます | I'm sorry ("I offer my apology") | humble, formal |
| 申し訳ない | I'm sorry/it's inexcusable ("excuse does not exist") | semi-polite |
| 申し訳ございません/ありません | I'm sorry/it's inexcusable ("excuse does not exist") | polite |
| すまん/すいません/すみません | excuse me/pardon me/I'm sorry (general/for the inconvenience) | (済みません); [polite] |
| 済まない | excuse me/I'm sorry | also an adjective |
| 失礼しました | I'm sorry/excuse me/my apologies (general/for the inconvenience) | polite |
| ご迷惑をおかけして申し訳ございません | We apologise for any inconvenience this may cause (common email/announcement-end greeting) ("I have no excuse for causing you this trouble.") | polite, formal |
| どうも | thanks (abbreviation) | |
| どうもありがとう | thank you very much | (どうも有[り]難う) |
| ありがとうございます | thanks/thank you | (有[り]難う(御座います)); [polite] |
| ありがとうございました | thank you (for past action) | (有[り]難うございました); polite |
| 済まない | thank you | also an adjective |
| どういたしまして | you're welcome/don't mention it/not at all/my pleasure | (どう致しまして) |
| とんでもない | it was no bother at all/not at all/don't mention it | |
| こちらこそ | it is I who should say so | also in Table 72 |
| 気にするな | don't worry about it/nevermind | |
| 気にしないで | don't worry about it/forget about it | |
| お安い御用 | no problem/easy task | |
| 問題ない | no problem/not an issue/all right | also an adjective |
| 構わない | no problem/it doesn't matter | |
| 構いません | no problem/it doesn't matter | |
| おめでとう[ございます] | congratulations!/well done! | (おめでとう(御座います)); [polite] |
| わかる? | Do you know?/do you think so too? | (分かる?); also a verb |
| わかる | I know/I think so too | (分かる); also a verb |
| だろ[う] | seems/I think/I guess/I wonder/I hope; right?/don't you agree?/I thought you'd say that! | conjunctural form of copula だ |
| わかんない | not understanding/not knowing | (分かんない); slang |
| どうかな | how about?/I wonder/I don't know | |
| なるほど | I see/that's right/indeed | (成る程) |
| そうか | is that so? (rhetorical); I see/right/oh/OK | |

| Expression | Meaning | Notes |
|------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| そっか | oh, right/I see/OK/gotcha | |
| そういうことか 了解 | I got it/I see/I now know/so that's the reason | (そういう事か) |
| よし | OK/roger | also a noun, verb |
| そういうことなら | alright/looking good/OK | |
| 腫 | in that case/that being the case | |
| 腫 | no way! really!? unbelievable! | colloquial |
| それはそれは | my goodness (surprise/wonder) | |
| まさか | by no means/never!/no way! | (まさか); also a noun |
| まさかの時 | in case of emergency/for a rainy day/in time of need | |
| とんでもない | absolutely not!/far from it!/impossible!/what a thing to say!/no way! | |
| だから | like I said/I told you already | also a conjunction |
| お[お/ー]い[お/ー]い | oi! hey! come on! | |
| な | hey/listen/look/say | |
| ほら | look! see! hey! | |
| もう | jeez/come on | |
| まったく[もう] | good grief | (全く[もう]) |
| ったく | good grief | slang |
| 何か | what (are you trying to say/do you mean)? | |
| え | eh? what? oh? | |
| あれ[っ/え/ー] | huh? eh? what? look! listen! | |
| あら | oh!/ah!/oh no | feminine |
| びっくりした | oh my god!/oh my gosh!/you got me!/wow! (surprised/frightened) | |
| しまった | darn it!/oops!/oh dear!/oh no! | |
| やれ | oh!/ah!/oh dear!/dear me!/thank God! | |
| やれやれ | oh!/ah!/oh dear!/good grief!/dear me!/thank God! | |
| やだ/ヤダ | no way/not a chance | feminine/childish |
| そんな | no way!/never! | |
| ふざけんな | stop messing around!/get real!/screw you! | slang |
| ふざけんじゃねー | stop messing around!/get real!/screw you! | slang |
| ざけんなよ | fuck you!/don't fuck with me!/don't fuck around! | expletive |
| ファッキュー | fuck you | slang, expletive |
| そこまで | stop!/not one step further! | |
| いい加減にしろ | that's enough!/cut it out!/get a life! | |
| いい加減にしないさい | shape up!/act properly! | |
| しっかりしろ | pull yourself together/get a grip/get a hold of yourself/come on | |
| さあ/さー | come on/come now/come along (to urge/encourage others); here goes (indicates resolve); well (indicates uncertainty/hesitation); about that/actually (interrupting someone) | |
| さあて | well/now/then | CONJUNCTION |
| クソ | damn/damn it/shit/crap | (糞) |
| この野郎 | you bastard/son of a bitch! | derogatory |
| ちくしょう | damn it/son of a bitch/god damn it | (畜生) |
| うぜえ | annoying/noisy | colloquial |
| うるさい/うるせ{え/ー}/うっせ{え/ー} | shut up!/be quiet! | (煩い) |
| 静かに | be quiet! | also an adverb |
| お腹が空く | to become hungry/get an empty stomach | |
| 喉が渇く | to be thirsty | |
| 以上 | that's all | |
| これ以上 | any more/anymore/any further/any better/any longer (usu. with negative sentence) | |
| つまらない物ですが | it's not much, but... (when giving a gift) | humble; (つまらない物ですが) [KK] |
| ピコーン/ビューン/ピーン | ding/ping | ONOMATOPOEIC manga slang |
| パチコーン | thwap/snack (used when winking) | [PX] |
| 尻をひって尻撃め | there is no use shutting the stable door after the horse has bolted ("squeezing your buttocks after you have farted") | PROVERB |
| 金言耳に逆らう/愚言耳に逆らう | good advice is harsh to the ear | |

VA.3 Sentence builders

Table 57: Interactions and expressions: sentence builders.

| Expression | Meaning | Notes |
|--------------|--|---------|
| という | called/named | (と言う) |
| ということとは | that is to say/so that means | (と言う事は) |
| <basis>からすると | judging from/on the basis of/from the point of view of | |
| <basis>からしたら | judging from/on the basis of/from the point of view of | |
| <basis>からすれば | judging from/on the basis of/from the point of view of | |
| <about>ついて | about/concerning/regarding/as for <about> | (就いて) |
| <about>について | concerning/regarding <about> | (に就いて) |
| 詳しくは | for more details/further information... | |
| するべき | should do/ought to do | |
| すべき | should do/ought to do | |

VB 普通名詞 (nouns)

VB.1 Meta: Japanese

Table 58: Nouns: meta: Japanese.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|---------|---|-------------------------------|
| 文字 | letter/character of an alphabet | |
| 絵文字 | emoji; pictorial symbol; ASCII art | |
| 普通名詞 | common noun | |
| 同義語 | synonym | |
| 同意語 | synonym | |
| 類語 | quasi-synonym (similar meaning but not interchangeable) | |
| 対義語 | antonym | |
| 反義語 | antonym | |
| 反意語 | antonym | |
| 反対語 | antonym | |
| 主語 | subject | |
| 熟語 | compound kanji/idiom | |
| 四字熟語 | four-character compound word (esp. idiomatic) | |
| 形容詞 | adjective/い-adjective | |
| 形容動詞 | adjectival noun/nominal adjective/quasi-adjective/な-adjective | |
| 連体詞 | pre-noun adjectival/adnominal adjective | |
| 動詞 | verb | |
| 五段動詞 | う-verb | |
| 一段動詞 | る-verb | |
| 他動詞 | transitive verb | |
| 自動詞 | intransitive verb | |
| 動作主 | agent/performer of an action | |
| 能動態 | active voice | |
| 受動態 | passive voice | |
| 受身形 | passive form | |
| 直接受身 | direct passive | |
| 間接受身 | indirect passive | |
| 過去形 | past tense | |
| 副詞 | adverb | |
| 変化 | inflection/conjugation | also a verb, also in Table 79 |
| 助詞 | particle | |
| 接続詞 | conjunction | |
| 感動詞 | interjection | |
| 丁寧語 | polite language (e.g. ます、です) | |
| 尊敬語 | honorific language | |
| 謙讓語 | humble language (e.g. itadaki) | |
| 読み | reading (of a 漢字, esp. 訓読み) | |
| 言い方 | phrasing/language/wording/way of saying something | |
| ワードチョイス | word choice | |
| 文章語 | literary language/words used mainly in writing | |
| 文 | sentence; statement (computing) | also in Table 79 |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|--------------------------|--|-------------------|
| 文章 ぶんしやう | sentence | also in Table 79 |
| 例文 れいぶん | example sentence | |
| 和語 わご | Japanese language | |
| 漢語 かんご | Japanese word of Chinese origin/Sino-Japanese word | |
| 外来語 がいらいご | loanword in Japanese (esp. those of Western origin) | |
| 語源 ごげん | etymology/origin/derivation of a word | |
| ◎ / 二重丸 にじゅうまる にじゅうまる | “very good”/double circle | |
| ○ / 丸 まる まる | “correct”/“good”/circle | |
| △ / 三角 さんかくさんかく | not entirely wrong but not entirely right/so-so/average/ triangle | |
| × / バツ / 罰点 ぼつ ぼつてん | cross mark/“incorrect” | |
| 原文のまま げんぶん | sic | (原文の儘) げんぶん まま |

VB.2 Grammatical

Table 59: Nouns: grammatical.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------|
| 物 もの | thing/object | |
| こと | thing/matter | (こと) (事) |
| <to nominalise> こと | nominalising suffix | SUFFIX |
| <noun> こと <alias> | <noun>, also known as <alias>, ... | SUFFIX |
| <advice> ことだ | you should/it's important to <advice> | SUFFIX |

VB.3 Physical

Table 60: Nouns: physical.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|------------|--|-------------|
| ため息 いいき | sigh | |
| ビンタ | slap (in the face) | also a verb |
| 爆発 ばくはつ | explosion/detonation/blast/blowing up/eruption (also of emotion) | also a verb |
| 移動 いどう | movement/transfer/migration/travel | also a verb |
| 行動 こうどう | taking action/act/conduct/behaviour | also a verb |
| ハグ | hug | |
| 運動 うんどう | exercise/physical training/workout/sports; motion/movement | also a verb |
| 活動 かつどう | activity/action (of person/animal/organisation/volcano) | |
| 静止 せいし | stillness/repose/standing still/dormant (e.g. volcano) | also a verb |
| 動き うご | movement/motion; trend/development/change/fluctuation | |

VB.4 Directions

Read the main articles on [JWA](#) and [KH](#).

For the four cardinal directions, the 訓読み readings are 東・西・南・北. The corresponding 音読み readings are 東・西・南・北.

日本では「東西南北」の順です。Japan uses EWSN (hence the 東西南北).

西洋では「北南東西」の順です。The Western world uses NSEW order.

中国では「東南西北」の順です。 China uses ESWN.

When forming the four intercardinal directions and eight secondary intercardinal directions, there is ambiguity in the ordering of constituent cardinals. All permutations are possible, but there are some rules for when to use which:

- When describing something native to Japan, use Japanese ordering.
- When forming international and Western concepts, such as compass directions, use Western ordering (this is standardised by the World Meteorological Organisation). Note that secondary intercardinal directions take the form <cardinal>-<secondary cardinal>.

The readings of the intercardinal and secondary intercardinals are simply the concatenation of the unmodified constituent 音読み readings. The only exception is when cardinals describing direction spans come together, in which case *rendaku* occurs, so we have 東西 and 南北.

Table 61: Nouns: directions.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|------|---|------------------|
| 上 | up | |
| 下 | down | |
| 左 | left | |
| 右 | right | |
| 左折 | left turn | also a verb |
| 右折 | right turn | also a verb |
| 先 | the way ahead/beyond | also in Table 71 |
| 後ろ | back/behind/rear (physical) | [HN] |
| 後 | behind (esp. abstract)/after/later | [HN] |
| 中 | inside; middle/centre | |
| ～中 | during/in the middle of/while (something happening) | SUFFIX |
| 東西南北 | east, west, south and north (Japanese order) | 四字熟語 [JWA] |
| 東 | east (cardinal direction) | [JWA] |
| 西 | west (cardinal direction) | [JWA] |
| 南 | south (cardinal direction) | [JWA] |
| 北 | north (cardinal direction) | [JWA] |
| 東南 | southeast (Japanese ordering) | |
| 西南 | southwest (Japanese ordering) | |
| 東北 | northeast (Japanese ordering) | |
| 西北 | northwest (Japanese ordering) | |
| 南東 | southeast (intercardinal direction) | [JWA] |
| 南西 | southwest (intercardinal direction) | [JWA] |
| 北東 | northeast (intercardinal direction) | [JWA] |
| 北西 | northwest (intercardinal direction) | [JWA] |
| 東南東 | ESE (secondary intercardinal direction) | |
| 南南東 | SSE (secondary intercardinal direction) | |
| 西南西 | WSW (secondary intercardinal direction) | |
| 南南西 | SSW (secondary intercardinal direction) | |
| 東北東 | ENE (secondary intercardinal direction) | |
| 北北東 | NNE (secondary intercardinal direction) | |
| 西北西 | WNW (secondary intercardinal direction) | |
| 北北西 | NNW (secondary intercardinal direction) | |
| 上り | upwards/upbound/ascent | |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| 下り 戻り 入り <containe>入り | downwards/downbound/descent return/backwards; return (computing) entrance/entry containing <containe> | SUFFIX |
| 距離 [お]そば 遠回り 入店 立ち退き | distance/range/interval; difference/gap (e.g. in opinion); metric (mathematical) near/close/beside/vicinity/proximity/besides/while detour/roundabout way entering a store/restaurant; becoming an employee at a store eviction | (側/傍); [honorific]; [goo] |
| 以上 以下 以外 | the aforementioned the following excluding/except for/apart from/other than/besides/in addition to | also an expression SUFFIX |
| 昇進 昇格 昇任 格上げ 昇級 昇進人事 昇格人事 | promotion in rank (of person) promotion in status (of person/institution) promotion/advancement (of person) upgrade/promotion in status upgrading/promotion/advancement in grade/class/rank promotion/appointment to a more senior position promotion/appointment to a more senior position | also a verb; [goo] also a verb; [goo] also a verb; [goo] also a verb also a verb; [goo] |
| 降格 降任 格下げ 降級 降格人事 | demotion/drop in status (of person/institution) demotion (of person) status downgrade/demotion downgrading/demotion/degradation in grade/class/rank demotion to a less senior position | also a verb also a verb also a verb also a verb |

VB.5 Navigation

Table 62: Nouns: navigation.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|---|---|--|
| 立ち入り 禁止 バン/BAN 立ち入り検査 立ち入り禁止 止まれ 路線 始発 始電 終発 最後列車 最終電車 終車 終電 急ぎ | the act of entering prohibition/ban ban (of an online account) on-the-spot/on-site inspection no entry/no trespassing/keep out/off-limits stop (road signage) route/line (bus/train/air) first departure/train/bus (of the day) first train last departure/train/bus (of the day) last train (of the day) last train (of the day) last train/bus (of the day) last train (of the day) haste/hurry/expedition/speed/dispatch | also a verb [Wiki] [Wiki] [Wiki] (abbreviation of 始発電車); [Wiki] [Wiki] |

VB.6 Places

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|----------------|--|-------------------|
| 場所 | place/location/spot | |
| ところ | place/spot/scene/site; | (ところ) |
| <nn>どころ | place/spot/scene/site; address; district/area/locality; space/room | (ところ); SUFFIX |
| <v present>ところ | about to/on the verge of <v> | (ところ) |
| <v past>ところ | just finished doing/was just doing/have just done <v> | (ところ) |
| ポジション | position (pose/vacancy) | |
| 現地 | local/actual place (e.g. local timezone) | |
| 町/町 | street/neighbourhood | [HN1], [HN2] |
| 通り | street/road/avenue | |
| 丁目 | district of a town/city block | |
| 町内会 | neighbourhood association | |
| ビル | (multi-floor) building | |
| レストラン | restaurant (esp. Western) | |
| 図書館 | library | |
| 銀行 | bank | |
| 公園 | public park | |
| 高速道路 | highway/expressway | |
| 高速 | highway/expressway (abbreviation) | also an adjective |
| 警察署 | police station | |
| 食堂 | canteen/cafeteria/dining room/restaurant/eatery | |
| [お]手洗い | toilet/restroom/lavatory/bathroom | also: トイレット、トイレ |
| コンビニ | convenience store | |
| 田舎 | rural area/countryside; hometown | |
| 都市 | city/urban/municipal/town | |
| 扉 | door/gate/opening | also: ドア |
| 東門 | east gate | |
| 南門 | south gate | |
| 北門 | north gate | |
| 橋 | bridge | |
| 家 | house (physical entity) | neutral, [SE] |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|-------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| [お]うち | one's home/house/family/household (of speaker, by default) | [SE], also a pronoun, [honorific] |
| へや 部屋 | room | |
| だいどころ 台所 | kitchen | also: キッチン |
| かいだん 階段 | stairs/stairway/staircase | |
| がっこう 学校 | school | |
| しょうがく 小学 | elementary/primary school | |
| ちゅうがく 中学 | junior high/middle/lower secondary school | |
| こうこう 高校 | senior high school | |
| だいがく 大学 | university/college | |
| がくえん 学園 | campus | |
| きょうしつ 教室 | classroom/lecture room; university department; class/course; school (for specific discipline) | |

VB.7 Vehicles

Table 64: Nouns: vehicles.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------------|---------------------|------------------|
| くるま 車 | car/vehicle | |
| きゅうきゅうしや 救急車 | ambulance | |
| れっしゃ 列車 | train/railway train | |
| でんしゃ 電車 | electric train | |
| はこ 箱 | train cabin | also in Table 68 |

VB.8 Furniture

Table 65: Nouns: furniture.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|-------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| いす 椅子 | chair/stool | |
| かべ 壁 | wall/partition | |
| かべがみ 壁紙 | wallpaper/background image | |
| だまくら 抱き枕 | body/waifu/husbando pillow | |
| まくら 枕 | pillow | SUFFIX |
| はしら 柱 | pillar/post; support/prop/mainstay | |
| なべ 鍋 | pan/saucepan; pot; stew/hot pot | |
| まど 窓 | window | also: ウィンドウ (computing) |

VB.9 Organisms

Table 66: Nouns: organisms.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|------------|-----------------------|-------|
| ねこ 猫 | cat | |
| こねこ 子猫 | kitten | |
| いぬ 犬 | dog; spy/loser | |
| こいぬ 子犬 | puppy | |
| さかな 魚 | fish | |
| にんげん 人間 | human being/humankind | |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|-------|--|--|
| ムカデ | centipede | (^{むかで} 百足); also a counter for shoes/socks |
| 雑魚 | small fish/small fry | also in Table 74 |
| フクロウ | owl | (^{ふくろう} 梟) |
| 鳥 | bird; bird meat/fowl/poultry (esp. chicken meat) | |
| たこ | octopus | (^{たこ} 蛸); also in Table 74 |
| うなぎ | eel (Japanese eel) | |
| 鳩 | pigeon/dove | |
| はとぼっぼ | pigeon/dove | (^{はと} 鳩ぼっぼ); children's language |
| アヒル | domestic duck | |

VB.10 Food

Table 67: Nouns: food.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|--------|---|----------------------|
| ご飯 | cooked rice/meal | |
| 朝ご飯 | breakfast | |
| 朝ごはん | bread/sandwich for breakfast | slang/pun (ha) |
| 朝食 | breakfast | |
| 昼ご飯 | lunch | |
| 昼食 | lunch/midday meal | |
| 晩ご飯 | dinner | |
| 夕食 | evening meal/dinner | |
| 晩食 | supper/dinner | |
| テイクアウト | take-out/takeaway food | also a verb |
| 持ち帰り | take-out/takeaway (food), esp. 「持ち帰りにしてください」 (please make it a takeaway) | also a verb |
| 食べ物 | food | |
| 料理 | cooking/cuisine/dish | also a verb |
| 肉 | meat | |
| 果物 | fruit | |
| 野菜 | vegetable | also: ベジタブル |
| 果菜 | fruits and vegetables | |
| 卵 | eggs/egg/roe | |
| マグロ | tuna | (^{まぐろ} 鰯) |
| エビ | prawn/shrimp/lobster | (^{えび} 海老) |
| りんご | apple | (^{りんご} 林檎) |
| いちご | strawberry | (^{いちご} 苺) |
| バナナ | banana | |
| ゆず | yuzu fruit | (^{ゆず} 柚子) |
| わさび | wasabi/Japanese horseradish | (^{わさび} 山葵) |
| 桃 | peach | |
| ラベンダー | lavender (flower) | |
| 飲み | the act of drinking | |
| 飲み物 | beverage | |
| 抹茶 | matcha, powdered green tea | |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|--------|---|-------------------|
| ジュース | soft drink (usually fruit-based)/sweet drink/juice | |
| 汁 | juice/sap; soup/broth; dipping suace | |
| コーヒー | coffee | (珈琲) |
| 丼 / 丼 | porcelain bowl/meat served over rice | |
| そば | buckwheat/buckwheat noodles | (蕎麦) |
| [お]弁当 | Japanese box lunch | |
| [お]だし | dashi (Japanese soup stock made from fish and kelp) | ([お]出汁); [polite] |
| 味噌 | miso, fermented soybeans condiment | |
| 味噌汁 | miso soup | |
| 飴 | (hard) candy | |
| 焼き肉/焼肉 | Japanese dish of roasted/grilled meat (similar to KBBQ) | |
| たこ焼き | octopus dumplings/takoyaki | |
| しゃぶしゃぶ | hot pot dish where thinly sliced meaet is boiled quickly then dipped in sauce | ONOMATOPOEIC |
| デザート | dessert | |
| のり | edible seaweed | (海苔) |
| 鍋物 | stew/food cooked in a pot | |
| シチュー | stew (esp. Japanese cream stew) | also: クリームシチュー |
| パン | bread/sweat pastry | |
| 食パン | (rectangular) loaf of bread | |
| 麻婆豆腐 | mabo tofu/mapo tofu (spicy Sichuan dish of tofu and minced meat) | |

VB.11 Small objects: stationery

Table 68: Nouns: small objects: stationery.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|-------|---|------------------|
| 書 | book/document | |
| 秘書 | secret/treasured book | also in Table 74 |
| 本 | book/volume/script | |
| 帳 | book/register | |
| 紙 | paper | |
| 手紙 | letter/mail | |
| 葉書 | postcard | |
| ボール紙 | cardboard | |
| 段ボール | (corrugated) cardboard | |
| 段ボール箱 | cardboard box | |
| 箱 | box/case/chest/crate; package | also in Table 64 |
| メモ | memo/note | also a verb |
| ノート | note/notebook/exercise book/laptop computer | also a verb |
| 辞書 | dictionary | |
| 計算機 | calculator | |
| そろばん | abacus | 算盤 |
| 鉛筆 | pencil | |
| カミソリ | razor | (剃刀) |

VB.12 General objects

Table 69: Nouns: small objects: general objects.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|-------|
| 双眼 鏡 <small>そうがんきょう</small> | binoculars/field glasses | |
| 暗視スコープ <small>あんし</small> | night-vision scope | |
| 望遠 鏡 <small>ぼうえんきょう</small> | telescope | |
| かばん <small>ふくろ</small> | bag/briefcase/basket | (鞆) |
| 袋 <small>にようだ</small> | bag/sack/pouch | |
| 荷札 <small>ただ</small> | label/tag | |
| 札 <small>ただ</small> | label/tag; sign/card/plate | |

VB.13 Date

Table 70: Nouns: date.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 日 <small>ひ</small> | (referring to) the date of an event | 「<event>の日にち」 |
| 毎日 <small>まいにち</small> | every day | also an adverb, [HN] |
| 日々 <small>ひ び</small> | day after day | also an adverb, [HN] |
| 週末 <small>しゅうまつ</small> | weekend | |
| 先日 <small>せんじつ</small> | the other day/a few days ago | also an adverb |
| 一昨日 <small>おととい</small> | day before yesterday (from now) | also an adverb |
| 昨日 <small>きのう</small> | yesterday (from now) | also an adverb |
| 今日 <small>きょう</small> | today (now) | also an adverb; [goo] |
| 本日 <small>ほんじつ</small> | today (now) | also an adverb; formal, [goo] |
| 明日 <small>あした</small> | tomorrow (from now) | also an adverb |
| 明後日 <small>あさって</small> | day after tomorrow (from now) | also an adverb |
| 前々日 <small>ぜんぜんじつ</small> | two days before (an event) | also an adverb |
| 前日 <small>ぜんじつ</small> | the day before (an event) | also an adverb |
| 当日 <small>とうじつ</small> | the day (of an event) | also an adverb |
| 翌日 <small>よくじつ</small> | the day after (an event) | also an adverb |
| 翌々日 <small>よくよくじつ</small> | two days later (an event) | also an adverb |
| 先々週 <small>せんせんしゅう</small> | two weeks ago (from now) | also an adverb, [HN] |
| 先週 <small>せんしゅう</small> | last week (from now) | also an adverb, [HN] |
| 今週 <small>こんしゅう</small> | this week (now) | also an adverb |
| 今週末 <small>こんしゅうまつ</small> | this weekend | |
| 来週 <small>らいしゅう</small> | next week (from now) | also an adverb, [GC] |
| 来々週 <small>らいらいしゅう</small> | two weeks later (from now) | |
| 次週 <small>じしゅう</small> | next week (recurring event, e.g. TV) | also an adverb, [GC] |
| 前週 <small>ぜんしゅう</small> | the week before (an event) | also an adverb, [HN] |
| 当週 <small>とうしゅう</small> | the week (of an event) | also an adverb |
| 翌週 <small>よくしゅう</small> | the week after (an event) | also an adverb, [GC] |
| 翌々週 <small>よくよくしゅう</small> | two weeks after (an event) | also an adverb, [GC] |
| 先々月 <small>せんぜんげつ</small> | two months ago (from now) | also an adverb |
| 先月 <small>せんげつ</small> | last month (from now) | also an adverb |
| 今月 <small>こんげつ</small> | this month (now) | also an adverb |
| 来月 <small>らいげつ</small> | next month (from now) | also an adverb |
| 前月 <small>ぜんげつ</small> | the month before (an event) | also an adverb |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|---------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| 当月 <small>どうげつ</small> | the month (of an event) | also an adverb |
| 翌月 <small>よくげつ</small> | the month after (an event) | also an adverb |
| 翌々月 <small>よくよくげつ</small> | two months after (an event) | also an adverb |
| 一昨年 <small>おとし</small> | two years ago (from now) | casual, also an adverb, [goo] |
| 去年 <small>きょねん</small> | last year (from now) | casual, also an adverb, [goo] |
| 一昨年 <small>いっさくねん</small> | two years ago (from now) | formal, also an adverb, [goo], [HN] |
| 昨年 <small>さくねん</small> | last year (from now) | formal, also an adverb, [goo] |
| 今年 <small>ことし</small> | this year (from now) | also an adverb |
| 来年 <small>らいねん</small> | next year (from now) | also an adverb |
| 明年 <small>みょうねん</small> | next year (from now) | formal, also an adverb |
| 再来年 <small>さいらいねん</small> | two years later (from now) | also an adverb |
| 前々年 <small>ぜんぜんねん</small> | two years before (an event) | |
| 前年 <small>ぜんねん</small> | the year before (an event) | also an adverb |
| 当年 <small>とうねん</small> | the year (of an event) | also an adverb |
| 翌年 <small>よくねん</small> | the year after (an event) | also an adverb |
| 翌々年 <small>よくよくねん</small> | two years after (an event) | also an adverb |
| シーズン | season (sports/four seasons/TV show/for doing something e.g. ski/examination) | |
| 春 <small>はる</small> | spring | |
| 夏 <small>なつ</small> | summer | |
| 秋 <small>あき</small> | autumn | |
| 冬 <small>ふゆ</small> | winter | |
| 誕生日 <small>たんじうび</small> | birthday | |

VB.14 Time

Table 71: Nouns: time.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|----------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| 時間 <small>じかん</small> | time (concept)/class period | also: タイム |
| タイム | time (to do something); time-out (sports) | |
| 刹那 <small>せつな</small> | moment/instant | |
| 瞬間 <small>しゅんかん</small> | moment/instant | |
| 一瞬間 <small>いっしゅんかん</small> | an instant/moment (duration) | |
| 一瞬 <small>いっしゆん</small> | an instant/moment/for an instant | also an adverb |
| 時 <small>じ</small> | hour/o'clock | also: アワー |
| 時 <small>とき</small> | time/hour of day/moment (points to specific instant) | e.g. 「16歳の時私は...」 |
| 刻 <small>とき</small> | (referring to) time of day | |
| 秋 <small>あき</small> | important time | also: 秋 |
| 時々 <small>ときどき</small> | sometimes/occasionally | |
| 今 <small>いま</small> | now/immediately | also an adverb |
| 今後 <small>こんご</small> | from now on (ongoing event) | also an adverb, [goo] |
| 朝 <small>あさ</small> | morning | also an adverb, [HN] |
| 今朝 <small>けさ</small> | this morning | |
| 午前 <small>ごぜん</small> | before noon/ante meridian (a.m.) | also an adverb, [HN] |
| 昼 <small>ひる</small> | noon | also an adverb |
| 午後 <small>ごご</small> | afternoon/after noon/post meridian (p.m.) | also an adverb |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|--------------|---|-----------------------------|
| きょうご 今日の午後 | this afternoon | |
| ゆふがた 夕方 | evening/dusk | also an adverb |
| ばん 晩 | evening/night | also an adverb, [HN], [goo] |
| こんばん 今晚 | this evening/tonight | |
| ぜんや 前夜 | last night/the previous night; the night before (festival, major event, etc.) | |
| よる 夜 | evening/night (slightly formal) | also an adverb, [HN], [goo] |
| こんや 今夜 | this evening/tonight (slightly formal) | |
| あさひ 朝日 | morning sun/rising sun (the event) | [HN] |
| ひで 日の出 | sunrise (the moment it rises) | [HN] |
| ゆふひ 夕日 | evening sun/setting sun (the event) | [HN] |
| ひのいり 日の入り | sunset (the moment it sets) | [HN] |
| むかし 昔 | olden days | |
| かこ 過去 | the past | also an adverb |
| あと/[その後] その後 | after that/afterwards/thereafter | [formal] |
| それから | and then/after that (from a point in time) | |
| あれから | since then/after that (a familiar past to both speaker and listener) | |
| これまで | up to now/so far | also an expression |
| すくじつ 数日 | few days | |
| すくじつかん 数日間 | several day period | |
| まき 先 | first/before/ahead of; previous/prior/former/recent/last | [HN] also in Table 61 |
| さっき | a moment ago/a short while ago/just now/some time ago | slang; [HN] |
| げんざい 現在 | the present | also an adverb |
| さいきん 最近 | recently/lately/these days/nowadays | also an adverb |
| とちゅう 途中 | on the way/en route; in the middle of/midway/halfway | |
| これから | from now on/in the future; from here | also an adverb |
| それから | and then (from a point in time) | |
| それまで | until then; to that extent; the end of it/all there is to it | (其れまで) |
| みらい 未来 | the future | [goo] |
| しょうらい 将来 | future prospects (people/organisations/countries) | also an adverb, [goo] |
| すぎ 過ぎ | past/after a point in time (e.g. waiting/now) | also in Table 99 |
| さいしょ 最初 | first/beginning | |
| さいしゅう 最終 | last/final | |
| さいご 最後 | end/conclusion/last/final/latest | |
| ながあいだ 長い間 | long time/interval | also an adverb |
| えいえん 永遠 | eternity | |

VB.15 Pronouns and question words

Gramatically, pronouns are used in place of nouns and noun phrases. There are question words associated with each counter, see the supplementary PDF.

Regarding the ことばこそあと言葉:

- {こ, ど, あ, ど} times {れ, いつ, なた, こ, ちら, っち} are pronouns
- {こ, ど, あ, ど} times {の, んな} are pre-noun adjectivals
- {こ, ど, あ, ど} times {う} are adverbs

to read all sub articles [here](#)

Table 72: Nouns: pronouns and question words.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|---------------------|---|--|
| 誰 ^{だれ} | who | |
| どなた | who; what is your name (どなた様 ^{さま} {ですか/でしょうか}。; [extra politeness and distance]) | honorific, feminine; [TFG] |
| どちら様 ^{さま} | who | [honorific] |
| どいつ | who | rude |
| 誰か ^{だれ} | somebody | |
| みんなさん | everybody | 皆 ^{みんな} |
| 誰も ^も | nobody | |
| 誰でも ^{だれ} | anybody | |
| 彼 ^{かれ} | he/him | also a noun |
| 彼女 ^{かのじょ} | she/her | also a noun |
| さん | Mr./Mrs./Ms. | SUFFIX, honorific, familiar |
| 殿 ^{どの} | Mr./Mrs./Ms. (in letters to inferiors) | SUFFIX, polite |
| ちゃん | familiar person | SUFFIX, familiar |
| 君 ^{くん} | Mr./male of equal or lower status | SUFFIX |
| 君 ^{くん} | Ms./female of equal or lower status | SUFFIX, formal, masculine |
| こっち/[こちら] | this person (closer to speaker) | equal or higher status; [formal] |
| そっち/[そちら] | that person (closer to listener) | [formal] |
| あっち/[あちら] | that person/foreign country (distant) | polite; [formal] |
| こいつ | this person | familiar, derogatory; also an interjection |
| こいつめ | this rascal (jokingly)!/this bastard (expletive)! | (こいつ奴 ^め); derogatory |
| そいつ | that person | familiar, derogatory |
| あいつ | that person | familiar, derogatory |
| あいつめ | that rascal (jokingly)!/this bastard (expletive)! | (あいつ奴 ^め); derogatory |
| やつ | fellow/guy/chap; he/she/him/her | (奴 ^{やつ}); familiar, derogatory |
| こいつら | these people | (こいつ等 ^ら); familiar, derogatory |
| そいつら | those people | (そいつ等 ^ら); familiar, derogatory |
| あいつら | those people | (あいつ等 ^ら); familiar, derogatory |
| 私 ^{わたくし} | I/me | formal, [HN], [SE] |
| 私 ^{あたし} | I/me | feminine, less common |
| うち | I/me | (内 ^{うち}); feminine, familiar, also a place |
| 私 ^{わたし} | I/me | slightly formal/distant |
| わし | I/me | (儂 ^{わし}); masculine, elderly |
| 僕 ^{ぼく} | I/me | masculine, distant |
| 自分 ^{じぶん} | myself/oneself/yourself/himself/herself/I/me | distant |
| 俺 ^{おれ} | I/me | masculine, familiar |
| 私 ^{わたし} たち | we/us | (私達 ^{わたくしたち}) |
| 儂 ^{わし} ら | we/us | |
| 俺 ^{おれ} ら | we/us | (俺等 ^{おれら}) |
| こちら | I/me/we/us | |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|---------------------------------------|---|--|
| こっちこそ/[こちらこそ] | I (emphasis, used in opposing reply); it is I who should say so | actually an expression; [formal] |
| こっちの方こそ/[こちらの方こそ] | I (emphasis, used in opposing reply); it is I who should say so | formal |
| そちら | you/your family/your company | polite |
| そちらの方 | you | (more) polite; [TFG] |
| そっちこそ/[そちらこそ] | you (emphasis, used in opposing reply); it is you who should say so | [formal] |
| そっちの方こそ/[そちらの方こそ] | you (emphasis, used in opposing reply); it is you who should say so | formal |
| 君 | you | familiar (equal or lower status) |
| あなた | you | (貴方); rude (if spoken)/distant; archaic: こなた、そなた |
| 君たち/君ら | you (plural) | (君達)/(君等); familiar (equal or lower status) |
| あなたたち | you (plural) | (貴方達); rude/distant |
| THOU SHALT NOT CROSS THIS LINE | | |
| あんた | you | (貴方); rude, expresses annoyance |
| お前/おめー | you | rude |
| てめえ | you | (手前); derogatory, inviting fight |
| 貴様 | you | extremely derogatory, sensitive, inviting fight |
| お前たち/お前ら | you (plural) | (お前達)/(お前等); rude |
| なに | what | |
| どうい | what kind/sort of, referring to what was said | (どういう); actually a pre-noun adjectival |
| どんあ | what kind/sort of | semi-casual; actually a pre-noun adjectival |
| 何か | something | also an interjection |
| 一部 | one part/portion/section | also an adverb |
| 全部 | all/everything | also an adverb; [goo] |
| すべて | everything/all/the whole | (全て); also an adverb |
| 何も | nothing | |
| なん | anything | |
| どれ | which (three or more) | also an interjection |
| どの | which/what (way) | actually a pre-noun adjectival |
| どれか | one of many/some single one from many | |
| どれも | all/none | |
| どれでも | any/whichever | |
| どっち/[どちら] | which (two) | [formal] |
| どっか/[どちらか] | one of the two | [formal] |
| どっちも/[どちらも] | both/neither | [formal] |
| どっちでも/どちらでも | any of the two | [formal] |
| これ/こっち/[こちら] | this one (here, closer to speaker) | [formal] |
| それ/そっち/[そちら] | that one (there, closer to listener) | [formal] |
| あれ/あっち/[あちら] | that one (there, distant) | [formal] |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|---|--|--------------------------------------|
| これら | these ones (here, closer to speaker) | formal and explanatory |
| それら | those ones (there, closer to listener) | formal and explanatory |
| あれら | those ones (there, distant) | formal and explanatory |
| これ | passionate reference/something (subjective) speaker feels close to | |
| それ | dispassionate reference/something (objective) speaker maintains a little distance from | |
| あれ | (mutual) memory reference/something in speaker's (and listener's) distant memory | |
| アレ | hesitant reference/leave it up to listener to interpret | used in gossip |
| いつ | when | (何時 \neq 何時) |
| いつか | sometime | (何時か) |
| いつも | always/never | (何時も) |
| いつでも | anytime | (何時でも) |
| ここ | now (passionate/subjective) | |
| ここ<duration> | <duration> includes present moment (<duration> either past or future) | [TFG] |
| そこ | then (dispassionate/objective) | |
| あそこ | then (distant memory) | |
| どこ | where | (何処) |
| どっち/[どちら] | where/which way/which direction | [formal of どこ] |
| どこら ^{へん} 辺/[どの ^{へん} 辺/どの ^{あた} り] | where (approximate) | casual, [semi-formal] |
| どこか/どっか | somewhere | (何処か) |
| どこ[に]も | everywhere/nowhere | (何処も) |
| どこでも | anywhere | (何処でも) |
| ここ/こっち/こちら | here (closer to speaker, no comparison nuance) | |
| そこ/そっら/そちら | there (close to listener, no comparison nuance) | |
| あそこ | there (distant, no comparison nuance) | |
| これ/{こっち/[こちら]} | this way/direction (here, closer to speaker) {comparison nuance} | [formal] |
| それ/{そっち/[そちら]} | that way/direction (there, closer to listener) {comparison nuance} | [formal] |
| あれ/{あっち/[あちら]} | that way/direction (there, distant) {comparison nuance} | [formal] |
| ここら ^{へん} 辺 | around here/this approximate area | casual |
| そこら ^{へん} 辺 | around there/that approximate area | casual |
| あそこら ^{へん} 辺 | around there/that approximate area (distant) | casual |
| この ^{へん} 辺/この ^{あた} り | this approximate area/around here | semi-formal |
| その ^{へん} 辺/その ^{あた} り | that approximate area/around there | semi-formal |
| なぜ | why | (何故); direct/formal/rude, [HN], [SE] |
| どうして | why/how/by what means | informal, [HN], [SE] |
| どうしてですか | why/how/by what means | semi-formal, [HN] |
| どうやって | how/what way/method, referring to an achievement of something | actually a pre-noun adjectival |
| なんで | why | (何で); informal, speech, [HN], [SE] |
| なぜか | for some reason | (何故か) |
| どう | how/in what way/how about | |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|---------|------------------|--------------------------------|
| どの | which/what (way) | actually a pre-noun adjectival |
| どうか/どうも | somehow | also an adverb |
| どういうわけか | somehow | (どういう訳か) |
| どうでも | anyhow | |

VB.16 Pre-noun adjectivals

These are adjectives that occur directly before nouns. There are > 100 of them. From §G2.10.4, these function as pre-noun noun modifiers. These function similarly to determiners in English.

Table 73: Nouns: pre-noun adjectivals.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|------------|--|--------------------------------|
| 我が | my/our | |
| どの | which/what (way) | |
| この | this/these (closer to speaker) | |
| この<number> | part/number <number> | e.g. 「その1」 |
| その | that/those/the (closer to listener) | |
| あの | that/those/the (distant/mutual memory) | |
| これらの | these (closer to speaker) | (これ等の); formal and explanatory |
| それらの | those (closer to listener) | (それ等の); formal and explanatory |
| あれらの | those (distant) | (あれ等の); formal and explanatory |
| どんな | what kind/sort of | semi-casual |
| こんな | this kind/sort of (closer to speaker/passionate reference) | semi-casual |
| そんな | that kind/sort of (closer to listener/dispassionate reference) | semi-casual |
| あんな | that kind/sort of (distant memory/sentimental) | semi-casual |
| どういう | what kind/sort of, referring to what was said | (どういう) |
| こういう | this kind/sort of (closer to speaker), referring to what was said | (こういう) |
| そういう | that kind/sort of (closer to listener), referring to what was said | (そういう) |
| ああいう | that kind/sort of (distant), referring to what was said | (ああいう) |
| どうやって | how/what way/method, referring to an achievement of something | |
| こうやって | this way/method (closer to speaker), referring to an achievement of something | |
| そうやって | that way/method (closer to listener), referring to an achievement of something | |
| ああやって | that way/method (distant), referring to an achievement of something | |
| いろんな | various | (色んな) |
| いわゆる | the so-called/so to speak | (いわゆる) |
| いかなる | any kind of/whatsoever/whatever | (如何なる); [HN] |
| あらゆる | every kind of | [HN] |
| 小さな | small/little/tiny | |
| 大きな | big/large/great | |
| 単なる | simple/nothing deeper (joke/coincidence) | [HN] |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|------|---|-------------|
| ほんの | very little/insignificant/only (e.g. distance/time/occurrence); mere (e.g. child) | (本の): [HN] |
| ただの | ordinary/average/nothing special | (只の): [HN] |
| 大した | considerable/great/important/significant/a big deal | |
| 実の | true/real | |
| 主なる | main/principal/important | |
| 去る | last/previous (～〇月) | also a verb |
| 来る | coming/upcoming (～〇月) | [HN] |
| 明くる | next/following (～日/～朝/～年 etc.) | [HN] |

VB.17 Roles and occupations

Table 74: Nouns: roles and occupations.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|------|---|---|
| 女 | female/woman | |
| 女子 | woman/girl | |
| 男 | male/man | |
| 男子 | man/boy | |
| 子ども | child | 子供 may be offensive; [r] also in Table 75 |
| 少年 | boy; juvenile/child (legal contexts) | |
| 未成年 | minor; not of age | |
| 成人 | adult/grown-up (age); coming of age/becoming an adult | also a verb; [goo] |
| 新成人 | new adult (a person in Japan who reaches adulthood at year) | |
| 大人 | adult/grown-up (age and maturity) | [goo] |
| 初学者 | beginner | |
| 新参 | newcomer | |
| 後輩 | junior/younger person | |
| 古参 | seniority/long service | |
| 先輩 | senior/superior/elder | |
| パイセン | senior/superior/elder | slang |
| 学生 | student | |
| 小学生 | elementary/primary school student | |
| 中学生 | junior high/middle school student | |
| 高校生 | high school student | |
| 女子高生 | female high-school student | |
| 男子高生 | male high-school student | |
| 大学生 | university student | |
| 博士 | expert/learned person/PhD Dr. | |
| 教授 | professor | |
| 学長 | university president/chancellor/provost | |
| 初代 | first generation/founder | |
| 社長 | company president/manager/director | |
| 課長 | section manager/chief | |
| 店長 | shop manager | |
| 署長 | chief of police | |
| 所長 | head of office/laboratory | |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------------------|---|---|
| ばんちょう 番長 | leader of a group of juvenile delinquents/“boss” | |
| ともだち 友達 | friend | |
| ゆうじん 友人 | friend | formal |
| なかま 仲間 | companion/fellow/friend/mate/comrade/partner/colleague/ coworker; group/company/circle | |
| あいて 相手 | companion/partner/company; other party/addressee; opponent (sports) | |
| かれ 彼 | boyfriend | also a pronoun |
| かのじょ 彼女 | girlfriend | also a pronoun |
| たまご <noun>の卵 | aspiring <noun>/expert in the making | |
| しょうぐん 將軍 | general (military, historical) | |
| ゆうめいじん 有名人 | famous person/celebrity/public figure | |
| いしゃ 医者 | doctor/physician | |
| けいさつ 警察 | police/police officer/police station | |
| けいさつかん 警察官 | police officer | |
| びんぼ 貧乏 | poor person | |
| かねもち [お]金持ち | rich person | |
| ぼうけんしや 冒険者 | adventurer | |
| せんし 戦士 | soldier/combatant/warrior | |
| えいへい 衛兵 | soldierguard/sentinel/garrison | |
| きやくさん お客さん | guest/visitor/customer/client/shopper/audience/tourist/ sightseer/passenger | honorific |
| きやくさま お客様 | guest/visitor/customer/client/shopper/audience/tourist/ sightseer/passenger | honorific |
| てんさい 天才 | genius/prodify/natural gift | |
| ぼんさい 凡才 | mediocrity/ordinary ability | |
| びしょうじょ 美少女 | beautiful girl | |
| ネイティブ | native speaker | also an adjective |
| おし 推し | being a fan/supporter of; one's favourite (member of idol group/anime/team) | slang |
| ひしょ 秘書 | (private) secretary | also in Table 68 |
| はいしんしゃ 配信者 | distributor (news/information/media); online streamer | |
| しんし 紳士 | gentleman | |
| ふじん 婦人 | adult/married woman | sensitive if misused on juvenile/unmarried |
| かた 方 | person/lady/gentleman | honorific; [HN] also in Table 79 |
| かいけいし 会計士 | accountant | |
| おんがくか 音楽家 | musician | |
| じょうほうていきょうしや 情報提供者 | informant/informer/contact; information provider (computing) | |
| ないこくじん 内国人 | national/citizen/native | |
| がいじん 外人 | foreigner (esp. European) | |
| がいこくじん 外国人 | foreigner/foreign citizen/foreign national/non-Japanese | |
| にゅうじ 乳児 | infant/baby (below one year old) | |
| ひこうし 飛行士 | pilot | |
| うちゅうひこうし 宇宙飛行士 | astronaut | |
| うちゅうじん 宇宙人 | alien | |
| ず ～好き | love/affection for; enthusiast of; -phile | |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| ～嫌 ^{きら} い | dislike/hatred/fear | SUFFIX |
| 話 ^{はなし} 好き | talkative person; talkativeness | |
| 酒 ^{さけ} 好き | person who likes to drink; love/fondness for alcohol | |
| 猫 ^{ねこ} 好き | cat lover/ailurophile; love for cats | |
| 猫 ^{ねこ} 嫌 ^{きら} い | cat hater; dislike of cats | |
| 犬 ^{いぬ} 好き | dog lover; love for dogs | |
| 犬 ^{いぬ} 嫌 ^{きら} い | dog hater; dislike of dogs | |
| 女 ^{おんな} 好き | woman admirer/lustful man; fondness for women; being attractive to women | |
| 女 ^{おんな} 嫌 ^{きら} い | misogynist; misogyny | |
| 男 ^{おとこ} 好き | amorous (expressing sexual desire) woman; being attractive to men | |
| 男 ^{おとこ} 嫌 ^{きら} い | misandrist; misandry | |
| 質問者 ^{しつもんしや} | questioner/interrogator | |
| 芸人 ^{げいにん} | comedian (esp. TV); entertainer/performer (esp. of traditional art) | |
| 美人 ^{びじん} | beautiful woman/a beauty | |
| 未成年者 ^{みせいねんしや} | minor/underage person | |
| 弱者 ^{じやくしや} | weak person; the weak/vulnerable/disadvantaged | |
| 強者 ^{きやうしや} | strong person; the strong/powerful | |
| 見本 ^{みほん} | role model/example | also in Table 79 |
| 変態 ^{へんたい} | abnormality; pervert | also in Table 79 |
| 犯人 ^{はんにん} | offender/criminal/culprit | |
| 犯罪者 ^{はんざいしや} | criminal/culprit | |
| ババ | old woman | ばば (婆); often offensive |
| 問題児 ^{もんだいじ} | problem child | |
| バカ | idiot/moron/fool | ばか (馬鹿); also an adjective |
| アホ | fool/idiot/simpleton | あほ (阿呆); also an adjective |
| ボケ | fool/idiot | ぼけ (惚け) |
| タコ | fool/idiot | たこ (蛸); also in Table 66 |
| 野郎 ^{やろう} | bastard/asshole/son of a bitch | slang, derogatory |
| ガキ | brat/kid/little devil | がき (餓鬼); slang |
| ばかやろう | goddamn idiot/moron/nitwit | ばかやろう (馬鹿野郎); slang, derogatory |
| クソ野郎 ^{くそやろう} | piece of shit/son of a bitch | くそやろう (糞野郎); derogatory |
| クソガキ | stupid brat/son of a bitch | くそがき (糞餓鬼); derogatory |
| 畜生 ^{ちくしょう} | brute/bastard | |
| 雑魚 ^{ざこ} | unimportant person/a nobody | also in Table 66 |
| ライアー | liar | |
| 太～ | fat/fatty | PREFIX |
| おやじ | middle-aged man/geezer | おやに (親父); familiar; also in Table 75 |
| 禿 ^は げ | bald person/baldy; idiot/moron | derogatory |
| 迷惑者 ^{めいわくもの} | troublemaker/bothersome person/nuisance | |

VB.18 Family

Table 75 lists the names in casual/formal manner. We only use casual when referencing our own family members to other people. In all other situations (talking about other people's family, or talking directly to our own family), we use the formal one.

Table 75: Nouns: family.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|--|--|---|
| 夫婦 つま/奥さん おっと/ご主人 | married couple/husband and wife wife husband | [honorific] [honorific] |
| [ご]両親 はは/お母さん ちち/お父さん | parents mother father | [honorific] humble/[honorific] humble/[honorific] |
| おやじ おやこ 親子 | one's father/pops parent and child | (親父); familiar; also in Table 74 |
| 子ども ふたご 双子 むすめ 娘さん むすこ 息子さん | children twins daughter son | also in Table 74 [honorific] [honorific] |
| きょうだい 兄弟 おとこきょうだい 男兄弟 あに/にい 兄/お兄さん あに/き 兄貴 ニキ おとうと 弟さん | siblings/brothers brothers/male siblings older brother; young man/buddy/fella/lad older brother; one's senior; man older than oneself bro (e.g. 海外ニキ) younger brother | [honorific] honorific SUFFIX slang [honorific] |
| しまい 姉妹 おんなきょうだい 女兄弟 あね/ねえ 姉/お姉さん いもうと 妹さん | sisters sisters/female siblings older sister; young lady/miss/ma'am/older girl younger sister | [honorific] [honorific] |

VB.19 Body parts

Table 76: Nouns: body parts.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|---|---|--------------------------------------|
| にくたい 肉体 | the body/the flesh/one's physique | also: ボディー |
| かみ 髪 は 禿げ きんぱつ 金髪 しらが/はくはつ 白髪/白髪 | hair (on the head) baldness; bald head blonde/golden hair white/grey hair | also: ヘア also in Table 74 |
| かお 顔 みみ 耳 | face; expression/look ear; hearing; ear for music | |
| くち 口 のど 喉 えがお 笑顔 わら 笑い わら 嗤い ちようしょう 嘲笑 | mouth; opening/hole/gap; gate/door/entrance/exit throat; singing voice smile/smiling face laugh/laughter sneer scornful laughter/ridicule/derision/sneer | also a verb |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|------|---|----------------------------------|
| あくび | yawn/yawning | (あくび) |
| キス | kiss | also a verb |
| チュッ | light smooch/smacking sound | ONOMATOPOEIC also a verb, adverb |
| チュー | kiss | ONOMATOPOEIC also a verb, adverb |
| ブチュッ | loud kiss/smooch; squirting/gushing | ONOMATOPOEIC also an adverb |
| 呼吸 | breathing/respiration | also a verb |
| 胸 | chest/breast; mind/feelings | |
| おっぱい | boobs/breasts | slang/children's language |
| 心臓 | heart | also: ハート |
| 血 | blood | |
| 鉄拳 | tightly clenched fist | |
| 腹 | abdomen/belly/stomach; womb; one's mind/real intentions/ true motive | |
| お腹 | belly/abdomen/stomach | polite |
| お腹の子 | child one is expecting | |
| 上半身 | upper half of the body | |
| 下半身 | lower half of the body, nether parts | |
| けつ | ass/buttocks | (けつ); slang |
| [お]尻 | bottom/buttocks | [polite] |
| 尻尾 | tail of an animal | |
| おなら | fart/gas/wind | |
| 身長 | body height | |
| 体長 | body length (of animal) | |
| 体重 | body weight | |
| 声変わり | breaking of voice | |
| 羽 | feather/down | |
| 翼 | wing | |

VB.20 Clothing

Table 77: Nouns: clothing.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|-------|---|-------|
| 服 | clothes (esp. Western)/clothing/dress/costume/suit/outfit | |
| 制服 | uniform | |
| シャツ | singlet/inner shirt/buttoned shirt | |
| T シャツ | T-shirt (outer shirt) | |
| カッパ | raincoat | (かっぱ) |
| 洋服 | Western-style clothes | |
| 和服 | Japanese clothes | |
| 着物 | kimono/Japanese traditional full-length clothing | |
| 浴衣 | yukata/light cotton kimono worn in summer or as bathrobe | |
| ショーツ | shorts | |
| ズボン | pants/trousers | |
| パンツ | underpants/panties/swimming trunks/women's trousers | |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|------|-----------------------------|-------|
| 靴 | shoe/shoes/boots/footwear | |
| 全裸 | stark/completely naked/nude | |

VB.21 Emotions

Table 78: Nouns: emotions.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|-------|---|---------------------------|
| 気持ち | feeling/sensation/mood/state of mind | [goo] |
| いい気持ち | good feeling | |
| 嫌な気持ち | unpleasant feeling | |
| 軽い気持ち | casual | technically an expression |
| 気色 | mood/humour | |
| 気分 | mood/feeling | [goo] |
| 感じ | feeling/sense/impression | |
| いい感じ | pleasant feeling/good vibes | |
| 空気 | situation/mood/room (esp. 空気を読む) | also in Table 101 |
| 感情 | emotion/feeling/feelings/sentiment | |
| 心の声 | one's inner voice/what one really thinks | |
| 震え | shiver/tremble/quiver (e.g. cold/fear/rage) | |
| 緊張 | nervousness/stress/tension/strain; tension (between countries/groups) | also a verb |
| 悩み | troubles/worry/sorrows/anguish/agony | |
| 心配 | worry/anxiety/uneasiness/fear | also a verb |
| 後悔 | regret/repentance/remorse | also a verb |
| 反省 | reflection/introspection; regret/repentance/remorse/being sorry | also a verb |
| 気合 | fighting spirit/motivation/effort | |
| 激励 | encouragement/spurring/cheering | also a verb |
| 自慢 | boast/bragging | also a verb |
| 努力 | effort/exertion/endeavour/hard work/striving | also a verb |
| 全力 | one's utmost, all of one's strength/energy/efforts | |
| 遠慮 | reserve/constraint/hesitation/tact/thoughtfulness; refraining/declining | also a verb |
| 配慮 | consideration/concern/attention/thoughtfulness/care/trouble | also a verb |
| 感動 | being emotionally deeply moved/excited/inspired (internal emotions) | also a verb; [goo] |
| 感激 | deep emotion/impression/inspiration (stronger; with observable behaviour) | also a verb; [goo] |
| 興奮 | excitement/stimulation/agitation/arousal | also a verb |
| 性的興奮 | sexual arousal/excitation | |
| 涙 | tears | |
| 笑/w | LOL/haha | slang |
| 草 | LOL/haha | slang; also in Table 101 |
| 楽しみ | enjoyment/pleasure/amusement/delight/joy/fun | |
| 興味 | interest (in something) | |
| ガチ恋 | {someone/being} in love with an idol/actor | |
| プチ切れ | blowing one's top/losing it/flipping out | slang |
| 一人ぼっち | aloneness/loneliness/solitude | |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|---------------------------|---|-------------------------|
| 幸せ <small>しあわせ</small> | happiness | also an adjective |
| 不幸 <small>ふこう</small> | unhappy/sorrowful/misfortunate/disastrous; bereavement/death (usu. of relative) | [HN] |
| 不幸せ <small>ふしあわせ</small> | unhappiness/misfortune/ill luck | also an adjective; [HN] |
| 安心感 <small>あんしんかん</small> | sense of security | |
| 不安 <small>ふあん</small> | anxiety/uneasiness/insecurity | also an adjective |

VB.22 Production

Table 79: Nouns: production.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|------------------------|---|------------------------------------|
| ほう 方 | direction/way/side/area (in particular direction); type/category; one side of comparison; square length | [HN] |
| かた 方 | method | SUFFIX [HN] also in Table 74 |
| 仕方 <small>し かた</small> | way/method/means towards a goal | [goo] |
| ほうほう 方法 | (a well-reasoned) way/method/process/procedure | [goo] |
| しゅだん 手段 | tool needed for going towards a goal | [goo] |
| つかいかた 使い方 | way of using something/how to use something | |
| しやうほう 使用法 | usage method/instructions/directions | |
| しやうほうほう 使用方法 | usage instructions/directions for usage/how to use something | |
| こんさつ 混雑 | congestion/crowd/jam; confusion/disorder | also a verb |
| カッコ | (opening) bracket/parenthesis | (括弧); [SE] |
| カッコとじ | closing bracket/parenthesis | (括弧閉じ); [SE] |
| じゅんび 準備 | preparation/arrangements/setup | also a verb |
| つもり | plan/intention; assumption/belief/thought; estimation | (積もり) |
| はじまり 始まり | origin/beginning | |
| かいし 開始 | start/commencement/beginning/initiation | slightly formal, also a verb, [HN] |
| スタート | start/beginning | also a verb |
| しゅつぱつ 出発 | departure/setting off | also a verb |
| はつどう 発動 | kick-start/put into effect (activity/machine/policy) | also a verb |
| きどう 起動 | startup/booting up/activation/launch | also a verb |
| つく 作り | the making/production/components of | |
| しゅうせい 修正 | amendment/correction/revision/modification/alteration/retouching/update/fix | also a verb |
| へんか 変化 | change/variation/alteration/mutation/transfiguration | also a verb, in Table 58 |
| へんたい 変態 | state of transformation | also in Table 74 |
| しんか 進化 | evolution/progress/development/improvement | also a verb |
| てんかい 展開 | development/evolution/progression/unfolding/plot twist; expansion (physical/mathematics) | also a verb |
| きりかえ 切り替え | (the act of) replacement | |
| きりかえ 切り換え | (the act of) exchange | |
| いれかえ 入れ替え | (the act of) replacement of interior contents | |
| いれかえ 入れ換え | (the act of) exchange of interior contents | |
| まま | remaining unchanged/in the same state | (儘) |
| <v past> まま | with/while <v past> (e.g. eyes closed/lights on/standing/alive) | (<v past> 儘) |
| おわり 終わり | end/ending/conclusion; it's over | |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| しゅうりょう 終了 | end/close/termination | slightly formal, also a verb, [HN] |
| かんせい 完成 | completion/perfection/accomplishment | also a verb |
| けつ かく 結果 | result/outcome/consequence | |
| とっ ぱ 突破 | breakthrough/overcoming a difficulty; exceeding/rising above | also a verb |
| ひろうめ [お]披露目 | [formal] announcement/unveiling/introduction/debut | |
| ひろう 披露 | announcement/unveiling/introduction; boast | also a verb |
| しゅうえき 収益 | revenue (organisation) | [goo] |
| り じゅん 利潤 | profit (organisation) | [goo] |
| り えき 利益 | profit; benefit/advantage/interests | [goo] |
| もう け 設け | profit | informal; [goo] |
| げんさく 原作 | original work | |
| み ほん 見本 | sample/specimen | also in Table 74 |
| ぶん 文 | text/composition/writing | also in Table 58 |
| ぶんしやう 文章 | writing/composition/essay/article/passage/prose | also in Table 58 |
| ま と め まとめ | summary/aggregation | |
| はなし 話 | speech/talk/conversation/topic/subject | |
| ぐち タメ口 | casual/informal speech/language | slang |
| しゃべり しゃべり | chat/chatter/talk | (喋り) |
| ざつだん 雑談 | chatting/idle talk | also a verb |
| ほうそう 放送 | broadcast/program/announcement (TV/radio) | also a verb; [HN] |
| はいしん 配信 | broadcast/distribution/streaming (Internet) | also a verb; [HN] |
| アドバイス アドバイス | advice | also a verb |
| じやうだん 冗談 | joke/jest/funny story | |
| ダジャレ ダジャレ | corny joke/bad pun/poor joke | (駄洒落) |
| ギャグ ギャグ | gag/joke | |
| オヤジギャグ オヤジギャグ | corny joke/dad joke (“dad gag”) | (親父ギャグ); slang |
| しも 下ネタ | dirty joke; indecent topic/bawdy subject/sex talk | |
| おと 音 | sound | |
| おんがく 音楽 | music | |
| こゑ 声 | voice (literal and abstract); singing/chirping (of bird/insect) | |
| うた 歌 | song/singing | |
| えんそう 演奏 | musical performance | also a verb |
| しよけん 初見 | sight-reading (music) | also in Table 82 |
| きょく 曲 | piece/composition/song/track | |
| オリ曲 オリ曲 | original piece/composition/song/track | slang, abbreviation |
| さんぽ 散歩 | stroll | |
| おど 踊り | dance | |
| こおど 小躍り | dancing/jumping for joy | also a verb |
| えい ぶ 映画 | movie/film/motion picture | |
| しゃしん 写真 | photograph/photo/picture/snapshot | |
| ざいし 雑誌 | journal/magazine | |
| ものがたり 物語 | story/tale/fable | also: ストーリー |
| でんせつ 伝説 | legend/folklore | also: レジェンド |
| でんとう 伝統 | tradition | also: トラディション |
| しん わ 神話 | myth | also: ミス |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------|---|------------------------------|
| 計算 | calculation/computation | also a verb |
| 仕事 | work/occupation/employment | |
| 使い | errand | |
| 引退 | retirement (from the workforce) | also a verb |
| 管理 | management/control (act of) | also a verb |
| メンバ[ー]シップ | membership | |
| 登録 | presence in register/records; registration/subscription (YouTube) | also a verb; [goo] |
| 入会 | enrolment/admission into a club/society/mailling list | also a verb; [HN] |
| 加入 | becoming a member of (e.g. a group/project) | also a verb; [HN] |
| 退会 | withdrawal/resignation from a club/society/mailling list | also a verb |
| 盗品 | stolen goods | |
| 真似 | imitating/copying/mimicry (usu. as <adj>真似をする) | |
| 自動 | automatic operation | |
| 手動 | manual operation | |
| 求婚 | marriage proposal | also a verb |
| 結婚 | marriage | also a verb |
| 冒険 | adventure/venture; risky venture/attempt | |
| 世話 | care/looking after; recommendation/introduction | also a verb |
| 掃除 | cleaning/sweeping/dusting/scrubbing | also a verb; [goo] |
| 清掃 | cleaning/clean-up/garbage collection | also a verb, literary; [goo] |

VB.23 Sports

Table 80: Nouns: sports.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|--------|------------------------|-------|
| 卓球 | table tennis/ping-pong | |
| ピンポン | table tennis/ping-pong | |
| バドミントン | badminton | |

VB.24 Consumption

Table 81: Nouns: consumption.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 必要 | necessity/need/requirement | |
| 値段 | price/cost | |
| [お]金 | money | [polite] |
| 円 | yen (Japanese monetary unit) | |
| 買い物 | the act of shopping/purchased goods | |
| 会計 | bill (at a restaurant) | also in Table 93 |
| ビル | bill/invoice | |
| 請求 | charge/billing (for a service) | also a verb; also in Table 82 |
| 試験 | examination/test | also: テスト |
| 試し | trial/attempt/test | |
| 削除 | deletion/elimination/erasure | also a verb |
| 電気 | electricity/electric lamp | |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|--------------------|---|---|
| ラジコン | radio control(-led vehicle) | |
| ロック | lock | also a verb |
| 摂取 ^{せつしゅ} | intake/ingestion (salt/sugar/pills/food); absorption/assimilation (knowledge/culture) | |
| おかわり | second serving | (お代わり ^{かひ} /お替わり ^{かひ}) |
| 遊び ^{あそび} | play/playing/game; pleasure/pastime/recreation | |
| トランプ | (Western) playing cards | |
| じゃんけん | rock-paper-scissors | (じゃん拳 ^{けん}) |
| じゃんけんぽん | rock-paper-scissors (called out before revealing one's hand) | (じゃん拳 ^{けん})ぽん |
| クラブ | clubs suit | also in Table 92 |
| ハート | hearts suit | |
| スペード | spades suit | |
| ダイヤモンド | diamonds suit | also in Table 101 |
| タバコ | tobacco/cigarette/cigar | (煙草 ^{たばこ}) |

VB.25 Interaction

Table 82: Nouns: interaction.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------------------|---|--------------------------------|
| いくら | how much (price) | (幾ら ^{いく}) |
| 無料 ^{むりょう} | free of charge | |
| 有料 ^{ゆうりょう} | fee-charging/paid/not free | |
| 態度 ^{たいど} | attitude/manner/behaviour/demeanour/bearing; position/stance (towards an issue) | |
| [お]願い ^{ねがひ} | wish/desire/hope; request/favour | [polite]; also an interjection |
| 応援 ^{おうえん} | aid/assistance/help/support; cheering/rooting for | |
| ～願 ^{ねがひ} | written application | SUFFIX |
| 請求 ^{せいきゅう} | request/application; claim | also a verb; also in Table 81 |
| 感謝 ^{かんしゃ} | thanks/gratitude/appreciation | also a verb |
| 大感謝 ^{だいかんしゃ} | great thanks/gratitude/appreciation | also a verb |
| 評価 ^{ひようか} | appreciation/recognition/praise | also a verb; also in Table 90 |
| お礼 ^{れい} | thanks/gratitude | polite |
| 希望 ^{きぼう} | hope; expectation/wishes | |
| 切望 ^{せつぼう} | earnest desire/eager hope/yearning | also a verb |
| 絶望 ^{ぜつぼう} | despair/hopelessness | |
| やり取り ^{とり} | exchanging (of letters/conversation); giving and taking (やる + 取る) | |
| 命令 ^{めいれい} | order/command/decreedirective; instruction/statement (computing) | also a verb |
| 優先 ^{ゆうせん} | priority/precedence/preference | also a verb |
| 絆 ^{きずな} | emotional ties/bonds/relationship/connection | |
| 困難 ^{こんなん} | difficulty/hardship/trouble/distress | |
| 苦勞 ^{くろう} | trouble/hardship/difficulty/toil/pains | also a verb |
| 名前 ^{なまえ} | name | |
| 存在 ^{そんざい} | existence/presence | |
| 関係 ^{かんけい} | relationship/connection; participation/involvement/concern; influence/effect | also a verb |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|---------|--|--------------------|
| 関連 | connection/relation/relevance | also a verb |
| 初見 | first sight/meeting | also in Table 79 |
| 連絡 | making contact/communication/call/message | also a verb |
| 連絡先 | contact information (e.g. address/phone number) | |
| 電話 | phone/phone call | also a verb |
| メールアドレス | email address | |
| パソコン | personal computer (PC) | |
| ノートパソコン | laptop computer (“notebook personal computer”) | |
| 返事 | reply/answer/response | also a verb |
| 告白 | confession (of a crime/wrongdoing/romantic feelings) | also a verb; [goo] |
| 自白 | confession/admission (when questioned) | also a verb; [goo] |
| 自供 | confession/admission (when questioned) | also a verb; [goo] |
| 逮捕 | arrest/capture | also a verb |
| 機会 | chance/opportunity | also: チャンス |
| 場合 | case/occasion/situation/circumstances | |
| 事件 | event/accident/case/plot/trouble/scandal | |
| 事故 | accident/incident/trouble | |

VB.26 Society and culture

Table 83: Nouns: society and culture.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|---------|---|-----------------------------|
| 経済 | economy | |
| 地理 | geography | |
| 歴史 | history | |
| 政治 | politics/government | |
| 政府 | government/administration/ministry | |
| 営業 | business/trade/operations | |
| 会社 | company/corporation/firm; one's workplace | |
| 国際 | international | |
| 東南アジア | Asia | also: 東南亜、アジア |
| 中国 | China | |
| 日本/日本 | Japan | pronunciation: no consensus |
| 日本国/日本国 | Japan | pronunciation: no consensus |
| 韓国 | Korea | |
| シンガポール | Singapore | |
| 英国 | United Kingdom/Britain | |
| 米国 | America/USA | also: アメリカ |
| 海外 | foreign/abroad/overseas | |
| 外来 | foreign/imported | |
| 言語 | language | |
| 母語 | mother tongue/native language | |
| 母国語 | mother tongue/native language/language of one's country | |
| 中国語 | Chinese language | |
| 日本語 | Japanese language | |
| 韓国語 | Korean language | |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 英語 | English language | |
| 平和 | peace/harmony | |
| 平等 | equality/impartiality | also an adjective |
| 文化 | culture/civilisation | |
| アニメ | animation/anime | |

VB.27 Health

Table 84: Nouns: health.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|---------|---|-----------------------------|
| 命 | life/life force; most important thing/core | |
| 生命 | life/existence; one's working life/career; life/life force | |
| 人生 | one's life | |
| 生き甲斐 | reason for living/purpose in life | (生きがい) |
| 意識 | consciousness | also a verb |
| 無意識 | unconsciousness; the unconscious | also an adjective |
| 精神 | mind/spirit/soul/heart; attitude/mentality | |
| 精神的苦痛 | mental anguish/distress; | |
| 精神病 | mental illness/psychosis | |
| 体調 | physical condition/state of health | |
| 元気 | health/vigour | also an adjective |
| 健康 | health | also an adjective |
| 汗 | sweat/perspiration | |
| 冷や汗 | cold sweat | |
| 疲れ | tiredness/fatigue | |
| 疲労 | fatigue/weariness/exhaustion/tiredness | also a verb |
| 空腹 | empty stomach/hunger | |
| お腹いっぱい | full stomach | also an adverb |
| 病気 | illness/disease/sickness | also an adjective |
| 苦痛 | pain/agony/suffering/distress/torment | |
| 痛み | pain/ache/soreness/grief/distress | |
| 苦しみ | pain/anguish/distress/suffering/hardship | |
| 急性 | acute (illness) | |
| 慢性 | chronic (illness) | |
| 風邪 | common cold/flu/influenza/inflammatory respiratory system illness (generic) | |
| たん | phlegm/sputum | (痰) |
| 安全 | safety/security | also an adjective |
| 危険 | danger/hazard/risk | also an adjective |
| 非常 | emergency | also an adjective |
| まさか | the unexpected/emergency | (まさか); also an interjection |
| 一酸化炭素中毒 | carbon monoxide poisoning | |
| 病院 | hospital/clinic/doctor's office/doctor's surgery/infirmar | |
| 休み | rest/vacation | |
| 昼寝 | afternoon nap | |
| 暇 | free time/time off/leisure | also an adjective |
| 夢 | dream | |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|---------------------------|---|----------------------------|
| 悪夢 <small>あくむ</small> | nightmare | |
| [お]風呂 <small>ふろ</small> | bath/bathtub/bathroom/bathhouse; bathing | |
| 日光浴 <small>にっこうよく</small> | sunbathing/basking in the sun | also a verb |
| ゆず湯 <small>ゆず</small> | yuzu bath/hot citron bath | (柚子湯) |
| 春休み <small>はるやすみ</small> | spring break/vacation | |
| 夏休み <small>なつやすみ</small> | summer vacation | |
| 秋休み <small>あきやすみ</small> | autumn break/vacation | also: 秋 <small>しゅう</small> |
| 冬休み <small>ふゆやすみ</small> | winter vacation | |
| 月見 <small>つきみ</small> | Japanese equivalent of CN's mid-autumn festival (同じ日) | |
| 祭り <small>まつり</small> | festival | |
| 眠気 <small>ねむけ</small> | sleepiness/drowsiness | |
| 寝袋 <small>ねぶくろ</small> | sleeping bag | |

VB.28 Disasters

Table 85: Nouns: disasters.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|------------------------|------------|-------|
| 地震 <small>じしん</small> | earthquake | |
| 台風 <small>たいふう</small> | typhoon | |

VB.29 Colours

Read the main article on [CTA](#).

Only four colours were recognised as basic colours in ancient Japan: red, blue, white, black. Blue and green used to be both referred to as 青 あお.

Colours are often used as labels, together with the の particle.

Table 86: Nouns: colours.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|----------------------------|--|-----------------|
| 赤 <small>あか</small> [色] | red (1, 0, 0) | also: レッド |
| 橙 <small>だいだい</small> [色] | orange (1, 0.64, 0) | also: オレンジ |
| 黄 <small>き</small> [色] | yellow (1, 1, 0)/amber (1, 0.75, 0) (midpoint of yellow and orange) | also: イエロー |
| ベージュ | beige | |
| 黄緑 <small>きみどり</small> | yellow-green | |
| 緑 <small>みどり</small> [色] | green (0, 1, 0) | also: グリーン |
| 深緑色 <small>ふかみどりいろ</small> | dark green | |
| 青 <small>あお</small> | blue (0, 0, 1); green when used in compound words (fruits/plants/traffic lights) | also: ブルー |
| 深青 <small>ふかあお</small> | dark/navy blue | |
| 抹茶色 <small>まっちゃいろ</small> | tea green/soft yellow-green | |
| 青色 <small>あおい</small> | blue (0, 0, 1) | |
| 水色 <small>みずいろ</small> | light blue | |
| 紺色 <small>こんいろ</small> | navy/dark blue | also: ネイビー/ネービー |
| 紫 <small>むらさき</small> [色] | purple (0.5, 0, 0.5)/violet (0.5, 0, 1) | also: パープル |
| 白 <small>しろ</small> | white (1, 1, 1); innocent; blank (space) | |
| 白色 <small>しろいろ</small> | white (1, 1, 1) | |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------------------|--|---------------|
| 灰色 ^{はいいろ} | grey | also: グレー/グレイ |
| 黒 ^{くろ} | black (0, 0, 0); guilty | |
| 黒色 ^{くろいろ} | black (0, 0, 0) | |
| 桃色 ^{ももいろ} | pink | also: ピンク |
| 茶[色] ^{ちゃいろ} | brown | also: ブラウン |
| 赤茶色 ^{あかちやいろ} | reddish brown | |
| 薄茶色 ^{うすちやいろ} | light/pale brown | |
| 黒茶色 ^{くろちやいろ} | deep brown | |
| こげ茶色 ^{こちやいろ} | dark/olive brown | (焦げ茶色) |
| 銀[色] ^{ぎんいろ} | silver | also: シルバー |
| 金[色] ^{きんいろ} | gold | also: ゴールド |
| 虹色 ^{にじいろ} | rainbow-coloured | |
| 七色 ^{なないろ} | seven/prismatic colours (of the rainbow) | |
| 白黒 ^{しろくろ} | monochrome; black and white; good and evil/right and wrong | [WDC] |
| 黒白 ^{くろしろ} | black and white; good and evil/right and wrong | [WDC] |
| 白黒テレビ ^{しろくろ} | black-and-white television | |
| 紅葉 ^{こうよう} | leaves turning red in autumn; autumn colours; autumn leaves (“red leaf”) | also a verb |
| 黄葉 ^{こうよう} | leaves turning yellow in autumn; autumn colours; autumn leaves (“yellow leaf”) | also a verb |

VB.30 Shapes

Table 87: Nouns: shapes.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------------------|--|---------------|
| 丸 ^{まる} | circle | |
| ラウンド | round (shape/repetition) | |
| 三角形 ^{さんかくけい} | triangle | [HN] |
| バツ | cross | |
| ハート形 ^{がた} | heart shape | |
| ハート型 ^{がた} | heart shape (mold) | |
| 八重 ^{やえ} | overlapping/multilayered/doubled (e.g. of flower petals) | [goo], [Wiki] |

VB.31 Agreeability

Table 88: Nouns: agreeability.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|------------------------|--|------------------------|
| 好き嫌い ^{すききらい} | likes and dislikes/preferences; pickiness/choosiness/fussiness (esp. food) | |
| 賛成 ^{さんせい} | approval/agreement/support | also a verb |
| 反対 ^{はんたい} | objection/opposition/resistance/dissent | also a verb |
| 素晴らしさ ^{すばらしさ} | splendour/magnificence/beauty | |
| 一流 ^{いちりゅう} | first class/top-ranking | |
| トンデモ | something unthinkable/unexpected/outrageous/offensive | abbreviation of とんでもない |
| 善悪 ^{ぜんあく} | right and wrong/good and evil | |

VB.32 Appearance and style

Table 89: Nouns: appearance and style.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|---------|--|------------------|
| イケメン | good-looking/handsome/cool guy | (イケ面) |
| 美少女 | beautiful girl | |
| 特徴 | distinguishing feature | [goo] |
| 特長 | strong point/forte/merit/strength | |
| 特色 | superior feature | [goo] |
| 魅力 | charm/attraction/appeal | |
| 味 | charm/appeal/uniqueness/attractiveness | also in Table 98 |
| 愛嬌 | charm/attractiveness; courtesy | |
| 匂い | smell/scent/flavour/mood | |
| 臭い | odour/stench | |
| 痩せた | thin/slim/skinny; barren/infertile/sterile | from 痩せる |
| 太った | plump/fat/chubby | from 太る |
| 年[を]取った | old/aged (person) | [HN] |

VB.33 Ability

Table 90: Nouns: ability.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|------|--|-------------------------------|
| 能力 | ability | |
| 力 | force/strength/power | |
| 領域 | territory/domain/expertise; field/area/region | |
| 経験 | experience | |
| 独立 | independence/self-reliance | also a verb |
| 可能性 | potentiality/likelihood/possibility/chance | |
| 偶然 | coincidence/chance/accident | also an adverb |
| 必然 | inevitability/necessity | |
| 受け | reception/popularity/reputation | |
| 評価 | rating/valuation/appraisal/evaluation/assessment | also a verb; also in Table 82 |
| 再評価 | reevaluation/reassessment/reappraisal/reevaluation | also a verb |
| 高評価 | high rating/good reputation | |
| 低評価 | low rating/bad reputation | |
| 当たり | success/hit | |
| 成功 | success/achievement | also a verb |
| 失敗 | failure/mistake/blunder | also a verb |

VB.34 Personalities

Table 91: Nouns: personalities.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|-------|---|-------|
| 人気 | popularity/public favour | |
| 大人気 | high popularity/public favour | |
| 無名 | anonymous/nameless; not famous | |
| しっかり者 | person of firm character/stable person/gutsy person | |
| 自信 | self-confidence | |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|------|--|-------|
| ツンデレ | normally cold but at some prompt suddenly lovestruck/hot-cold personality type (ツンツン + デレデレ) | slang |
| クーデレ | acting indifferent while lovestruck (クール + デレデレ) | |
| ヤンデレ | person with an unhealthy romantic obsession (病む + デレデレ) | |

VB.35 Education and correctness

Table 92: Nouns: education and correctness.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|------------------|---|----------------------------|
| きょういく 教育 | education/training/upbringing | |
| じゅぎょう 授業 | lesson/class/teaching/instruction | |
| べんきょう 勉強 | study/diligence/hard work | also a verb |
| れんしゅう 練習 | practice/train/drill | also a verb |
| じしゅう 自習 | self-study | also a verb |
| がくしゅう 学習 | study/learning/tutorial | |
| がくしゅうほう 学習法 | way of learning/studying/mastering | |
| きょうざい 教材 | teaching materials | |
| しつもん 質問 | question/enquiry | also a verb |
| もんだい 問題 | problem/question | |
| しゅくだい 宿題 | homework/assignment | |
| なぞ 謎 | riddle/puzzle/enigma/mystery | |
| なぞなぞ なぞなぞ | riddle/puzzle/enigma | (謎々) |
| こたへ 答え | answer/reply/response | |
| せつめい 説明 | explanation | also a verb |
| わけ 訳 | reason/cause; meaning | |
| りゆう 理由 | reason | |
| げんいん 原因 | cause | |
| せいかい 正解 | correct answer/interpretation/decision/judgment | |
| りようかい 了解 | understanding/comprehension/agreement | also an interjection, verb |
| りかい 理解 | understanding/comprehension/appreciation; sympathy | also a verb |
| おな 同じ | similar/same/identical/equal/uniform/equivalent | |
| おな 同じくらい | approximately the same | actually an expression |
| どうよう 同様 | same/similar/just like/equal | |
| ちが 違い | difference/distinction/discrepancy/miss (nuance: wrong) | [HN], [SE] |
| べつ 別 | distinction/difference/discrimination (nuance: another) | [SE] |
| ふせいかい 不正解 | incorrect answer/solution/interpretation | |
| まちが 間違い | mistake/error/errata/blunder; accident/mishap | |
| まちが 間違え | mistake/error/blunder; accident/mishap | |
| ごかい 誤解 | misunderstanding (objective concept) | also a verb; [goo] |
| かんちが 勘違い | erroneous assumption/thought illusion/misunderstanding/ mistaken idea | also a verb; [goo] |
| おも ちが 思い違い | mistaken idea/misconception (“thoughts different”) | also a verb; [goo] |
| こころ え ちが 心得違い | imprudence/mistaken idea that is a misbehaviour (used disapprovingly in criticism) | [goo] |
| ぶかつどう 部活動 | club/extracurricular activities | |
| ぶかつ 部活 | club/extracurricular activities (abbreviation) | |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|---------------------------|---|---|
| クラブ活動 <small>かつびつ</small> | club/extracurricular activities | |
| クラブ | club; nightclub; sports club; golf club | (倶楽部 <small>くらぶ</small>); also in Table 81 |
| 遠足 <small>えんそく</small> | school trip/field trip/excursion/outing | |

VB.36 Academic fields

Table 93: Nouns: academic fields.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| 数学 <small>すうがく</small> | mathematics | |
| 科学 <small>かがく</small> | science | also: サイエンス |
| 地理学 <small>ちりがく</small> | geography | |
| 歴史学 <small>れきしがく</small> | history | |
| 経済学 <small>けいざいがく</small> | economics | |
| 会計 <small>かいけい</small> | accounting/finance | also in Table 81 |
| 工学 <small>こうがく</small> | engineering | |
| 計算機科学 <small>けいさんきかがく</small> | computer science | also: コンピューターサイエンス |
| 情報工学 <small>じょうほうこうがく</small> | information engineering | |

VB.37 Knowledge, truth and reality

Table 94: Nouns: knowledge, truth and reality.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|--------------------------------|---|--------------|
| 思い <small>おも</small> | thought | |
| 情報 <small>じょうほう</small> | information/news/intelligence | |
| 消息 <small>しやうそく</small> | news from someone; someone's whereabouts/movements | |
| 知らせ <small>し</small> | news; notice/notification | |
| お知らせ <small>し</small> | notice/notification | polite |
| 情報提供 <small>じょうほうていきやう</small> | provision of information | |
| 状況 <small>じやうきやう</small> | state of affairs/situation/circumstances (neutral, broader usage) | [HN1], [HN2] |
| 事態 <small>じたい</small> | immediate situation/present state of affairs (usually negative) | [HN1], [HN2] |
| 事情 <small>じじやう</small> | circumstances/conditions/matters (used to explain context/decision/event) | [HN] |
| 知識 <small>ちしき</small> | knowledge/information | |
| 意味 <small>いみ</small> | meaning/sense/significance | |
| いろは | fundamentals/the ABCs of | |
| 既知 <small>きち</small> | the known/established | |
| 未知 <small>みち</small> | the unknown | |
| 承知 <small>しやうち</small> | knowledge/awareness; acceptance/consent/compliance/acknowledgement | also a verb |
| ご存知 <small>ごんじ</small> | knowledge/awareness | honorific |
| 断り <small>ことわ</small> | rejection/refusal/declination; permission/consent; notification/notice | |
| お断り <small>ことわ</small> | rejection/refusal/declination; announcement/notice | polite |
| 由来 <small>ゆらい</small> | origin/source/history/derivation | also a verb |
| 本物 <small>ほんもの</small> | genuine article/real deal | |
| 真実 <small>しんじつ</small> | truth | [HN1], [HN2] |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|--------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| 事実 <small>じじつ</small> | fact | [HN] |
| 現実 <small>げんじつ</small> | reality | [HN] |
| 実際 <small>じっさい</small> | actuality/in practice (compared to expectation/theory) (usu. as 実際の or 実際は) | [HN] |
| 理想 <small>りそう</small> | ideal/ideals | |
| 公式 <small>こうしき</small> | official | |
| 偽物 <small>にせもの</small> | fake article/forgery/counterfeit/imitation | |
| 嘘 <small>うそ</small> | lie/fib/falsehood | also an interjection |
| 非公式 <small>ひこうしき</small> | unofficial | |
| 妄想 <small>もうそう</small> | delusion; wild/ridiculous/baseless fantasy | |
| 一般 <small>いっぱん</small> | general/universal/ordinary/average/common | |
| ただ | ordinary/common/usual | (<small>ただ</small>); also an adverb |
| 通常 <small>つうじょう</small> | usual/ordinary/normal/regular/general/common | also an adverb |
| 普段 <small>ふだん</small> | usual/normal/everyday/habitual/ordinary | also an adverb |
| 観察 <small>かんさつ</small> | observation/survey/watching | also a verb |
| 研究 <small>けんきゅう</small> | research/study/investigation | |
| 探索 <small>たんさく</small> | hunt/exploration/investigation/search/lookup | also a verb |
| 実験 <small>じっけん</small> | experiment/experimentation | also a verb |
| 分析 <small>ぶんせき</small> | analysis | also a verb |
| 報告 <small>ほうこく</small> | report/information | also a verb |
| 証明 <small>しょうめい</small> | proof/testimony | also a verb |
| 確認 <small>かくにん</small> | confirmation/verification/validation/check | also a verb |
| 発見 <small>はっけん</small> | discovery/detection/finding | also a verb |
| 発明 <small>はつめい</small> | invention | also a verb |
| 確定 <small>かくてい</small> | decision (clear) | also a verb; [goo] |
| 内定 <small>ないうてい</small> | {informal/internal/unofficial} {decision/offer (e.g. job)} | also a verb; [goo] |
| 本決まり <small>ほんぎり</small> | formal/official final decision | [goo] |
| 未定 <small>みでい</small> | not decided/not yet fixed/undecided/pending/TBC | also an adjective; [goo] |
| 所定 <small>しよてい</small> | predetermined/prescribed/designated/fixed in advance | [goo] |
| 暫定 <small>ざんてい</small> | provisional/tentative decision | [goo] |
| 予定 <small>よてい</small> | plans/arrangement/decision made in advance | [goo] |
| 既定 <small>きてい</small> | decided/established/fixed/prearranged/predetermined | [goo] |
| 決断 <small>けつだん</small> | decision (strong) | also a verb; [goo] |
| 決定 <small>けつてい</small> | decision | also a verb; [goo] |
| 判断 <small>はんだん</small> | judgment | also a verb; [goo] |
| 断 <small>だん</small> | judgment | literary [goo] |
| 判定 <small>はんてい</small> | verdict/ruling/judgment (of judge/referee) | also a verb |
| 断定 <small>だんてい</small> | assertion/declaration/conclusion | also a verb; [goo] |
| 隠れ～ <small>かくれ～</small> | hidden/concealed/unknown/crypto- | PREFIX |
| 隠蔽 <small>いんぺい</small> | covering up/concealment/hiding/suppression | also a verb |
| 内緒 <small>ないしよ</small> | secret (in/out-group, personal level) | [HN] |
| 秘密 <small>ひみつ</small> | secret (official/corporate/country) | childish; [HN] |
| 隠し事 <small>かくごと</small> | secret/secrecy | also a verb |
| 確か <small>たし</small> | sure/certain/confident; reliable/trustworthy/accurate/correct/exact | also an adverb |
| 信用 <small>しんよう</small> | trust/confidence/reputation (past) | also a verb; [SE] |
| 信頼 <small>しんらい</small> | trust/confidence/reliance/faith (future) | also a verb; [SE] |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|--------|--|-------|
| うたが 疑い | doubt/question/uncertainty/skepticism/suspicion/distrust | |

VB.38 Courtesy

Table 95: Nouns: courtesy.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|---------|---|------------------------|
| ため | good/advantage/benefit/welfare; sake/purpose/objective/aim | ため (為); also an adverb |
| エチケット | etiquette/politeness/courtesy/good manners | |
| あくたい 悪態 | foul/abusive language | |
| しつれい 失礼 | discourtesy/impoliteness | also a な-adjective |
| ぶれい 無礼 | rudeness/discourtesy/insolence (stronger) | also a な-adjective |
| むし 無視 | disregarding/ignoring | also a verb |
| めんどう 面倒 | trouble/bother (when there's too much to do) | [HN] |
| めいわく 迷惑 | trouble/bother/annoyance/nuisance/inconvenience (to other people) | [HN] |
| まち 待ち時間 | waiting time/latency/queuing time | |
| さいそく 最速 | fastest | |

VB.39 Conflict and resolution

Table 96: Nouns: conflict and resolution.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|-------------------------|--|-------------------|
| さくせん 作戦 | tactics/strategy; military operation | |
| けっせん 決戦 | decisive battle/deciding match | also a verb |
| せ 攻め | attack/assault/offence | |
| せんそう 戦争 | war | |
| せんとう 戦闘 | battler/fight/combat | |
| たいせん 大戦 | great war/battle; world war (abbreviation) | |
| せ かい たい せん 世界大戦 | world war | |
| だいいち せ かい たい せん 第一次世界大戦 | World War I | |
| だいに せ かい たい せん 第二次世界大戦 | World War II | |
| あと だし 後出しジャンケン | waiting to see one's opponent's move/playing a waiting game | |
| あと だし 後出し | waiting to see one's opponent's move before making your move (disallowed in games); holding back until the last minute | also a verb |
| か 勝ち | win/victory (personal) | |
| しょうり 勝利 | win/victory (larger scale) | also a verb |
| ま 負け | loss/defeat (personal) | |
| はいばく 敗北 | loss/defeat (larger scale) | also a verb |
| ぜんめつ 全滅 | complete defeat/destruction/annihilation/failure | also a verb |
| ふせい 不正 | injustice/unfairness/wrongdoing/dishonestly/illegality/fraud | also an adjective |
| おどし 脅し | threat | |
| けんか 喧嘩 | quarrel/brawl/fight/squabble/scuffle/argument | also a verb |
| も 揉め | dispute/quarrel/disagreement | |
| がまん 我慢 | patience/endurance/bearing with something (usu. 我慢できない “cannot stand”) | |
| もう わけ 申し訳 | apology/excuse | |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|-------------|--|-------------|
| 謝罪 しやきざい | apology | also a verb |
| 勘弁 かんべん | pardon/forgiveness; giving someone a break | also a verb |
| 警戒 けいかい | vigilance/caution/alertness/precaution/being on guard | also a verb |
| 責 せき | responsibility/duty/obligation | |
| 責任 せきにん | duty/responsibility | |
| 任務 にんむ | mission/task/role/duty/function/office | |
| <label>のせい | <label>'s fault; consequence of <label> | (所為) せい |
| 約束 やくそく | promise/agreement/arrangement/contract/pact; appointment/date | also a verb |
| 犯罪 はんざい | crime/offence | |
| 尋問 じんもん | interrogation/questioning | also a verb |
| 罰 ばつ | punishment/penalty | also a verb |
| 自殺 じさつ | suicide | also a verb |

VB.40 Weapons

Table 97: Nouns: weapons.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|----------|---|-------|
| 武器 ぶき | weapon/arms/ordnance | |
| 刃 やいば | blade/sword | |
| 刀 かたな | sword (esp. Japanese single-edged) | |
| 剣 けん | sword (esp. double-edged); blade; bayonet | |

VB.41 Taste and texture

Table 98: Nouns: taste and texture.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|---------|---|------------------|
| 塩 しお | (common/table) salt | |
| 味 あじ | flavour/taste (literal/abstract (e.g. victory)) | also in Table 89 |
| もちもち | springy texture/elastic | |
| ブルンブルン | shaking like a jelly/jellylike | |

VB.42 Amounts and sizes

Table 99: Nouns: amounts and sizes.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|-------------|--|--------------------------|
| 第～ だい | prefix for forming ordinal numbers | PREFIX |
| ～過ぎ す | too much/over- (e.g. eating) | SUFFIX, also in Table 71 |
| 超～ ちゆう | super-/ultra-/hyper-/extreme | PREFIX |
| くだらん | trivial/insignificant; worthless/not worth bothering with/ useless/good-for-nothing | (くだらん) くだ |
| 最小 さいしょう | smallest/minimum | |
| 最大 さいだい | biggest/maximum | |
| 最少 さいしょう | fewest/least/smallest number of/minimum | |
| 最多 さいた | most (numerous)/largest number of/maximum | |
| 全体 ぜんたい | whole/entirety | [goo] |
| 部分 ぶぶん | portion/section/part | |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------|
| 半分 <small>はんぶん</small> | half | also an adverb |
| 百点 <small>ひゃくてん</small> | hundred points/perfect mark | |
| 個別 <small>こべつ</small> | case-by-case/separate/individual | |
| 個人 <small>こじん</small> | individual/personal/private person | |
| 全員 <small>ぜんいん</small> | all members/everyone | also an adverb |

VB.43 Creatures and divinity

Table 100: Nouns: creatures and divinity.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|----------------------------------|---|-------|
| 神 <small>かみ</small> | god/deity/divinity/spirit | |
| 女神 <small>めがみ</small> | goddess/female deity | |
| 天 <small>てん</small> | heaven; God; sky | |
| 天使 <small>てんし</small> | angel | |
| 悪魔 <small>あくま</small> | devil/demon | |
| 幽霊 <small>ゆうれい</small> | ghost/spectre/apparition/phantom | |
| 妖怪 <small>ようかい</small> | ghost/apparition/phantom/spectre/demon/monster/goblin/ youkai | |
| 幻 <small>まぼろし</small> | phantom/vision/illusion | |
| 怪物 <small>かいぶつ</small> | monster | |
| 鬼 <small>おに</small> | demon/ogre/oni | |
| ばけ | taking on another form/disguising oneself (esp. by spirits/ foxes/racoon dogs in folklore) | (化け) |
| おばけ | ghost; goblin/monster/demon | (お化け) |
| 化物 <small>ばけもの</small> | monster/goblin | |
| 天国 <small>てんごく</small> | heaven | |
| 地獄 <small>じごく</small> | hell | |
| 巫女/神子 <small>みこ みこ</small> | shrine maiden | [YJ] |
| 宮司 <small>ぐうし</small> | chief priest (Shinto) | |
| 御朱印 <small>ごしゅいん</small> | seal stamp at shrines and temples | |
| お守り <small>まもり</small> | charm/amulet/talisman | |
| 南無阿弥陀仏 <small>なむあみだぶつ</small> | hail Amitabha Buddha | |

VB.44 Nature

Table 101: Nouns: nature.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|----------------------------|---|------------------|
| 草 <small>くさ</small> | grass/weed/herb | also in Table 78 |
| 花 <small>はな</small> | flower/blossom/bloom/petal | |
| 桜 <small>さくら</small> | cherry tree/cherry blossom | |
| 山桜 <small>やまざくら</small> | mountain cherry | |
| 満開 <small>まんかい</small> | full bloom (esp. of cherry blossom) | also a verb |
| 竹 <small>たけ</small> | bamboo | |
| 竹林 <small>たけりん</small> | bamboo forest | |
| 木 <small>き</small> | tree/shrub/bush; wood/timber | |
| 林 <small>はやし</small> | woods/forest/grove; bunch/cluster/collection of something | |
| 森 <small>もり</small> | forest | |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|-------------------|---|------------------|
| 森林 しんりん | forest woods | |
| 山 やま | mountain/hill | |
| 山々 やまやま | mountains/hills | |
| 砂漠 さばく | desert | |
| 石 いし | stone (small); jewel/precious stone; flint (in a lighter) | |
| 岩 いわ | rock/boulder (large) | |
| 原石 げんせき | raw/unpolished ore/gemstone | |
| 宝石 ほうせき | gem/jewel/precious stone | |
| ダイヤ[モンド] | diamond | also in Table 81 |
| 空気 くうき | air/atmosphere | also in Table 78 |
| 空 そら | the sky | |
| 青空 あおそら | blue sky | |
| 風 かぜ | wind/breeze/draught | |
| 雲 くも | cloud | |
| 黒雲 くろくも | dark clouds | |
| 暗雲 あんうん | dark clouds; threatening signs/ominous indications | |
| 雷雲 らいうん | thundercloud | |
| かすみ | mist; haze (esp. in Spring) | (霞) |
| 海 うみ | sea/ocean | |
| 光 ひかり | light | |
| 日光 にっこう | sunlight/sunshine/sunbeams | |
| 月光 げっこう | moonlight/moonbeam | |
| 花火 はなび | fireworks | |
| 水 みず | water | |
| 滝 たき | waterfall | |
| 天気 てんき | weather | |
| 雨 あめ | rain | |
| 時雨 しぐれ | rain shower in late autumn/early winter; seasonal rain | |
| 時雨 しぐれ | seasonal rain/rain in late autumn–early winter | |
| 雪 ゆき | snow | |
| 虹 にじ | rainbow | |
| 元素 げんそ | element (chemical/classical (e.g. earth/water/air/fire)) | |
| 水素 すいそ | hydrogen | |
| 炭素 たんそ | carbon | |
| 酸素 さんそ | oxygen | |
| 一酸化炭素 いっさんかたんそ | carbon monoxide | |
| 二酸化炭素 にさんかたんそ | carbon dioxide | |
| 炎 ほのお | flame/blaze; passion/flames (of intense emotion) | |
| 雷 かみなり | lightning/thunder/thunderbolt; god of thunder/lightning | |

VB.45 Cosmic

Read the main article on [SM](#). Read the differences between cosmic rocks at [AMS](#).

Table 102: Nouns: cosmic.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|------|---------|-------|
|------|---------|-------|

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|----------------------|---|---------------------|
| ほし 星 | star (excluding the Sun); planet (excluding the Earth); heavenly body | |
| せいざ 星座 | constellation; astrological/zodiac sign | |
| すいせい 彗星 | comet (frozen gas/ice/dust) | |
| りゅうせい 流星 | meteor/shooting star (light emitted from meteoroid/asteroid as it enters Earth's atmosphere) | |
| たいようけい 太陽系 | the solar system | |
| たいよう 太陽 | the Sun | |
| ひ 日 | the Sun | |
| ひきま お日様 | the Sun | children's language |
| つき 月 | the Moon | |
| つきま お月様 | the Moon | children's language |
| つきみ 月見 | moon viewing (eighth lunar month) | |
| にっしょく 日食 | solar eclipse (sun is eclipsed (blocked) by the moon) | |
| かいき にっしょく 皆既日食 | total solar eclipse | |
| ぶぶん にっしょく 部分日食 | partial solar eclipse | |
| げっしょく 月食 | lunar eclipse (moon is eclipsed (blocked) by the Earth) | |
| ぶぶんげっしょく 部分月食 | partial lunar eclipse | |
| すいせい 水星 | Mercury | |
| きんせい 金星 | Venus (yellowish) | |
| ちきゅう 地球 | the Earth | |
| かせい 火星 | Mars (reddish) | |
| もくせい 木星 | Jupiter (wood colour) | |
| どせい 土星 | Saturn (earth colour) | |
| てんのうせい 天王星 | Uranus (sky/light blue, sky king) | |
| かいおうせい 海王星 | Neptune (sea/mid blue, sea king) | |
| めいおうせい 冥王星 | Pluto (冥: dark) | |
| うちゅう 宇宙 | universe/cosmos/space | |
| せかい 世界 | the world/the universe/society | |
| いせかい 異世界 | another world (esp. fiction)/parallel universe | |
| ぎんが 銀河 | galaxy | |
| ぎんがけい 銀河系 | galactic system | |
| あまがわ[ぎんが] 天の川[銀河] | the Milky Way (galaxy name) | |
| うんめい 運命 | fate/destiny | |

VB.46 Physical units

Table 103: Nouns: physical units.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|-------------|---|-------|
| ページ/ぺーじ | page | |
| ポイント/ポイント | point | |
| パーセント/パーセント | percent | |
| オングストローム | angstrom ($1 \text{ \AA} = 1 \cdot 10^{-10} \text{ m}$) | |
| ミクロン/ミクロン | micron (micrometre) | |
| メートル/メートル | metre | |
| インチ/インチ | inch | |
| フィート/フィート | feet ($1 \text{ ft} = 12 \text{ in}$) | |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|----------------------------|---|------------|
| ヤード/ ヤ | yard (1 yd = 3 ft = 36 in) | |
| キロメートル/ キ | kilometre | |
| マイル/ ミ | mile (1 mi = 1760 yd = 5280 ft) | |
| 海里/ ヘイリ ノーティカルマイル | nautical mile (1 nmi = 1852 m) | |
| 平方メートル/ ヘイバウ | square metre | |
| ヘクタール/ ヘクタ | hectare (1 ha = 10 000 m ² = 0.01 km ²) | |
| 平方キロメートル/ ヘイバウ | square kilometre (1 km ² = 1 000 000 m ²) | |
| エーカー/ エ | acre (1 ac = 4840 sq yd = 43560 sq ft = $\frac{1}{640}$ sq mile) | |
| ヘルツ/ ヘル | hertz (1 Hz = 1 s ⁻¹) | |
| ノット/ ノ | knot (1 kt = 1 nmi h ⁻¹) | |
| マッハ/ マ | mach (multiple of speed of sound) | |
| グラム/ グ | gram | |
| キログラム/ キ | kilogram | |
| トン/ ト | ton | |
| 立方センチメートル/ リッパウ | cubic centimetre | |
| リットル/ リ | litre (1 L = 1 000 cm ³ = 0.001 m ³) | |
| ガロン/ ガ | gallon (there's a US one and a UK one..., both \lesssim 5 L) | |
| 立方メートル/ リッパウ | cubic metre | |
| ジュール | joule (1 J = 1 kg m ² s ⁻² ; $W = F \cdot s$; $F = ma$) | |
| カロリー/ カリ | calorie (\approx 4.184 J) | |
| メガトン/ メガ | megaton (TNT equivalent) | |
| キロワット時 | kilowatt hour (kW h) | |
| ワット/ ワ | watt (1 W = 1 J s ⁻¹ ; $P = \frac{E}{t}$) | |
| キロワット/ キ | kilowatt | |
| アンペア/ アン | ampere | |
| クーロン | coulomb (1 C = 1 A s ⁻¹) | |
| ボルト/ ボ | volt (1 V = 1 J C ⁻¹ ; $V = \frac{E}{Q}$) | |
| オーム/おーむ | ohm (1 Ω = 1 V A ⁻¹ ; $R = \frac{V}{I}$) | |
| ファラッド/ ファ | farad (capacitance; 1 F = 1 C V ⁻¹) | |
| 摂氏 | Celsius/centigrade | also: セ氏 |
| 摂氏温度 | degrees Celsius | also: セし温度 |
| 円/ 円 | Japanese yen | |
| セント/ セ | cents | |
| ドル/ ドル | dollar | |
| ユアン/ ユ | Chinese yuan | |
| ギガ/ ギ | giga- | |
| メガ/ メ | mega- | |
| キロ/ キ | kilo- | |
| デシ/ デ | deci- | |
| センチ/ セ | centi- | |
| ミリ/ ミ | milli- | |
| マイクロ/ マイ | micro- | |
| ナノ/ ナ | nano- | |
| ピコ/ ピ | pico- | |
| アルファ/ アル | alpha | |
| ベータ/ ベ | beta | |

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|--------------------|---------|-------|
| ガンマ/ ^{ガン} | gamma | |

VB.47 Hygiene

Table 104: Nouns: hygiene.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|---------|--|-------|
| うんこ/ウンコ | poop | |
| クソ | feces/excrement/dung/damned/blasted/stupid | (糞) |
| ごみ/ゴミ | trash/rubbish/garbage/refuse | (塵) |

VB.48 Common names

Table 105: Nouns: common names.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|-------|
| ^{すずき} 鈴木 | Suzuki (last name) | |
| ^{たなか} 田中 | Tanaka (last name) | |
| ^{やまだ} 山田 | Yamada (last name) | |
| ^{かが} 加賀 | Kaga (last name) | |
| ^{いちろう} 一郎 | Ichirou (first name) | |
| ^{なおこ} 直子 | Naoko (first name) | |
| ^{みえ} 美恵 | Mie (first name) | |
| ^{ともこ} 智子 | Tomoko (first name; female) | |
| ^{ようすけ} 洋介 | Yousuke (first name; male) | |

VB.49 Character names

Table 106: Nouns: character names.

| Noun | Meaning | Notes |
|----------------------------|----------------|-------|
| ^{フータオ} 胡桃 | Hu Tao | (くるみ) |
| ^{かみさとあやか} 神里綾華 | Kamisato Ayaka | |
| ^{やえみこ} 八重神子 | Yae Miko | |

VC けいようし 形容詞 (adjectives)

VC.1 Emotions

Table 107: Adjectives: emotions.

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------------------------|---|---|---|
| 感動的 <small>かんとうてき</small> | な | moving/touching/stirring | |
| 嬉しい <small>うれい</small> | い | happy/glad/delighted | |
| 楽しい <small>たの</small> | い | fun/enjoyable/happy | |
| 欲しい <small>ほ</small> | い | desired/wanted | |
| <v te>ほしい | い | I want you to do <v>/I want <v> done | AUX |
| イケイケ | な | eager/enthusiastic/excited/spirited/energetic | (行け行け) |
| めでたい | い | happy/auspicious/joyous | (目出度い); also in Table 115 |
| おめでたい | い | for congratulations/worthy of celebration/auspicious (occasion/ending/etc.) | (お目出度い); polite; also in Table 115 |
| 大切 <small>たいせつ</small> | な | important/significant; precious/cherished/beloved | also an verb, adverb |
| 愛しい <small>いと</small> | い | lovely/dear/beloved/darling/dearest | |
| 惜しい <small>お</small> | い | precious/dear/valuable | also in Table 112 |
| 悲しい <small>かな</small> | い | sad/miserable | |
| 恥ずかしい | い | embarrassed/ashamed/humiliated | |
| 懐かしい <small>なつ</small> | い | nostalgic/fondly-remembered/missed | |
| 寂しい <small>さび</small> | い | lonely | |
| 済まない <small>す</small> | い | remorseful/sorry/apologetic/conscience-stricken | also an interjection, also in Table 112 |
| 気の毒 <small>き にく</small> | な | feel bad/sorry/regretful/regret | also in Table 113 |
| 興味ない <small>きょうみ</small> | い | uninterested in/having no interested in | |
| 惜しい <small>お</small> | い | regrettable/disappointing/unfortunate/a pity | also in Table 112 |
| 残念 <small>ざんねん</small> | な | regrettable/unfortunate/disappointing/vexing | |
| 悔しい <small>くや</small> | い | frustrated/annoyed/bitterly disappointed (over failure/injustice) | |
| 羨ましい <small>うらや</small> | い | envious/jealous; enviable (position) | |
| 苦しい <small>くる</small> | い | psychologically painful/distressing/stressful; difficult/struggling (circumstances) | |
| つらい | い | painful/heart-breaking/difficult (emotionally); tough/hard/harsh (situations) | (辛い ≠ 辛い) |
| 痛い <small>いた</small> | い | painful/sore; [cringy/embarrassing] | [slang] |
| きな臭い <small>くさ</small> | い | tense/strained/“smelling of gunpowder” | also in Table 120 |
| 眠い <small>ねむ</small> | い | sleepy/drowsy | |
| 安心 <small>あんしん</small> | な | relieved | |
| 暖かい <small>あたた</small> | い | pleasantly warm | |
| 暑い <small>あつ</small> | い | hot | |
| 寒い <small>さむ</small> | い | cold (weather) | also in Table 113 |
| 小寒い <small>こさむ</small> | い | chilly/a little cold | |
| 熱い <small>あつ</small> | い | hot (to the touch); emotionally passionate/zealous/enthusiastic; hot-tempered | also in Table 113 |
| 冷たい <small>つめ</small> | い | cold/chilly/icy/freezing (to the touch); emotionally cold/unfriendly/distant | |
| つれない | い | cold/unsympathetic/heartless/unfriendly | |
| 疎い <small>うと</small> | い | distant/alooof/estranged | also in Table 114 |
| 心の貧しい <small>こころ まず</small> | い | ungenerous/poor in spirit/with no great feelings | |

VC.2 Production

Table 108: Adjectives: production.

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|--------------|---|-----------|-------|
| 自動的 じどうてき | な | automatic | |

VC.3 Consumption

Table 109: Adjectives: consumption.

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|------------------|---|--|---------|
| 使いやすい つかやすい | い | easy to use | (使い易い) |
| 見やすい みやすい | い | easy to see | (見易い) |
| 読みやすい よみやすい | い | easy to read/legible | (読み易い) |
| 飲みやすい のみやすい | い | easy to drink/swallow | (飲み易い) |
| わかりやすい わかりやすい | い | easy to understand | (分かり易い) |
| 覚えやすい おぼえやすい | い | easy to learn/remember | (覚え易い) |
| 住みやすい すみやすい | い | comfortable/convenient to live in (of a neighbourhood) | (住み易い) |

VC.4 Health

Table 110: Adjectives: health.

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|---------------|---|--|--------------------------|
| 大丈夫 だいじょうぶ | な | alright/problem-free/without fear | |
| 健康 けんこう | な | healthy/fit; wholesome | also a noun |
| 無意識 むいしき | の | unconscious/involuntary/unintentional | |
| 精神的 せいしんてき | な | mental/spiritual/emotional | |
| 元気 げんき | な | lively/well/in good health | |
| 平気 へいき | な | all right/fine/OK | slang; also in Table 115 |
| 病気 びょうき | な | illness/disease/sickness | |
| 不安 ふあん | な | anxious/uneasy/insecure | also a noun |
| 暇 ひま | な | free/available/not busy/unoccupied/idle | also a noun; [JS] |
| 忙しい いそが | い | busy/occupied/hectic | |
| 大忙し おおいそが | な | very busy | |
| 幸せ しあわ | な | happy/blessed | also a noun |
| 不幸 ふこう | な | unhappy/sorrowful/misfortunate/disastrous (short term/long term) | [HN] |
| 不幸せ ふしあわ | な | unhappy/misfortunate/unlucky (long term) | also a noun; [HN] |

VC.5 Colours

Read the main article on [CTA](#).

Only four colours were recognised as basic colours in ancient Japan: red, blue, white, black. Blue and green used to be both referred to as 青い.

Table 111: Adjectives: colours.

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------|---|---|-------------------|
| 赤い あか | い | red | |
| 青い あお | い | blue; green (for fruits/vegetables/traffic lights); inexperienced | |
| 黒い くろ | い | black | also in Table 112 |

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------|---|----------|-----------------|
| 白い | い | white | |
| 黄色い | い | yellow | “黄い” is invalid |
| 茶色い | い | brown | “茶い” is invalid |
| 茶色っぽい | い | brownish | |

VC.6 Agreeability

Table 112: Adjectives: agreeability.

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------|---|---|------------------------------|
| ない | い | non-existent/not being there | (無い) |
| いい/良い/よい | い | good/nice/agreeable/OK | [MK] |
| よろしい | い | good/OK/all right/fine/very well/will do/may/can | (宜しい); honorific |
| 気持ちいい | い | pleasant/good feeling | also an expression |
| 結構 | な | nice/splendid/lovely/wonderful/fine | also in Table 121 |
| すごい | い | amazing/great/wonderful/terrific | (凄い) |
| 素晴らしい | い | wonderful/splendid/magnificent | |
| 素敵 | な | lovely/wonderful/fantastic/superb/nice/cool | |
| 偉い | い | excellent/remarkable | also in Table 113 |
| やばい | い | terrific/amazing/cool (“damn!”) | colloquial, slang; also: やペー |
| 惜しい | い | too good for/deserving better | also in Table 107 |
| 問題ない | い | unobjectionable | also an expression |
| 悪い | い | bad/poor/undesirable/at fault (says served) | also an interjection, [goo] |
| まずい | い | bad taste/unpleasant/awful/problematic/unfavourable (says server) | [goo] |
| きまずい | い | awkward/embarrassing/uneasy | |
| だめ/ダメ | な | not good/hopeless; cannot/not allowed | ダメ is informal, [HN] |
| 嫌 | な | reluctant/disagreeable | |
| いやらしい | い | unpleasant/disagreeable/nasty | (いやらしい) |
| 不快 | な | unpleasant/displeasing/discomforting | |
| 気持ち悪い | い | disgusting/gross/revolting/unpleasant/bad feeling | |
| キモい | い | disgusting/gross (abbreviation) | slang |
| 気色悪い | い | weird/disgusting/sickening | |
| きしょい | い | gross/disgusting/sickening (abbreviation of 気色悪い) | slang; also: きしょー |
| やばい | い | awful/crazy/unhinged (“damn!”) | colloquial, slang; also: やペー |
| 罰当たり | の | cursed/damned/accursed | |
| ありえない | い | unthinkable/ridiculous/absurd | (あり得ない); also in Table 114 |
| とんでもない | い | unthinkable/unexpected/absurd/outrageous/preposterous/terrible | also an interjection |
| 好き | な | likeable/favourite | |
| 大好き | な | strongly liked/loved | |
| 興味深い | い | very interesting/of great interest | |
| 嫌い | な | disliked/hated | |
| 大嫌い | な | strongly disliked/hated | |
| 安全 | な | safe/secure | also a noun |
| セーフ | な | acceptable/fine/OK; in time (for) | |
| 怖い | い | scary/frightening/eerie/dreadful | |
| 恐ろしい | い | dreadful/terrifying/frightening/terrible; startling/surprising | |

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|------------------------|-----|---|---|
| 危険 | な | dangerous/hazardous | also a noun; [HN] |
| 危ない | い | dangerous/risky | also an interjection; [HN] |
| やばい | い | dangerous/risky (“damn!”) | colloquial, slang; also: やべー |
| 最高 | な・の | best/finest; highest/maximum | |
| 最良 | の | best/ideal | |
| 高級 | な | high class/calibre | |
| 最低 | な・の | worst/awful/nasty/disgusting; lowest/minimum | |
| 最悪 | の | worst (e.g. situation) | |
| 低級 | な | low class/calibre; vulgar/cheap | |
| 邪悪 | な | evil/wicked | |
| すまない | い | inexcusable/unjustifiable/unpardonable | (済まない); also an interjection, also in Table 107 |
| 当たり前 | の | natural/obvious/common/ordinary/the norm | |
| あたりまえ | の | natural/reasonable/obvious | (当たり前) |
| 当然 | の | natural/right/proper/just/appropriate | also an adverb |
| 相当 | の | appropriate/suitable/befitting/proportionate | also a verb, adverb; also in Table 121 |
| <v past>ほうがいい | い | had better <v past> | (ほうがいい) |
| <v neg>ほうがいい | い | had better not <v> | (ほうがいい) |
| しょうがない | い | there’s no other way/can’t be helped; hopeless/annoying/troublesome/awful | |
| 仕方ない | い | there’s no other way/can’t be helped; hopeless/annoying/troublesome/awful | |
| <nn/adj/v te> てしょうがない | い | cannot help but <nn/adj/v te> | |
| <nn/adj/v te> て仕方ない | い | cannot help but <nn/adj/v te> | |
| <nn/adj/v te> てもしょうがない | い | it’s no use <nn/adj/v te>/useless/no good/insufficient/not enough | |
| <nn/adj/v te> ても仕方ない | い | it’s no use <nn/adj/v te>/useless/no good/insufficient/not enough | |
| 禁じ得ない | い | cannot help/hold back/suppress (laughing/feeling sympathy/tears/anger/etc.) | |

VC.7 Appearance and style

Table 113: Adjectives: appearance and style.

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|----------------|---|---|--------|
| <adj/v stem>そう | な | having the appearance of/seeming that | AUX |
| <nn>っぽい/ばい | い | <nn> -ish/-like | SUFFIX |
| <nn/v>みたい | な | -like/sort of/similar to/resembling | SUFFIX |
| <...>らしい | い | seeming/appearing <...> (judgment based on evidence/reason/trustworthy hearsay) | AUX |

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|----------------------|---|---|-------------------|
| <nn/adv/adj stem>らしい | い | <nn/adv/adj stem> -ish/typical of/becoming of/appropriate for/worthy of | SUFFIX |
| こんな風/こういう風 | な | this kind (closer to speaker) | (こう言う風) |
| こんな様/こういう様 | な | this kind (closer to speaker) | (こう言う様); formal |
| そんな風/そういう風 | な | this kind (closer to listener) | (そう言う風) |
| そんな様/そういう様 | な | this kind (closer to listener) | (そう言う様); formal |
| あんな風/ああいいう風 | な | this kind (distant) | (ああ言う風) |
| あんな様/ああいいう様 | な | this kind (distant) | (ああ言う様); formal |
| かわいい | い | cute/adorable/charming/lovely/pretty | |
| 可愛らしい | い | lovely/sweet/pretty/cure/adorable | |
| かっこいい/かっこ良い | い | cool/attractive/stylish | (格好いい/格好良い) |
| 綺麗 | な | pretty/beautiful | |
| 美しい | い | beautiful/pretty/lovely/sweet/pure (heart/friendship) | |
| 魅力的 | な | charming/fascinating/attractive | |
| 清楚 | な | neat and clean/tidy/trim | |
| 立派 | な | impressive/praiseworthy/splendid/handsome/well-rounded | |
| 背が高い | い | tall (of a person) | |
| 完璧 | な | perfect/complete/flawless | |
| 完全 | の | perfect/complete | |
| かっこ悪い | い | unattractive/ugly/unstylish/uncool | |
| 醜い | い | ugly/unattractive/unsightly/dishonourable | |
| 背が低い | い | short (of a person) | |
| 男らしい | い | manly/masculine | |
| 女らしい | い | womanly/feminine/ladylike | |
| ムキムキ | な | muscular/brawny | also an adverb |
| 色白 | の | fair-skinned/ light-complexioned | |
| 色黒 | の | dark-skinned | |
| きれい | な | clean/tidy | (綺麗) |
| 新鮮 | な | fresh | |
| 汚い | い | dirty/filthy/messy/untidy/vulgar | |
| めちゃくちゃ | な | disorderly/chaotic/messy | also an adverb |
| 臭い | い | smelly/stinking | also in Table 112 |
| <nn/adj/v>臭い | い | smelling of/appearing like | SUFFIX |
| ボコボコ | な | holey/full of holes/dents | |
| 面白い | い | interesting/fascinating/funny/entertaining | |
| おもしろい | い | interesting/fascinating/funny/intriguing | slang |
| 珍しい | い | rare/uncommon/unusual/curious/new/fine/precious | |
| 熱い | い | hot topic/of interest | also in Table 107 |
| つまらない | い | dull/uninteresting/boring/tedious; insignificant/worthless; useless/pointless/disappointing | (つまらない) |

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------|---|---|-----------------------|
| ダサイ | い | lame/uncool | slang |
| 寒い | い | lame/corny (joke) | also in Table 107 |
| 裕福 | な | wealthy/rich/affluent/well-off | |
| 豊か | な | rich/abundant/plentiful/ample | [TGG] |
| 貧乏 | な | poor/poverty-stricken | [goo] |
| 貧しい | い | lacking inner richness/poor/needy | [TGG] [goo] |
| 乏しい | い | shortage/scarce/limited/meagre | [TGG] [goo] |
| 偉い | い | respected/great/famous/celebrated/distinguished | also in Table 112 |
| かわいそう | な | pitiful/pathetic | (可哀想/可愛そう) |
| 気の毒 | な | pitiful/unfortunate/poor/miserable | also in Table 107 |
| 新しい | い | new/novel/recent/latest/modern | |
| 若い | い | young/youthful; immature | [HN] |
| 古い | い | old/antiquated/old-fashioned (of things, not people) | |
| 独特 | の | peculiar/unique/characteristic | [HN] |
| 独自 | の | characteristic/their own/unique/original/local | [HN] |
| 特徴的 | | distinguishing/ distinctive/ characteristic | |
| 特有 | の | exclusive/characteristic/peculiar | [HN] |
| 固有 | の | inherent/characteristic/perculiar | [HN] |
| 普通 | の | normal/ordinary/regular/usual/common | also an adverb |
| 一般的 | な | general/popular/common/typical | |
| 特別 | な | special/particular/extraordinary/exceptional | also an adverb, [goo] |
| 特殊 | ば | special/particular/peculiar/unique | [goo] |

VC.8 Ability

Table 114: Adjectives: ability.

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------|---|---|-------------------|
| うまい | い | skilful/good | (上手い) |
| 上手 | な | skilful/proficient/adept | |
| 有能 | な | capable/competent/efficient | |
| 強い | い | strong/dependable; competent/skilled; rigid/solid | |
| 詳しい | い | detailed/full | |
| に詳しい | い | knowledgeable/well-informed/familiar about | |
| 流暢 | な | fluent (in a language) | |
| ペラペラ | な | fluent (speaking a foreign language) | also an adverb |
| ネイティブ | な | native | also a noun |
| 強大 | な | mighty/powerful | |
| 天才的 | な | talented/gifted/prodigious/virtuoso/masterful | |
| 頭がいい | い | bright/intelligent/clever/smart | |
| 賢い | い | wise/clever/smart | |
| 下手 | な | unskilful/poor/awkward | |
| ヘタクソ | な | unskilled/clumsy/lousy/poor/awkward/shitty | (下手糞); derogatory |
| ボンコツ | な | clumsy/unreliable | slang: ポン |
| 苦手 | な | not very good at | |
| 無能 | の | incapable/incompetent/inefficient | |

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|-------------|---|---|-----------------------------------|
| 弱い | い | weak/frail/tender; unskilled | |
| に疎い | い | ignorant/ill-informed/unfamiliar about | also in Table 107 |
| 弱小 | な | puniness; youth | |
| 頭が悪い | い | slow/weak-headed/dumb | |
| バカ | な | stupid/foolish/ridiculous | (馬鹿) |
| 馬鹿らしい | い | absurd/foolish/stupid/ludicrous/preposterous/laughable/ridiculous | |
| アホ | な | foolish/idiotic/simplistic | (阿呆) |
| 忘れっぽい | い | forgetful | |
| [お]やすい | い | easy | (易い) |
| <v masu>やすい | い | easy to/likely to/have a tendency to <v masu> | (易い); SUFFIX |
| 簡単 | な | easy/simple | |
| 簡易 | な | simple/convenience/simplified | slightly formal [S] |
| 難しい | い | difficult/troublesome/impossible (euphemism) | |
| 大変 | な | difficult/challenging | also an adverb, also in Table 121 |
| 無理 | な | impossible/no way/unreasonable | |
| ありえない | い | impossible | (あり得ない); also in Table 112 |
| めんどくさい | い | troublesome/bothersome/tiresome | (面倒臭い) |
| めんどい | い | troublesome/bothersome | (面倒い); slang |
| 否めない | い | undeniable/cannot deny | |

VC.9 Personalities

Table 115: Adjectives: personalities.

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|-------------------------|---|---|-------------------|
| 優しい | い | kind/affectionate/gentle (character) | speech: [HN] |
| 親切 | な | kind/generous/gentle (action) | formal: [HN] |
| 心安い | い | friendly/familiar/intimate | |
| 懐っこい | い | amiable/affable/likeable | |
| 人懐っこい | い | friendly/amiable/affable/sociable/loving company; (of animals) talking kindly to people | |
| 素直 | な | frank/upfront/candid/direct/honest (about one's feelings/thoughts) | |
| ひどい | い | cruel/heartless/harsh/very bad/awful | (酷い) |
| 残酷 | な | cruel/brutal/ruthless/merciless/inhumane | |
| 静か | な | quiet/silent/calm/peaceful | |
| 冷静 | な | composed/calm/serene | |
| 穏やか | な | peaceful/gentle/calm/mild/quiet | |
| 気安い | い | relaxed/familiar/friendly | |
| 平気 | な | cool/calm/composed/unconcerned/nonchalant/unmoved/indifferent | also in Table 110 |
| 騒がしい | い | noisy/boisterous | |
| うるさい | い | noisy/loud; annoying/persistent | (煩い) |
| うざい | い | noisy/loud | slang |
| 真面目 | な | serious/sober/earnest/grave | |
| hardworking, lazy... | | | |

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------|---|---|-----------------------------------|
| おかしい | い | crazy/eccentric | (可笑しい); also in Table 117 |
| 性急 | な | hasty/rash/impatient/quick-tempered | |
| 慎重 | な | careful/cautious/prudent | |
| 軽率 | な | careless/rash/hasty/imprudent | |
| いい加減 | な | irresponsible/perfunctory/careless | also an adverb, also in Table 121 |
| 気にしない | い | not caring/not giving a damn | |
| 屁とも思わない | い | not giving a damn/not caring a bit | idiomatic |
| 有名 | な | famous | |
| 単純 | な | simple/uncomplicated; simple-minded/naive | |
| [お]めでたい | い | naive/too good-natured/gullible/foolish/simple | ([お]目出度い); also in Table 107 |
| 騙されやすい | い | gullible/naive | (騙され易い) |
| 複雑 | な | complex/complicated/intricate; mixed (feelings) | |
| 受けやすい | い | susceptible/vulnerable/prone to | (受け易い) |
| 感じやすい | い | sensitive/susceptible | (感じ易い); also: センシティブ |
| 熱しやすい | い | excitable | (熱し易い) |
| 飽きやすい | い | easily bored/fickle/quick to lose interest | (飽き易い) |
| 疲れやすい | い | easily fatigued | (疲れ易い) |

VC.10 Education and correctness

Table 116: Adjectives: education and correctness.

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------|---|------------------------------|-------|
| 正しい | い | right/correct; proper/lawful | |

VC.11 Knowledge, truth and reality

Table 117: Adjectives: knowledge, truth and reality.

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------|---|---|---------------------------|
| 明らか | な | obvious/clear/evident/definite | [HN] |
| 不明 | な | unknown/unidentified/obscure/ambiguous/uncertain/unclear | [HN] |
| 知らない | い | unknown/strange | |
| 紛らわしい | い | ambiguous/equivocal/misleading/easy mixed up/confusing | |
| 明確 | な | clear/precise/definite/distinct | [HN] |
| 不明確 | な | inaccurate/indistinct/imprecise/unclear/indecisive | [HN] |
| 曖昧 | な | vague/ambiguous | [HN] |
| 確か | な | certain/sure/definite; reliable/trustworthy/accurate/correct | |
| 不確か | な | uncertain/unclear/indefinite | |
| 本当 | の | real/true/genuine/authentic | [HN] |
| 正常 | な | normal | |
| まじ/マジ | な | serious/not joking | abbreviation |
| がち | な | serious/earnest/honest/real/legit | slang |
| もっともらしい | い | plausible/believable/seemingly true/reasonable | (尤もらしい) |
| おかしい | い | laughable/ridiculous/strange/weird/suspicious | (可笑しい); also in Table 115 |
| 怪しい | い | suspicious/dubious/dodgy; ominous (weather) | |
| 変 | な | strange/odd/peculiar/weird/eccentric/funny/suspicious/fishy; unexpected | |

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|------------|---|-------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 黒い | い | suspicious/shady/evil | also in Table 111 |
| 臭い | い | suspicious | also in Table 113 |
| 異常 | な | abnormal/strange | |
| 非常 | な | extreme/great/extraordinary/unusual | also a noun |
| 不思議 | な | strange/mysterious | |
| 信じられない | い | unbelievable/incredible | |
| 正直 | な | honest/frank/candid | also an adverb |
| 平等 | の | equal/impartial | also a noun |
| untruthful | | | |
| unequal | | | |

VC.12 Courtesy

Table 118: Adjectives: courtesy.

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------|---|--|-------------------|
| [こ]丁寧 | な | polite/courteous/civil; conscientious/thorough/careful | [honorific] |
| 失礼 | な | discourteous/impolite | also a noun |
| 無礼 | な | rude/discourteous/insolent (stronger) | also a noun |
| 速い | い | fast | |
| 高速 | な | high-speed/rapid/express | also a noun |
| 急速 | な | rapid (progress) | |
| 早い | い | early/too early | |
| 遅い | い | slow/late (in the day)/late (behind time) | |
| 重い | い | slow/sluggish/laggy | also in Table 121 |

VC.13 Conflict and resolution

Table 119: Adjectives: conflict and resolution.

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------|---|---------------------------------|-------------|
| 不正 | な | unjust/unfair/dishonest/illegal | also a noun |

VC.14 Taste and texture

Read the main article for the five basic flavours on [CTA](#).

More [here](#)

Table 120: Adjectives: taste and texture.

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------------|---|-----------------------------------|--------------------|
| おいしい | い | good-tasting/delicious/tasty | (おいしい) |
| うまい | い | delicious | (美味い/旨い [SKJnKKS]) |
| うめえ/うめえ/ うめー | | expressive/delicious/skilled/good | colloquial |
| 酸っぱい | い | sour | |
| 甘い | い | sweet | |
| 苦い | い | bitter | |
| 辛い | い | spicy | |
| 塩っぱい | い | salty | |

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------|---|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ふわふわ | の | soft/fluffy/spongy | ONOMATOPOEIC also an adverb |
| きな臭い | い | smelling burnt/scorched | also in Table 107 |

VC.15 Amounts and sizes

Table 121: Adjectives: amounts and sizes.

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------|---|---|--|
| でかい | い | huge/big/gargantuan | slang |
| 大きい | い | big/large/great | |
| すごい | い | vast (in numbers)/to a great extent | (凄い) |
| いい加減 | な | already enough (expressing wish for something to end), see い い加減にする | also an adverb, also in Table 115 |
| 大～ | な | large/great/huge/major/important/serious/severe | PREFIX |
| 相当 | な | considerable/substantial | |
| 小さい | い | small/little/tiny | |
| ちいちゃい | い | small/little/tiny | (小ちゃい); slang |
| ちっちゃい | い | tiny/wee | (小っちゃい); slang |
| 高い | い | high/tall; expensive | |
| 低い | い | low/short | |
| 安い | い | cheap | |
| 深い | い | deep; profound; dense/thick; close (relationship); intense/ strong; late | |
| 浅い | い | shallow/superficial; slight (wound); light (sleep); pale (colour); inadequate (knowledge); early/young (e.g. night/season) | |
| 関係ない | い | unrelated/irrelevant | |
| 重い | い | heavy (weight/feeling) | also in Table 118 |
| 軽い | い | light (weight/feeling) | also in Table 118 |
| 太い | い | thick (diameter); deep/sonorous (of voice) | [HN] |
| 細い | い | thin/slender (diameter); thin/sparse (of voice) | [HN] |
| スリム | な | slim | |
| 厚い | い | thick (sheets/strength) | [HN] |
| 薄い | い | thin (sheets/strength) | [HN] |
| 短い | い | short/brief (length) (spacial/temporal/detail) | |
| 長い | い | long (length) (spacial/temporal) | |
| 末永い | い | everlasting/permanent/very long/many years of | |
| 近い | い | near (distance) (spacial/temporal/relationship/similarity) | |
| 遠い | い | far (distance) (spacial/temporal/relationship/similarity) | |
| 広い | い | wide/spacious/vast | |
| 狭い | い | narrow/confined/cramped | |
| 大量 | の | massive quantity | [HN] |
| 多い | い | many/large quantity of (esp. countable); frequent | [GMN] |
| 多量 | の | much/large amount of (esp. uncountable) | [HN], [GMN], [goo] |
| 十分 | な | enough/sufficient/plenty/adequate/satisfactory | also an adverb |
| たくさん | の | a lot/lots/plenty/much/a great deal; enough/too much | (沢山); also an adverb; [goo] |
| いっぱい | の | full/filled/overflowing | (一杯); also a noun and adverb; [goo] |
| 色々 | な | various/all sorts of | slang: いろんな (Table 73) |

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------|---|--|-----------------------------------|
| 必要 | な | essential/necessary | also a noun |
| 必要ない | い | unnecessary/not needed | |
| 不必要 | な | unnecessary/needless | |
| 不要 | の | unnecessary/unneeded | |
| 結構 | な | not needing any more (“I’m fine/no thank you”)/sufficient/enough | also in Table 112 |
| 不用 | の | disused/unused | |
| 少量 | の | small quantity | |
| 少ない | い | few/a little/scarce/insufficient; seldom | |
| 久しい | い | long (time that has passed)/old (story) | |
| 久しぶり | の | long time (since the last time) | |
| 深刻 | な | serious/severe/grave (of a crisis) | |
| 重い | い | serious/severe/critical (punishment/illness) | also in Table 118 |
| 軽い | い | non-serious/minor/unimportant/trivial (punishment/illness) | also in Table 118 |
| 大変 | な | serious/dreadful/terrible | also an adverb, also in Table 114 |

VC.16 Change

Table 122: Adjectives: change.

| Adjective | 類 | Meaning | Notes |
|-----------|---|--------------------|-------|
| 変わらない | い | constant/invariant | |

VD 動詞 (verbs)

VD.1 Physical

Table 123: Verbs: physical.

| Transitive | | | | Intransitive | | | |
|-------------|------|---|---------------------------|--------------|------|--|------------------------|
| Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes | Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes |
| 動かす | う | to move/shift/stir/budge/change position; to inspire/mobilise/deploy | | 動く | う | to move; to stir/shift/shake/swing; to be influenced | |
| 移動する | E | to move/transfer/migrate | | 移動する | E | to move/travel | |
| - | | | | 運動する | E | to exercise/train/workout/do sports | |
| - | | | | 活動する | E | to be active (of person/organisation/animal/volcano/etc.) | |
| - | | | | 静止する | E | to be still/still/dormant (e.g. volcano) | |
| - | | | | 行動する | E | to act/take action | |
| 止める | る | to stop/turn off; to park; to suppress/hold (cough/tears/breath); to relieve (pain) | | 止まる | う | to stop moving/come to a stop/be stopped/perch on (of birds) | |
| 指す | う | to point; to identify/indicate/point out | | - | | | |
| 触る | う | to touch/feel (intentional) | [sgoo] | 触る | う | to touch (intentional) | [sgoo] |
| OにSを触れる | る | to touch O using S (unintentional) ??? | [sgoo] | 触れる | る | to touch/feel (unintentional); to touch/refer to a subject | [sgoo] |
| ? | | | | 接する | E | to be close to/in contact (abstract; information/geographical border) | [sgoo] |
| 抱く | う | to embrace/hug/hold in one's arms (e.g. baby) | | - | | | |
| 抱きしめる | る | to embrace closely/hug someone close/hold someone tight | (抱き締める) | - | | | |
| ハグする | E | to hug | | ハグする | E | to hug | |
| 噛む | う | to bite/chew | | - | | | |
| 持つ | う | to hold (in hand)/take/carry/possess; hold meeting | | - | | | |
| 押さえる | る | to pin down/hold in place/hold steady | | - | | | |
| - | | | | 座る | う | to sit/squat | |
| 掛ける | る | to sit down/take a seat; to rest against (IC-marked) | | - | | | |
| 腰を掛ける | る | to sit down/take a seat | | - | | | |
| 横たえる | る | to lay down | | 横たわる | う | to lie down/stretch out | |
| 伏せる | る | to turn over/lay face down; to point/cast down (gaze/head) | also in Table 133 | 伏せる | る | to lie flat on the ground | |
| 残す | う | to leave behind | also in Table 127 | 残る | う | to remain/be left behind | also in Table 127 |
| 押す | う | to press/push/exert pressure on; to stamp (seal) | | - | | | |
| 当てる | る | to hit/put on/hold against; to apply (patch/eye-mask) | [HNI] | 当たる | う | to be hit/strike (e.g. a target/lottery/by an ailment) | |
| 打つ | う | to hit/strike/beat/punch (strong) | [sgoo] [HNI] | 打たれる | る | to be struck/beaten (strong) | |
| 叩く | う | to (repeatedly) strike/hit/slap/tap/pat/clap (hands); to attack/criticise/flare an idea | also in Table 127; [sgoo] | - | | | |
| 殴る | う | to strike/hit/beat/punch someone | [sgoo] | - | | | |
| ぶつ | う | to hit someone; strike/beat (stronger) | (打つ); [sgoo] [HNI] | ? | | | |
| ぶつける | る | to hit someone's head/crash into | (打付ける); [HNI] | ぶつかる | う | to bump/crash into (large objects) | [HNI] |
| ボコボコにする | E | to viciously beat up/hit and kick repeatedly | slang | - | | | |
| ボッコボコにする | E | to severely beat up (emphatic) | slang | - | | | |
| しばく | う | to strike (with stick/whip); to hit/punch/kick/beat | | - | | | |
| ビンタする | E | to slap (esp. in the face) | | - | | | |
| 刺す | う | to pierce/stab/prick/thrust | also in Table 128 | 刺さる | う | to pierce/get lodged/get stuck into | |
| 撃つ | う | to shoot (gun/person/beam) | | - | | | |
| 貫通する | E | to pass/go/penetrate/pierce through (of bullet/arrow) | | 貫通する | E | to pass/go/penetrate/pierce through (bullet/arrow) | |
| 漏らす | う | to let leak out (water/light/secret/information) | | 漏れる | る | to leak out/escape/shine through | [HNI] |
| バラす | う | to expose/disclose/reveal/give away (secret) | slang | バレる | る | to leaked out/be exposed/be found out (of a secret/lie/improper behaviour) | slightly casual, [HNI] |
| <v stem>漏らす | う | to forget to do <v stem> | SUFFIX | - | | | |
| 振り返る | う | to turn one's head towards; to think back/reminisce/reflect on | | 振り返る | う | to turn around/look back | |
| 吐く | う | to expel from mouth (breathe/spit/vomit) | [sgoo] | - | | | |
| つく | う | to sigh; to tell a lie; to use foul language (all other cases, use 吐く) | (吐く); [HNI] | - | | | |
| 嘘をつく | う | to tell a lie | | - | | | |
| 吹く | う | to blow air through pursed lips | [sgoo] | - | | | |
| さらす | う | to expose to (sun/danger; IC-suffixed); to rinse/soak (vegetables) | (晒す) | - | | | |
| さらす | う | to doxx/make someone's private information public | slang | - | | | |
| - | | | | 日光浴する | E | to sunbathe/bask in the sun | |
| - | | | | 爆発する | E | to explode/detonate/blast/blow up/erupt; to outburst/explode/erupt (emotion) | |

VD.2 Directions

Table 124: Verbs: directions.

| Transitive | | | | Intransitive | | | |
|------------|------|---|-------------------|--------------|------|---|---------------------|
| Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes | Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes |
| - | | | | 行く | う | to go/move through/proceed/rach (information/phase) | |
| - | | | | <v te> へ行く | う | {to <v te> and go (spatial to <v te> gradually/progressively into the future (temporal)} | (行く); AUX, [formal] |
| 持っていく | う | to take/bring/carry something along | | - | | | |
| 進める | る | to advance/move forward | also in Table 134 | 進む | う | to advance/go forward | also in Table 134 |
| - | | | | 急行する | E | to hurry/rush to somewhere | |
| - | | | | 緩行する | E | to go slowly to somewhere | |
| 急ぐ | う | to hurry (someone to do)/rush/hasten/urge/push/make something happen sooner (off. causative 急がせる) | | 急ぐ | う | to hurry/rush | |
| - | | | | 急ぐ | う | to hurry/rush | |
| 目指す | う | to aim at/for/to do/to become | | - | | | |
| - | | | | 去る | う | to leave/go away; to pass/elapse (e.g. seasons) | also an adjective |
| - | | | | 来る | E | to come/approach/arrive | |
| - | | | | 出て来る | E | to come out/emerge | |

| Transitive | | | | Intransitive | | | |
|------------|------|---|-------------------|--------------|------|---|------------------------------|
| Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes | Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes |
| - | - | - | - | 見える | る | to come | honorific; also in Table 128 |
| - | - | - | - | <v te>てくる | E | {to <v te> and come back (spatial); to <v te> up to the present (temporal)} | (来る); AUX. [SE1] [SE2] |
| 持ってくる | う | to take/bring/carry something over | - | - | - | - | also in Table 127 |
| 離す | う | to separate/part/divide/keep apart | - | 離れる | る | to be separated/apart/distant/disconnected; to leave/go away | also in Table 127 |
| - | - | - | - | 逆らう | う | to go against/oppose/defy | - |
| 帰す | う | to send back/home (animate) | [HN] | 帰る | う | to return/go back/go home (animate) | [HN] |
| 還す | う | to send back to origin (grander scale) | [HN] [KRS] | 還る | う | to return back to origin (grander scale) | [HN] [KRS] |
| 返す | う | to return/put something back (inanimate) | [HN] | 返る | う | to return/go back (inanimate) | [HN] |
| 過ごす | う | to spend/pass/lead (time/life); to overdo (esp. alcohol consumption) | - | 過きる | る | to pass through/by; to pass (time/life); to have expired | - |
| ? | - | - | - | 上る | う | to ascend/go up/go upwards (focus on process) | [goo] |
| ? | - | - | - | 登る | う | to go to a higher place | [goo] |
| ? | - | - | - | 昇る | う | to rise (sun); be promoted in rank | [goo] |
| 上げる | る | to raise; to do up (one's hair); to fly (kite)/launch (fireworks); to land (a boat); to show someone in/away; to enrol (school) | - | 上がる | う | to rise (focus on destination); to enter (from outside); to enrol/promote (school); to come ashore; to lift (rain); to spoil/die (e.g. battery) | [goo] [HK] |
| 持ち上げる | る | to elevate/raise/ lift up | - | - | - | - | - |
| 乗せる | る | to pick up passenger/load goods | - | 乗る | う | to board/embark | - |
| 拾う | う | to pick up (item); book a taxi | - | - | - | - | - |
| 起こす | う | to make upright/wake up | [goo] | 起きる | る | to rise/wake up; to occur (esp. unfavourable incidents) | - |
| かける | る | to hang up/let hang/suspend from/hoist/raise (e.g. coat/painting) | [掛ける] | かかる | う | to hang | [掛かる] |
| 壁にかける | る | to hang on the wall | [壁に掛ける] | 壁にかかる | う | to hang on the wall | [壁に掛かる] |
| 下す | う | w to make a decision/draw a conclusion (of 決定、評決、判決、結論) | - | 下る | う | to descend/go down/go downwards (focus on process) | - |
| 下ろす | う | to take down/bring down/lower (generic, destination often mentioned) | [goo] | 下りる | る | to go to a lower place | - |
| ? | - | - | - | 沈む | う | to set (sun); be sunken/submerged | - |
| 下げる | る | to bring down/lower (hinged or small movement) | [goo] | 下がる | う | to go downwards/step backwards (focus on destination) | [HN] |
| 降ろす | う | to drop off passenger/unload goods; out | - | 降りる | る | to alight/disembark | - |
| 落とす | う | to drop/let fall; be defeated/rejected; download/copy | - | 落ちる | る | to fall/drop/collapse/crash (focus on fall); be defeated/fail | [HN] |
| 倒す | う | to knock down/turn on its side/recline | also in Table 135 | 倒れる | る | to fall/collapse (focus on ground); to fold/go bankrupt (organisation) | also in Table 135; [HN] |
| 除く | う | to exclude/remove (esp. something unnecessary); esp. 除けば (aside from/excluding) | [goo] | - | - | - | - |
| 退ける | る | to put/move out of the way | [goo] [HN] | どく | う | to step aside/move out of the way/make way | [退く]; [HN] |
| 退ける | る | to put/move out of the way (wider usage as auxiliary) | [HN] | のく | う | to step aside/move out of the way/make way (wider usage as auxiliary) | [退く]; [HN] |
| どかす | う | to remove/move out of the way | [どかす] | - | - | - | - |
| 押しよける | る | to physically push aside | [押し退ける] | - | - | - | - |
| - | - | - | - | 立ち退く | う | to evict/evacuate/be displaced | - |
| - | - | - | - | 左折する | E | to make a left turn | - |
| - | - | - | - | 右折する | E | to make a right turn | - |
| 戻す | う | to put back/return/revert state/turn back (clock hand) | - | 戻る | う | to turn back/return/go back | - |
| - | - | - | - | 降る | う | to fall (rain/snow/ash); to beam down (sunlight/moonlight/luck/misfortune) | - |
| 入れる | る | to put in/bring in/let in/insert/install (software) | - | 入る | う | to enter/arrive/join/get into/fit into | [HN] |
| - | - | - | - | 立ち入る | う | to trespass/intrude/interfere/pry/delve deeper | - |
| <stem>込む | う | to go/put into; to completely become; to do thoroughly/sufficiently; to remain (seated/silent) | - | - | - | - | - |
| 差し込む | う | to insert/put/thrust/plug in; to shine/stream in (light) | SUFFIX | - | - | - | - |
| - | - | - | - | 入店する | E | to enter a store/restaurant; to become an employee at a store | - |
| 出す | う | to take out/get out/publish/send (letter)/produce | CN 出～ | 出る | る | to exit/leave/come out/Bow/appear/answer (phone/door) | incl. CN 出～ usages |
| 取り出す | う | to take out/pick out; to retrieve/recover | - | - | - | - | - |
| <v stem>出す | う | to begin to <v stem>; to <v stem> out (e.g. jump out, carry out) | SUFFIX | - | - | - | - |
| 追い出す | う | to expel/drive/chase out | - | 抜ける | る | to come out/fall out/be extracted; be omitted/missing | - |
| 抜く | う | to pull out/extract/unplug; omit/skip/pass | - | 抜け出る | る | to slip out/steal out | - |
| 抜け出す | う | to slip out/sneak away/break free | - | ? | - | - | - |
| 抜き出す | う | to pick/single/select out | - | - | - | - | - |
| 減らす | う | to decrease | - | 減る | る | to decrease | - |
| 増やす | う | to increase | - | 増える | る | to increase | - |
| - | - | - | - | 相当する | E | to correspond/be equivalent (in meaning/function); to be proportionate to; to be worthy/deserving of | - |
| 開ける | る | to open (business/general; revealing vacant space) | [TFG] | 開く | う | to open (business/general; revealing vacant space) | [goo] [HN] [TFG] |
| 開く | う | to open (focus on non-linear unfolding movement) | [goo] [HN] [TFG] | 開く | う | to open (focus on non-linear unfolding movement) | [goo] [HN] [TFG] |
| - | - | - | - | 開ける | る | to unfold (figurative/formal; view/development/path forward) | [TFG] |
| 空ける | る | to clear/empty out/make space; leave/be temporarily away | - | - | - | - | - |
| - | - | - | - | 閉ける | る | to dawn/begin (day/new year); leave schedule free/make time for | - |
| 閉じる | う | to close/shut (business/general/non-linear folding) | [goo] [SE] | 閉じる | う | to close/shut (business/general/non-linear folding) | [goo] [SE] |
| 閉める | る | to close/shut (focus on linear movement) | [goo] [SE] | 閉まる | う | to close/shut (focus on linear movement) | [SE] |
| - | - | - | - | 昇進する | E | to be promoted/rise in rank (of person) | [goo] |
| - | - | - | - | 昇格する | E | to be promoted in status (of person/institution) | [goo] |
| - | - | - | - | 昇任する | E | to be promoted/advance (of person) | [goo] |
| 格上げる | E | to promote/upgrade to (IC-marked) | - | - | - | - | - |
| - | - | - | - | 昇級する | E | to upgrade/promote/advance in grade/class/rank | [goo] |
| - | - | - | - | 降格する | E | to be demoted/drop in rank (of person/institution) | - |
| - | - | - | - | 降任する | E | to be demoted (of person) | - |
| 格下げする | E | to demote/downgrade to (IC-marked) | - | - | - | - | - |
| - | - | - | - | 降級する | E | to downgrade/demote/degrade in grade/class/rank | - |
| 呼吸する | E | to breathe | - | 呼吸する | E | to breathe/respire | - |

VD.3 Clothing

TO READ TO READ TO READ TO READ

Table 125: Verbs: clothing.

| Transitive | | | Intransitive | | |
|------------|------|--|--------------|--------|---------------------------|
| Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes | Action | Cat. Meaning Notes |
| つける 付ける | | | | | |
| かぶる | う | to put on (head)/be covered with/shoulder responsibility | (被る): [RG] | - | |
| かける | る | to wear/put on (glasses/coat) | (掛ける) | - | |
| メガネをかける | る | to wear/put on glasses | (眼鏡を掛ける) | - | |
| 着る | る | to wear (upper body) | [RG] | - | |
| {履く 穿く} | う | to put on (lower body: pants, skirt, shoes) | [RG] | - | |
| 脱ぐ | う | to take off/undress (head/upper body/lower body) | [RG] | - | |
| 着替える | る | to change one's clothes | | 着替える | る to change one's clothes |

VD.4 Emotions

Table 126: Verbs: emotions.

| Transitive | | | Intransitive | | |
|------------|------|---|---------------------------|--------|---|
| Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes | Action | Cat. Meaning Notes |
| 思う | う | to think/feel (heart-felt mance) | - | | |
| 感じる | る | to feel/experience | - | | |
| 感じる | う | to perceive/sense | - | | |
| - | | | 気がする | E | to feel (as if; usu. after 〜たい/された); to feel like doing (usu. negative) |
| 喜ぶ | う | to be delighted/pleased by; to congratulate; to welcome (proposal/advice) | | 喜ぶ | う to be delighted/glad/pleased/rejoice |
| - | | | 笑う | う | to laugh; to smile; to sneer/ridicule [RG] |
| - | | | 微笑む | う | to smile [RG] |
| 嘲笑する | E | to scorn/ridicule/sneer at | ニヤニヤする | E | to grin/smirk |
| - | | | 幸せにする | E | to bring someone happiness/make someone happy |
| ? | | | 震える | る | to shiver/quiver/tremble (e.g. cold/fear/rage) |
| - | | | 緊張する | E | to be nervous/stressed/tense |
| 心配する | E | to worry/fear about | - | | |
| 悩ます | う | to worry/trouble/torment/burden/harass | ビビる | 5 | to feel nervous/afraid/self-conscious; [to be startled/surprised/shocked/frightened/spooked] [slang] |
| - | | | 悩む | う | to be worried/troubled |
| - | | | ソワソワする | E | to be restless/nervous/uneasy/in a fidget ONOMATOPOEIC |
| - | | | イライラする | E | to be irritated/annoyed; to fret/worry/be on the edge; to be impatient/lose patience ONOMATOPOEIC |
| 後悔する | E | to regret/repent | 後悔する | E | to be regretful/remorseful |
| 反省する | E | to reflect/introspect; to regret/repent | - | | |
| - | | | ツンツンする | E | to be prickly/standoffish/cold/alooof also an adverb |
| - | | | ムカムカする | E | to feel sick/queasy/nauseated/disgusted also an adverb |
| 誇りに思う | う | to be proud of (neutral connotation) | [HNI] | | |
| 誇る | う | to be proud of/take pride in (neutral connotation) | - | | |
| 自慢する | E | to boast of (negative connotation) | [HNI] | | |
| 激励する | E | to encourage/spur on/cheer on | - | | |
| 励ます | う | to encourage/cheer on/cheer up | - | | |
| 気合をかける | る | to cheer on/raise a shout to someone (IC-marked) | (気合を掛ける) | 気合を入れる | る to fire/psych/motivate oneself up; to give it one's all - |
| - | | | 努力する | E | to put in effort/exert/endeavour/strive - |
| - | | | 無理する | E | to work/try too hard |
| 喚み殺す | う | to stifle (yawn/smile/laugh/etc.) | - | | |
| 笑いを喚み殺す | う | to stifle a laugh | - | | |
| 抑える | る | to restrain/control (emotions); to keep within limits (spending) | - | | |
| 遠慮する | E | to refrain from (esp. タバコ) | 遠慮する | E | to hold back/reserve/constrain/restrain oneself |
| 配慮する | E | to be considerate/thoughtful of | 配慮する | E | to have consideration/thoughtfulness for (IC-marked) |
| 切望する | E | to earnestly desire/eagerly hope/long/yearn for (usu. progressive) | - | | |
| - | | | 絶望する | E | to despair/feel hopeless |
| - | | | 感動する | E | to be emotionally deeply moved/excited/inspired (internal emotions) [RG] |
| - | | | 感動する | E | to be emotionally deeply moved/impressed/inspired (stronger; with observable behavioural change) [RG] |
| - | | | 興奮する | E | to be excited/stimulated/agitated/aroused |
| 傷つける | る | to wound/injure/hurt someone's feelings | 傷つく | う | to be wounded/injured/hurt (feelings) |
| - | | | 泣く | う | to cry |
| - | | | 泣ける | る | to shed tears/be moved to tears |
| 理解する | E | to sympathise | - | | |
| 怒らす | う | to anger/offend/provoke | (esp. 怒らせる) | 怒る | う to get angry/lose one's temper; to scold/tell someone off [slang] |
| - | | | プチ切れる | る | to become enraged/lose it/flip out/blow one's top (切れる) |
| - | | | キレる | る | to snap/flip/get angry/lose one's temper |
| 嫉妬する | E | to be jealous of (something) | 嫉妬する | E | to be jealous (of (IC-marked person)) |
| - | | | 落ち着く | う | to calm down/compose oneself/relax; to settle down (location/job) |
| - | | | びっくりする | E | to be surprised/frightened/startled |
| 脅かす | う | to startle/frighten/scare | - | | |
| 大切に | E | to cherish/treasure | also an adjective, adverb | - | |

| Transitive | | | Intransitive | | |
|------------|------|---|--------------|------|--|
| Action | Cat. | Meaning | Action | Cat. | Meaning |
| 愛する | E | to love | - | | |
| 楽しむ | う | to enjoy/take pleasure in/have a good time/have fun (also used in wishes) | - | | |
| 楽しみにする | E | to look forward to | - | | |
| - | | | ドキドキする | E | to beat fast (heart)/throb/pound/palpitate |
| - | | | ワクワクする | E | to be excited/thrilled/nervous |

VD.5 Production

Table 127: Verbs: production.

| Transitive | | | Intransitive | | |
|-------------|------|--|--------------|------|--|
| Action | Cat. | Meaning | Action | Cat. | Meaning |
| 作る | う | to make/prepare (food)/grow (agriculture)/cultivate (people) | - | | |
| 造る | う | to construct (large-scale buildings, manufacturing) | - | | |
| 創る | う | to create/compose (artistic)/start a business | - | | |
| かける | る | to pour/splash/throw into (liquid); to sprinkle onto (powder/spice) | - | | |
| 塩をかける | る | to salt/sprinkle salt on | - | | |
| つける | る | to affix/attach/join/apply; to assign; to tail/watch | 付く | つく | to come with/be provided/attached; to stain/scat/dye |
| つなぐ | う | to connect/link together; to tie/chain/restrain | つながる | う | to be tied/connected/linked/chained to; to be related to |
| - | | | 血がつながる | う | to be related by blood (usu. as progressive 血がつながっている) (血が繋がる) |
| 札をつける | る | to affix a label/tag | - | | |
| 加える | る | to add/include/sum (objects/people/concepts); to increase (heat/influence/speed) | 加わる | う | to participate/be added to (objects/people/concepts); to increase (heat/influence/speed) |
| 付け加える | る | to add on/supplement/append | - | | |
| 足す | う | to add (arithmetic) | - | | |
| 引く | う | to subtract (arithmetic) | - | | |
| かける | る | to multiply (arithmetic) | - | | |
| 割る | う | to divide (arithmetic) | - | | |
| 始める | る | to start/begin/initiate | 始まる | う | to start/begin |
| スタートする | E | to start/begin | スタートする | E | to start/begin |
| 開始する | E | to start/commence/begin/initiate | 開始する | E | to start/commence/begin/initiate |
| - | | | 出発する | E | to depart/leave/set off |
| 発動する | E | kick-start/put into effect (activity/feeling/machine/policy) | 発動する | E | to kick-start into effect (activity/feeling/machine/policy) |
| 起動する | E | to startup/boot up/activate | 起動する | E | to startup/boot up/activate |
| 準備する | E | to prepare/arrange/get ready/setup | - | | |
| 管理する | E | to manage/control (e.g. business) | - | | |
| 残す | う | to leave undone; to be left over/remain | 残る | う | to be left undone; to be left over/remaining |
| 続ける | る | to continue | 続く | う | to continue |
| <v stem>続ける | る | to continue <v stem> | - | | |
| - | | | 引き続く | う | to continue (for a long time); to come next (TV) |
| やめる | る | to stop/end/quit/cancel/abandon/refrain | 止む | う | to stop/cease/be over |
| 辞める | る | to resign/retire/quit a job | - | | |
| 諦める | る | to give up/resign/abandon | - | | |
| - | | | 離れる | る | to quit/give up |
| - | | | いい加減にする | E | to put an end to/get over with/quit something someone's been stuck doing |
| <stem>止す | う | to stop in the midst of | - | | |
| 終える | う | to finish | 終わる | う | to end/finish |
| 終了する | E | to end/close/terminate | 終了する | E | to end/close/terminate |
| <v stem>終える | る | to finish <v stem> | - | | |
| 完成する | E | to complete/finish | - | | |
| - | | | 突破する | E | to break through/overcome; to exceed |
| 披露する | E | to announce/unveil/introduce; to boast | - | | |
| - | | | 引退する | E | to retire (from the workforce) |
| 登録する | E | to be entered into a register/to register/subscribe (YouTube) | - | | |
| - | | | 入会する | E | to enrol/admit into a club/society/mailling list |
| - | | | 加入する | E | to join a group/project |
| - | | | 退会する | E | to withdraw/resign from a club/society/mailling list |
| 書く | う | to write | ? | | |
| 描く | う | to draw/paint | ? | | |
| 描く | う | to imagine; to depict (abstract concept) | ? | | |
| 書き直す | う | to rewrite | - | | |
| メモする | E | to note | - | | |
| 言う | う | to say; to name/call | - | | |
| 言い出す | う | to start saying | - | | |
| 言いさす | う | to stop saying midway | - | | |
| 話す | う | to talk/speak | - | | |
| - | | | ささやく | う | to whisper/murmur; to spread rumour (oft. passive progressive) |
| - | | | しゃべる | う | to chat/chatter/talk |
| 呼ぶ | う | to call out to; to name/call; to summon (e.g. doctor) | - | | |
| 放送する | E | to broadcast/be on air (TV/radio) | - | | |
| 配信する | E | to broadcast/stream (Internet) | - | | |
| - | | | 雑談する | E | to chat/idle talk |
| アドバイスする | E | to advise | - | | |
| 申し上げる | る | to say/express/offer/extend (greetings/congratulations/apologies, etc.) | - | | |
| - | | | 黙る | う | to be silent/say nothing |
| 歌う | う | to sing | 歌う | う | to sing |
| 演奏する | E | to perform/play (music/instrument) | - | | |
| 叩く | う | to play (drum) | - | | |
| - | | | 踊る | う | to dance (a hopping dance) |

| Transitive | | | | Intransitive | | | |
|------------------------|------|---|------------------------|-------------------------|------|---|---------------------------------|
| Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes | Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes |
| - | - | - | - | 小躍りする | E | to dance for joy | - |
| - | - | - | - | 歩く | う | to walk | - |
| - | - | - | - | ぶらぶらする | E | to walk leisurely/aimlessly | ONOMATOPOEIC, also an adverb |
| - | - | - | - | 散歩する | E | to take a stroll | - |
| - | - | - | - | 走る | 🚗 | to run; drive (vehicle); flash (lightning); wind (road) | - |
| - | - | - | - | 走り出す | う | to start running/break into a run | - |
| - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 追う | う | to chase/run after/pursue | (追い掛ける) | - | - | - | - |
| 追いかける | る | to chase/run after/pursue | | - | - | - | - |
| 追い込む | う | to corner/go hard/push/force someone into doing; to herd/drive/chase ("chase into") | | - | - | - | - |
| - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| - | - | - | - | 時間 ^{じかん} に追われる | - | to be pressed for time ("chased by time") | - |
| - | - | - | - | 追いつく | う | to catch up with (chase/relationships) ("chase and attach") | (追い付く) |
| - | - | - | - | 泳ぐ | う | to swim/weave through a crowd | - |
| - | - | - | - | 凝雑する | E | to be congested/crowded/jammed | [SE] |
| - | - | - | - | 混む | う | to be crowded/packed/congested | [SE] |
| - | - | - | - | 空く | う | to become less crowded/thin out; to get empty | also in Table 130 |
| 逃がす | う | to miss/fail to catch (more physical); to set free/let go/release (physical) | [goo] | 逃げる | る | to flee/escape/get away/avoid (danger/responsibility) | - |
| 逃す | う | to miss/fail to catch (more abstract); to put out of reach (abstract) | [goo] | 逃れる | る | to escape | - |
| <v stem>逃す | う | to fail to <v stem> | AUX | - | - | - | - |
| 取り逃がす | う | to try and catch but fail | [goo] | - | - | - | - |
| 逸する | E | to miss/deviate from (abstract only; chance/right track) | [goo] | - | - | - | - |
| 避ける | る | to avoid (physical/situation/question/responsibility) | - | - | - | - | - |
| 取る | う | to take (notes/break/time)/obtain/pass/obtain | - | 取れる | る | to come off (button/handle/lid) | - |
| とる | う | to have/take/consume (a meal/vitamins) | (摂る) | - | - | - | - |
| 盗む | う | to steal/plagiarise | - | - | - | - | - |
| 手に入れる | る | to obtain/get/procure/win/secure | - | 手に入る | 🚗 | to obtain/get one's hands on | - |
| 撮る | う | to take a photograph | - | 撮れる | る | to be taken (photograph) | - |
| 録る | う | to record an audio or video | - | 録れる | る | to be recorded/caught on tape (audio or video) | - |
| 捕る | う | to catch an object/capture an animal | - | 捕れる | る | to be caught (object)/captured (animal) | - |
| 採る | う | to adopt (method/proposal); to collect/gather (flowers/plants) | - | 採れる | る | to be collected/gathered (flowers/plants) | - |
| 摘む | う | to pick/pluck (flowers); to nip/snip/cut/trim | - | つまむ | う | to pick up (with chopsticks/tweezers)/pinch/hold | - |
| もぐ | う | to pick/pluck by twisting from a tree | - | - | - | - | - |
| 集める | る | to collect/assemble/gather (collectibles/people/information) | - | 集まる | う | to assemble/gather/collect | - |
| 計算する | E | to calculate/compute | - | - | - | - | - |
| 守る | う | to protect/guard/defend | also in Table 135 | - | - | - | - |
| 前例 ^{ぜんれい} を見る | る | to look after (📌-marked) | - | - | - | - | - |
| 切る | 🚗 | to cut/open (sealed); turn off (lights/appliance); hang up; (conversation); shuffle/discard (cards/tiles); punch (ticket) | - | 切れる | る | to break/snap; run out/stop working/expire; be disconnected; be shuffled (cards/tiles); run out (stock); break up | - |
| <v stem>切る | 🚗 | to be able to do <v stem> completely | AUX | - | - | - | - |
| 破る | う | to tear/rip (paper/cloth); to break through (defences); to surpass (record) | [HN] also in Table 135 | 破れる | る | to break/collapse/be torn/worn out/ruined | - |
| 壊す | う | to break/destroy/demolish; to wreck/ruin/spoil/damage/destroy (e.g. dreams) | [HN] | 壊れる | る | to break/fall apart/collapse/be broken/destroyed/damaged; to stop working | - |
| - | - | - | - | もげる | る | to be torn off/come off | - |
| 直す | う | to repair/correct (mistake/habit)/restore/tidy up (hair/make-up)/fix | - | 直る | う | to return to normal/be restored/repaired/improved/corrected | - |
| 治す | う | to cure/heal | - | 治る | う | to recover/be cured/healed | - |
| <v stem>直す | う | to redo <v stem> | - | - | - | - | - |
| 世話 ^{せわ} する | E | to care/look after; to put up a good word for/recommend/introduce | - | - | - | - | - |
| 温める | る | to warm/heat up moderately (also 暖める) [goo] | - | 温まる | う | to warm oneself up | - |
| 熱する | E | to heat to high temperature; to get excited/fired up | [goo] | - | - | - | - |
| 冷やす | う | to cool from room temperature/chill/refrigerate (any object); to calm down/regain composure/relax | [goo] [HN2] | 冷える | る | to be cooled (more than usual/purposefully from room temperature) (any subject) | [HN1] [HN2] |
| 冷ます | う | to cool from high temperature to room temperature (of liquid/food/heat); to dampen (feelings/atmosphere/interest) | [goo] [HN2] | 冷める | る | to cool down/become cold (naturally) (liquid/food/heat) | [HN1] [HN2] |
| 洗う | う | to wash/cleanse/rinse | - | - | - | - | - |
| 掃除 ^{そうじ} する | E | to clean/sweep/dust/scrub | [goo] | - | - | - | - |
| 清掃 ^{せいじょう} する | E | to clean/clean-up/garbage collect | literary [goo] | - | - | - | - |
| 掃く | う | to sweep/brush/clean | - | - | - | - | - |
| 払う | う | to brush/dust/wipe off (e.g. dust/dirt) | also in Table 128 | - | - | - | - |
| - | - | - | - | 求婚 ^{こけご} する | E | to propose (marriage) | - |
| - | - | - | - | 結婚 ^{けっこん} する | E | to get/be married | - |
| - | - | - | - | 咲く | う | to bloom/flower/blossom | - |
| - | - | - | - | 満開 ^{まんかい} する | E | to be in full bloom (esp. of cherry blossom) | - |

VD.6 Consumption

Table 128: Verbs: consumption.

| Transitive | | | Intransitive | | |
|------------------------|------|---|------------------------|------|------------------------------|
| Action | Cat. | Meaning | Action | Cat. | Meaning |
| 使う | う | to use (something/person/idea/means/method) | - | - | - |
| 用いる | る | to use (slightly abstract); to evaluate and use (person); to adopt (idea) | - | - | - |
| かける | る | to spend/expand/use (time/money) | かかる | う | to take/require (time/money) |
| 時間 ^{じかん} をかける | る | to spend time (on doing something) | 時間 ^{じかん} がかかる | う | to take/require time |
| 請求 ^{せいきう} する | E | to charge/bill (for a service) | - | - | - |

| Transitive | | | | Intransitive | | | |
|------------|------|--|-------------------|--------------|------|---|---------------------------|
| Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes | Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes |
| 払う | う | to pay (money/bill) | also in Table 127 | - | | | |
| 遊ばす | う | to leave idle (resources) | | - | | | |
| 遊ばせる | る | to leave idle (resources) | | - | | | |
| - | | | | 寝る | る | to lie idle (resources) | also in Table 130 |
| - | | | | 寝る | う | to lie idle (resources) | also in Table 130 |
| - | | | | なくなる | う | to run out/be reduced to zero/not occur anymore | (無くなる); also in Table 133 |
| 見る | る | to see/observe | | 見える | る | to be seen/visible | also in Table 124 |
| ちらっと見る | る | to glimpse/glance at | | - | | | |
| <v te>みる | る | to try <v te> and see (what happens) | AUX | - | | | |
| 試みる | う | to attempt/try and see if it's possible | [goal] | - | | | |
| 試す | う | to attempt/put to the test and confirm truth/goodness | [goal] | - | | | |
| 見つける | る | to find/discover/detect | | 見つかる | う | to be found/discovered | |
| バラす | う | to expose/disclose/leak a secret | colloquial | バレる | る | to be exposed/found out/leak a secret | |
| 実験する | う | to experiment | [goal] | - | | | |
| 読む | う | to read/recite/pronounce/decipher | | - | | | |
| 読み出す | う | to read out (computing) | | - | | | |
| 読みさす | う | to leave half-read | (読み止す) | - | | | |
| 聞く | う | to hear | | 聞こえる | る | to be heard/audible | |
| 聴く | う | to listen attentively (music) | | ? | | | |
| 吸う | う | to smoke (cigarettes); to breathe in/inhale; to soak up/absorb (sponge); to kiss | | - | | | |
| タバコを吸う | う | to smoke a cigarette | | - | | | |
| 吸い込む | う | to inhale/breathe in; to soak up/absorb (sponge); to suck in (allure) | | - | | | |
| - | | | | キスする | E | to kiss (に-marked) | |
| - | | | | チュッする | E | to lightly kiss/smooch | slang, ONOMATOPOEIC |
| - | | | | チューする | E | to kiss | slang, ONOMATOPOEIC |
| 食べる | る | to eat | | - | | | |
| 食う | う | to eat (masculine); to bite/sting (insects); to consume (resources) | also in Table 135 | - | | | |
| 刺す | う | to sting/bite (insects) | also in Table 123 | - | | | |
| 食べすぎる | る | to overeat | | - | | | |
| 味わう | う | to taste/experience/savour/relish (literal/abstract (e.g. victory)) | | - | | | |
| - | | | | <adj>味がする | E | to taste like/of | |
| テイクアウトする | E | to take-out/takeaway food | | - | | | |
| 持ち帰る | ☑ | to take home/take out (food) | | - | | | |
| 摂取する | E | to intake/ingest (salt/sugar/pills/food); to absorb/assimilate (knowledge/culture) | | - | | | |
| 飲む | う | to drink/swallow/take medicine | | - | | | |
| 呑む | う | to gulp/swallow whole | | - | | | |
| - | | | | 乾杯する | E | to toast/drink/drink one's glass dry (in honour of/celebration) | |
| つける | る | to turn on/switch on/light up (appliance/fire) | (点ける) | つく | う | to come on/ignite/be turned on/lit (appliance/fire) | (点く) |
| 消す | う | to erase/delete/rid; turn off/extinguish (appliance/fire) | | 消える | る | to disappear/vanish; go out/be turned off/extinguished (appliance/fire) | |
| - | | | | なくなる | う | to disappear (e.g. pain/dream) | (無くなる); also in Table 133 |
| 削除する | E | to delete/erase/eliminate | | - | | | |
| 遊ぶ | う | to play | | - | | | |
| 遊ばす | う | to let someone play; to entertain/amuse someone | | - | | | |
| 遊ばせる | る | to let someone play; to entertain/amuse someone | | - | | | |
| - | | | | ふざける | る | to joke/make fun of | |
| 買う | う | to buy | | - | | | |
| ロックする | E | to lock | | - | | | |
| かける | る | to secure (lock) | (掛ける) | かかる | う | to be fastened (lock) | (掛かる) |
| 鍵をかける | る | to lock up (e.g. door) | (鍵を掛ける) | 鍵がかかる | う | to become locked/be locked | (鍵が掛かる) |

VD.7 Interaction

Table 129: Verbs: interaction.

| Transitive | | | | Intransitive | | | |
|------------|------|--|----------------|-----------------|------|---|---|
| Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes | Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes |
| - | | | | ある | う | to exist/have (inanimate) | (有る) |
| - | | | | いる | る | to exist (animate) | (居る) |
| - | | | | <v te>ている | る | progressive state of action/being | (居る); AUX |
| - | | | | <adj/v stem>すぎる | る | to be excessive/too much | (過ぎる); SUFFIX |
| ? | | | | する | E | to do | |
| ? | | | | {お/ご}<nn>申し上げる | る | to do | AUX humble, also in Table 127 |
| ? | | | | <nn>にする | E | to decide on (e.g. ordering from menu) | |
| ? | | | | <adj>にする | E | to make become | |
| ? | | | | <v>ことにする | E | to decide to <v> | |
| ? | | | | <v>ことにしている | E | to decide to make it a rule/practice to <v> | |
| ? | | | | <v>ようにする | E | to try to make sure that <v> | |
| やる | う | to do/play/send/put; to give (to animal) | (遣る/与る); slang | やってみる | る | to take a chance with something | (やってみる) |
| やってみる | る | to have a go/try and do | (やってみる) | ゴリ押しする | E | to do/push through by force | |
| ? | | | | | | | |
| 捧げる | る | to dedicate/offer/devote/sacrifice | | - | | | % technically there is a 捧ぐ but I think |

| Transitive | | | | Intransitive | | | |
|--------------------------|------|---|-------------------|-------------------|------|--|-------------------------------|
| Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes | Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes |
| しまう | う | to finish/stop/close/shut down/put away | (仕舞う) | - | | | nobody really uses that so... |
| <v te>しまう | う | to do completely | (仕舞う); AUX | - | | | |
| <v te>しまう | う | to do accidentally | (仕舞う); AUX | - | | | |
| {<vt>ちゃう <vt>じゃう} | う | to do completely | AUX | - | | | |
| {<vt>ちゃう <vt>じゃう} | う | to do accidentally | AUX | - | | | |
| - | | | | なる | う | to become/get/attain/reach/turn into/be completed | usu. 「～になる」 |
| ? | | | | ご<noun>になる | う | to do <noun> | AUX, honorific |
| ? | | | | お<v stem>になる | う | to do <v stem> | AUX, honorific |
| ? | | | | <v>ことになる | う | to arrange/decide so that <v> | |
| ? | | | | <v>ようになる | う | to come to be that/start to <v> (focus on change state) | |
| ? | | | | よくなる | う | to become better/improve | (良くなる) |
| 置く | う | to leave behind/put/place | | - | | | |
| <v te>ておく | う | to do <v te> in advance in preparation for something | | - | | | |
| 選ぶ | う | to choose/select | | - | | | |
| 優先する | E | to precede/take priority/be preferred | | 優先する | E | to take precedence/priority over others | also in Table 134 |
| - | | | | 間に合う | う | to be good enough/make do | (要る) |
| - | | | | いる | る | to need/want | |
| お願いする | E | to request/ask for a favour/wish | polite | - | | | |
| 頼む | う | to request/ask/beg; to entrust to; to rely on | | - | | | |
| 請求する | E | to request/apply for; to demand/claim (e.g. luggage, damages) | also in Table 128 | - | | | |
| 任せる | る | to entrust/leave to someone (to-suffixed) | [HN] | - | | | |
| 命令する | E | to order/command | | - | | | |
| - | | | | <nn>に関する | E | concerning/relating/regarding <nn> | |
| - | | | | 関係する | E | to be related/connected to (human relationships); to participate in/be involved/concerned with | |
| - | | | | 関連する | E | to be related/connected to (abstract/general) | |
| - | | | | 会う | う | to meet/encounter | |
| - | | | | 逢う | う | to meet/encounter (close friends/romantic) | [HN] |
| - | | | | 遭う | う | to have an undesired meeting/experience/accident | |
| - | | | | できる | る | to come into existence; to make/get friend/partner | (出来る); also in Table 131 |
| 誘う | う | to invite; to ask someone to do/take someone along to (to-marked) | | - | | | |
| おごる | う | to treat someone to something (e.g. a meal/drink) | (奢る) | - | | | |
| - | | | | 答える | る | to answer/reply | |
| - | | | | 返事する | E | to reply/answer/response | |
| 待つ | う | to wait | | 待つ | う | to wait | |
| 楽しみに待つ | う | to wait expectantly/in anticipation | | 楽しみに待つ | う | to wait expectantly/in anticipation | |
| 一緒にする | E | to do together/unite/mix | | | | | |
| [<with list>ど]一緒に になる | う | rendezvous/join/meet together/get married with | htc | | | | |
| - | | | | 目立つ | う | to stand out/be conspicuous | |
| - | | | | 変わった | る | to be unusual/abnormal/strange/odd/peculiar/weird/different | |
| - | | | | 変なっている | る | to be unusual/uncommon/peculiar/eccentric/different | sometimes derogatory |
| 送る | う | to send/dispatch/forward/transmit/ship/remit/pass; to see someone off/bid farewell; to affix (送り仮名) | | - | | | |
| 贈る | う | to gift (a present) | | - | | | |
| 送り出す | う | to send out/forward; to show a person out | | - | | | |
| 受ける | る | to receive/get; to be struck by (e.g. winds/waves/sunlight) | | - | | | |
| いただく | う | to receive/accept/take/eat/drink (頂く); humble | | いただける | る | to be able to receive/accept/eat/drink | humble |
| <v te>いただく | う | to receive (humble of もらう) | humble | - | | | |
| ウケる | る | to be well-received/become popular | | - | | | |
| 手伝う | う | to help/assist/aid; to contribute to | | - | | | |
| 助ける | る | to save/rescue/spare/help | | 助かる | う | to be saved/rescued/escape harm/survive/helped | |
| 救う | う | to save/rescue from/help out of | | - | | | |
| 応援する | E | to aid/assist/help/support; to cheer/root for | | - | | | |
| 感謝する | E | to thank | | 感謝する | E | to be grateful/thankful | |
| 大感謝する | E | to greatly thank | | 大感謝する | E | to be greatly grateful/thankful | |
| 評価する | E | to appreciate/recognise/acknowledge/praise | also in Table 131 | - | | | |
| ? | | | | (ご)注意する | E | to pay attention/remind/caution | |
| 連絡する | E | to make contact/communicate/call/message | | All WOSURU family | | | |
| かける | る | to make (a call) | (掛ける) | 電話する | E | to call (phone call) | |
| 電話をかける | る | to telephone/make a call | (電話を掛ける) | かかる | う | to get/receive (a call) | (掛かる) |
| つなぐ | う | to transfer phone call/connect with (to-marked) | also in Table 127 | 電話がかかる | う | to get/receive (a call) | (電話を掛かる) |
| 告白する | E | to confess to a crime/wrongdoing | [goal] | 告白する | E | to confess one's romantic feelings | |
| 自白する | E | to confess/admit (when questioned) | [goal] | - | | | |
| 自供する | E | to confess (when questioned) | [goal] | - | | | |
| 逮捕する | E | to arrest/capture | | - | | | |
| ノートする | E | to note down | | 粘る | う | to be sticky/adhesive | |

VD.8 Health

Table 130: Verbs: health.

| Transitive | | | | Intransitive | | | |
|------------|------|---|--------|--------------|------|---|---------------------------|
| Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes | Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes |
| - | - | - | - | 空く | う | to be hungry | also in Table 127 |
| - | - | - | - | 渴く | う | to be thirsty; to thirst/crave for (～に渴いた) | |
| 汗をかく | う | to perspire/sweat | (汗を掻く) | - | - | - | |
| - | - | - | - | 疲れる | る | to become tired/fatigued/exhausted (physical/mental); to become worn out (object overuse) | [good] |
| - | - | - | - | 疲労する | E | to be fatigued/exhausted/tired | |
| - | - | - | - | くたびれる | る | to become tired/exhausted/weary (physical); to become worn out (object overuse) | (草履れる); [good] |
| - | - | - | - | バテる | る | to be exhausted | slang |
| かく | う | to scratch (e.g. mosquito bite); to perspire | (掻く) | 病気になる | う | to fall ill/sick | |
| - | - | - | - | - | - | - | |
| - | - | - | - | 寝る | る | to lie down/go to bed/sleep | also in Table 128; [good] |
| - | - | - | - | 睡る | う | to sleep; to rest in peace (euphemism) | also in Table 128; [good] |
| - | - | - | - | 休む | う | to take a day off/be absent; to rest/have a break | |
| 傷つける | る | to wound/injure/hurt someone's feelings | (傷付ける) | 傷つく | う | to be wounded/get injured/get hurt feelings | (傷付く) |
| 痛める | る | to hurt/injure/cause pain | | 痛む | う | to hurt/ache/feel a pain | |
| 傷める | る | to harm/damage; to spoil | | 傷む | う | to be injured/damaged; to be spoiled (food) | |
| 生む | う | to give birth/bear (a child)/lay (eggs); to produce/yield (e.g. interest/returns) | | 生まれる | る | to be born | |
| 生かす? | - | - | - | 生きる | る | to live/come to life/make a living | |
| 生じる | * | a lot! | | - | - | - | |
| 生み出す | * | a lot! | | - | - | - | |
| - | - | - | - | 死ぬ | う | to die/pass away | |

VD.9 Ability

| Table 131: Verbs: ability. | | | | | |
|----------------------------|------|------------------------------------|-------------------|--------|---|
| Transitive | | | Intransitive | | |
| Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes | Action | Cat. Meaning |
| - | - | - | - | あり得る | る to be possible/conceivable/likely/probable |
| - | - | - | - | できる | る to be able to do |
| 料理する | E | to deal with skilfully/handle well | | - | - |
| - | - | - | - | イケる | る to look/taste good; to be good at (esp. food); to go well |
| - | - | - | - | 独立する | E to be independent/self-reliant |
| - | - | - | - | 苦労する | E to have trouble/difficulty |
| 評価する | E | to rate/appraise/evaluate/assess | also in Table 129 | - | - |
| - | - | - | - | 成功する | E to succeed |
| - | - | - | - | 失敗する | E to fail |
| - | - | - | - | 受かる | う to pass an exam |

VD.10 Education and correctness

MATH

| Table 132: Verbs: education and correctness. | | | | | |
|--|------|---|-------------------|---------|--|
| Transitive | | | Intransitive | | |
| Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes | Action | Cat. Meaning |
| 訊く | う | to ask/enquire | | ? | |
| 質問する | E | to ask a question | | 質問を する | E to ask a question |
| 教える | る | to teach/inform | - | - | - |
| 教わる | う | to be taught/learn/take lessons in | - | - | - |
| 説明する | E | to explain/describe | - | - | - |
| 習う | う | to take lessons/learn/be trained (under a teacher) | - | - | - |
| 練習する | E | to practise/train/drill | - | - | - |
| 勉強する | E | to study | | 勉強する | E to work hard |
| 自習する | E | to self-study | | - | - |
| - | - | - | - | 頑張る | う to persevere/keep at it/hang on/do one's best |
| - | - | - | - | わかる | う to understand/comprehend |
| 理解する | E | to understand/agree | | - | |
| 理解する | E | to understand | also in Table 126 | - | |
| 違える | る | to make a mistake | [HN] | 違う | う to differ/be different; to be wrong/mistaken |
| 間違える | る | to make a mistake in/commit an error/do incorrectly | | 間違う | う to be mistaken/incorrect/wrong (oft. as past/progressive) |
| - | - | - | - | 異なる | う to differ/disagree/vary/diverge (of opinions) |
| 誤解する | E | to have a misunderstanding about | | 誤解する | E to have a misunderstanding [good] |
| - | - | - | - | 間違っている | E to erroneously assume/live in an illusion/be mistaken [good] |
| - | - | - | - | 思い違っている | E to be mistaken/have a misconception [good] |

VD.11 Knowledge, truth and reality

| Table 133: Verbs: knowledge, truth and reality. | | | | | |
|---|------|--|--------------|--------|--------------|
| Transitive | | | Intransitive | | |
| Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes | Action | Cat. Meaning |
| 思う | う | to think/believe/judge/imagine/recall/feel | | - | - |
| 考える | る | to consider/think over/reflect on | | - | - |

| Transitive | | | | Intransitive | | | |
|------------|------|--|-------------------|--------------|------|--|---------------------------|
| Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes | Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes |
| 承知する | E | to know/be aware; to accept/consent/comply/acknowledge | | - | | | |
| 信じる | る | to believe/trust/have faith in | | - | | | |
| 信用する | E | to trust (information/source; past) | [SE] | - | | | |
| 信頼する | E | to trust (a person/organisation; future) | [SE] | - | | | |
| 疑う | う | to doubt/distrust/be suspicious of | | - | | | |
| - | | | | はっきりする | E | to clear (e.g. fog/confusion); to be clear/definite (sight/knowledge) | |
| 隠す | う | to hide/conceal | | 隠れる | る | to hide/conceal oneself/take cover; to be hidden by/disappear behind; to be unknown/undiscovered | |
| 隠し事する | E | to keep a secret | | - | | | |
| 伏せる | る | to conceal (secret)/place in hiding (in ambush) | also in Table 123 | - | | | |
| 隠蔽する | E | to cover up/conceal/hide/suppress | | - | | | |
| - | | | | なくなる | う | to be lost/missing | (無くなる); also in Table 128 |
| - | | | | 気づく | う | to notice/realise/sense (internal/somewhat nuance) | (気づく) [HN] |
| - | | | | 気がつく | う | to notice/realise/sense; regain consciousness | (気がつく); [HN] |
| 知る | 👉 | to know/be familiar with | | 知れる | る | to be known/understood/discovered | |
| 覚える | る | to remember/memorise/learn by heart | | - | | | |
| 思い出す | う | to recall/remember/recollect | | - | | | |
| 意識する | E | to become aware of | | - | | | |
| 忘れる | る | to forget | | - | | | |
| - | | | | 由来する | E | to originate from (LC-marked) | |
| 調べる | る | to look up/search/investigate/examine | | - | | | |
| 観察する | E | to observe/survey/watch | | - | | | |
| 探す | う | to search/look/hunt for (something desired) | | - | | | |
| 捜す | う | to search/look/hunt for (something lost) | | - | | | |
| 探索する | E | to hunt/explore/investigate/search/lookup | | - | | | |
| 分析する | E | to analyse | | - | | | |
| 推す | う | to infer/deduce/gather/conjecture/surmise from | also in Table 135 | - | | | |
| 報告する | E | to report (information) | | - | | | |
| 証明する | E | to prove/testify | | - | | | |
| 確認する | E | to confirm/verify/validate/check | | - | | | |
| 発見する | E | to discover/detect/find | | - | | | |
| 発明する | E | to invent | | - | | | |
| 決断する | E | to decide (strong) | [sgoo] | - | | | |
| 決定する | E | to decide | [sgoo] | - | | | |
| 判断する | E | to judge | [sgoo] | - | | | |
| 判定する | E | to make a verdict/ruling (of judges/referees) | [sgoo] | - | | | |
| 断定する | E | to assert/declare/conclude | [sgoo] | - | | | |
| 内定する | E | to unofficially decide/offer (e.g. job) | | 内定する | E | to unofficially decide/offer (e.g. job) | |
| 探る | う | to feel around/grope/search/find for; to investigate/probe/spy/sound out; to explore (parts unknown) | | - | | | |

VD.12 Courtesy

Table 134: Verbs: courtesy.

| Transitive | | | | Intransitive | | | |
|------------|------|--|-------------------|--------------|------|--------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes | Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes |
| 無視する | E | to disregard/ignore | | - | | | |
| - | | | | 曲に合う | う | to be/make it in time for | also in Table 129 |
| 遅らす | う | to delay/postpone/slow down/retard | | 遅れる | る | to be late/delayed/overdue/slow | |
| - | | | | 後れる | る | to fall behind others (race/studies) | |
| 遅める | る | to set a clock forwards in time | also in Table 124 | 進む | う | to be fast (of a clock) | also in Table 124 |
| かける | る | to cause/burden/impose (inconvenience/trouble) | (掛ける) | - | | | |
| 迷惑をかける | る | to annoy/inconvenience/trouble/cause trouble | (迷惑を掛ける) | - | | | |
| 面倒をかける | る | to inconvenience/trouble | (面倒を掛ける) | - | | | |

VD.13 Conflict and resolution

Table 135: Verbs: conflict and resolution.

| Transitive | | | | Intransitive | | | |
|------------|------|--|-------------------|--------------|----------------------------|---|-------------------------|
| Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes | Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes |
| - | | | | 争う | to compete/contest/contend | | |
| - | | | | 勝つ | う | to win (personal) | |
| - | | | | 勝利する | E | to win (larger scale) | |
| 攻める | る | to attack/assault/assail | | 闘う | う | to fight against/resist/oppose | |
| 倒す | う | to kill/defeat/beat/overthrow | also in Table 124 | 倒れる | る | to be killed (person)/fall (organisation) | also in Table 124; [HN] |
| 負かす | う | to defeat | [HN] | 負ける | る | to lose (personal)/succumb to/give in to | |
| 敗る | う | to defeat/beat | [HN] | 敗れる | る | to lose/be defeated/beaten/unsuccessful | |
| - | | | | 敗北する | E | to lose (larger scale) | |
| 食う | う | to outdo/defeat | also in Table 128 | - | | | |
| 全滅する | E | to completely destroy/annihilate/wipe out | | 全滅する | E | to be totally defeated/completely fail | |
| 騙す | う | to trick/cheat/deceive | | - | | | |
| 馬鹿にする | E | to make fun of/look down on/make light of | | - | | | |
| 後出しする | E | to wait to see one's opponent's move before making your move (disallowed in games); to hold back until the last minute | | - | | | |

| Transitive | | | | Intransitive | | | |
|------------|------|--|----------------------------|--------------|------|--|---------|
| Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes | Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes |
| 誤る | う | to err/make a mistake in; to mislead/misguide/lead astray | | 誤る | う | to be mistaken/wrong/incorrect | |
| - | | | | 喧嘩する | E | to quarrel/brawl/fight/squabble/scuffle/argue | |
| 脅す | う | to threaten/menace | [goo] | - | | | |
| 脅かす | う | to threaten/menace | [goo] also in Table 126 | - | | | |
| 責める | る | to blame/condemn/critise/reproach | | - | | | |
| 謝る | う | to apologise | | - | | | |
| 謝罪する | E | to apologise | | - | | | |
| 勘弁する | E | to pardon/forgive; to give someone a break | | - | | | |
| 許す | う | to allow/approve; forgive/excuse | | - | | | |
| - | | | | 構う | う | to mind/care about/be concerned about/have a regard for (I-marked) | |
| 気にする | E | (negative nuance) to mind/care/worry about something | | 気にする | E | (negative nuance) to mind/care/worry about something | |
| - | | | | 賛成する | E | to approve of/agree with/support (I-marked) | |
| 推す | う | to recommend/endorse/nominate/support/back | also in Table 133 | - | | | |
| 否む | う | to refuse/decline | | - | | | |
| - | | | | お断りします | E | I decline/refuse/reject/do not accept | polite |
| - | | | | 気をつける | る | to be careful of/pay attention to/take care of (I-marked) | (気を付ける) |
| 警戒する | E | to be cautious of/be on guard against | | 反対する | E | to object/oppose/disagree with/resist (I-marked) | |
| - | | | | - | | | |
| 禁じる/禁ずる] | る | to forbid/ban/prohibit | some guru verb black magic | - | | | |
| ブロックする | E | to block (user/website); to obstruct | | - | | | |
| バンする | E | to ban (an online account) | slang | - | | | |
| 約束する | E | to promise/make an agreement | | - | | | |
| 守る | う | to keep/uphold/abide by/follow (promise/rules) | also in Table 127 | - | | | |
| 破る | う | to break/violate (silence/promise/rules) | also in Table 127 | - | | | |
| - | | | | - | | | |
| 捕まえる | る | to arrest/catch/capture/seize/restrain | | - | | | |
| 尋問する | E | to interrogate/question | | - | | | |
| 罰する | E | to punish/penalise | | - | | | |
| - | | | | - | | | |
| 殺す | う | to kill; to suppress/destroy/stifle (talent/feelings/yawn/laugh) | | - | | | |
| ぶち殺す | う | to beat to death; to kill (emphatic) | | - | | | |
| - | | | | 自殺する | E | to suicide | |
| - | | | | - | | | |

VD.14 Change

Table 136: Verbs: change.

| Transitive | | | | Intransitive | | | |
|------------|------|---|-------|--------------|------|---|-------|
| Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes | Action | Cat. | Meaning | Notes |
| - | | | | 変化する | E | to change/vary/mutate/transition/transform/be altered/transfigured; inflect/conjugate (grammar) | |
| - | | | | 進化する | E | to evolve/advance/progress/develop/improve | |
| 展開する | E | to develop/evolve/progress/unfold/plot twist; to expand (physical/mathematical) | | 展開する | E | to develop/evolve/progress/unfold/plot twist; to expand (physical/mathematical) | |
| 修正する | E | to amend/correct/revise/modify/alter/retouch/update/fix | | - | | | |
| 変える | る | to alter/transform/convert/vary/change | | 変わる | う | to transform/change; to move to (new place) | |
| 換える | る | to exchange | | 換わる | る | to switch/be exchanged/change places | |
| 替える | る | to replace | | 替わる | る | to relieve/replace | |
| 代える | る | to substitute | | 代わる | る | to substitute/hand over (telephone) | |
| 切り変える | る | to alter/transform/convert/vary/change | | - | | | |
| 切り替える | る | to replace | | - | | | |
| 切り換える | る | to exchange | | - | | | |
| 取り替える | る | to replace (widest usage; "take and replace") | [goo] | - | | | |
| 入れ替える | る | to replace (only interior contents; "enter and replace") | [goo] | - | | | |
| 付け替える | る | to replace (can replace to different location; "(re)attach and replace") | [goo] | - | | | |
| 入れ換える | る | to exchange | | - | | | |
| - | | | | 声変する | E | to break voice | |
| - | | | | 痩せる | る | to lose weight/become thin; to become impoverished/infertile/barren (soil) | |
| - | | | | 太る | う | to put on weight/grow fat | |
| - | | | | 禿げる | る | to lose hair/become bald | |
| - | | | | 紅葉する | E | to turn red (of leaves, in autumn) | |
| - | | | | 黄葉する | E | to turn yellow (of leaves, in autumn) | |
| - | | | | - | | | |

SUFFIXES AND AUXES

VE 副詞と接続詞 (adverbs and conjunctions)

VE.1 Grammatical

Table 137: Verbs: grammatical.

| Adverb | Meaning | Notes |
|------------------------|--|---|
| 例えば | for example/for instance | |
| つまり | in short/in other words | (詰まり) |
| まず | firstly | (先ず) |
| 取りあえず | first of all/right away | also in Tables Table 140, Table 145 |
| 次いで | secondly/next/subsequently | also a CONJUNCTION |
| {Cだから E {[Cですから E]} | therefore (to speaker, E is a natural consequence of C; strong expression of speaker's attitude) | {CONJUNCTION also an expression; [MCJ] {[polite]} |
| Cそれで E | (objective そ) therefore (general cause-and-effect; E must have certainly happened (either past or now)) | CONJUNCTION [goo], [MCJ] |
| Cそこで E | (objective そ) therefore (C is problem/situation, E is action taken to solve/improve/advance) | CONJUNCTION [goo], [MCJ] |
| Cすると E | thereupon (E happens <i>immediately</i> after C) | CONJUNCTION [MCJ] |
| だからこそ | for this very reason/this is exactly why | technically an expression |
| しかし | however/but | CONJUNCTION |
| ただ | only/merely/just/simply; but/however/nonetheless | also an noun |
| ただし | but/however/provided that | (但し) |
| ために | for the sake of; because of/as a result of | (為に); CONJUNCTION |
| ちなみに | by the way/incidentally/in passing | (因みに) |
| っていう | meaning/called/said | (って言う) slang of という |
| <that>わけではない | it does not mean that/I don't mean that | (訳ではない); technically an expression |
| <that>わけじゃない | it does not mean that/I don't mean that | (訳じゃない); technically an expression |
| もし | if/in case/supposing | (若し) |
| そして | and/and then/thus/and now/and finally | CONJUNCTION |

VE.2 Directions

Table 138: Verbs: directions.

| Adverb | Meaning | Notes |
|--------|---|--------|
| まっすぐ | straight (ahead)/directly (destination)/uprightly/erectly | (真っ直ぐ) |

VE.3 Intensity modifiers

Table 139: Verbs: intensity modifiers.

| Adverb | Meaning | Notes |
|---------------|---|---|
| 全然<negative> | not at all | |
| とても<negative> | not at all/simply cannot | |
| あまり<negative> | not very | (あまり); slightly formal [HN1], [HN2] |
| 別に<negative> | not particularly (nuance: not interested) | slightly informal, can be rude; [HN1], [HN2] |
| 少し | somewhat/slightly/a little | |

| Adverb | Meaning | Notes |
|-------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| ちょっと いっ歩 | a bit/slightly/somewhat/quite; just a minute small degree/small amount (one step) | |
| かなり | quite/considerably/pretty | |
| なかなか | very/considerably/fairly/quite/rather | なかなか (中々) |
| そうとう 相当 | considerably/rather/quite/fairly/pretty | also an adjective, verb |
| そこそこ | reasonably/fairly/all right/moderate | ONOMATOPOEIC, also in Table 148 |
| いい加減 | considerably/quite/rather/pretty enough (wanting something to end) | also an adjective |
| だい 大～ | large/big/great/severe | PREFIX. htc; technically な-adj/noun |
| すごく | very/immensely/awfully | すご (凄く) |
| まったく 全く | really/truly/entirely/completely/perfectly; indeed | also a noun |
| ずいぶん 随分 | surprisingly/very/extremely/fairly/quite/considerably/awfully/terribly | |
| たいへん 大変 | very/greatly/terribly/awfully | also an adjective |
| そりゃ | very/extremely | |
| とても | very/exceedingly/awfully | |
| めっちゃ | extremely/very/really/super/so | slang |
| めちゃくちゃ | incredibly/really/super/so | also an adjective |
| とくべつ 特別 | especially/particularly/extraordinarily/exceptionally | also an adjective |
| ぜんぜん 全然 | extremely/very | e.g. 「ぜんぜんいいよ」 |
| いちぶ 一部 | partly/partially | |
| ぜんぶ 全部 | entirely/wholly/altogether | also a noun; [goo] |
| ぜんたい 全体 | wholly/entirely | [goo] |
| すべて | entirely/completely/wholly | すべて (全て) |
| たくさん | a lot/lots/plenty/much/a great deal; enough/too much | たくさん (沢山); also an adjective |
| いっぱい | fully/as much as possible; a lot/many; all of | いっぱい (一杯); also a noun and adjective |
| たっぷり | plentifully/with excess/amply/abundantly/copiously/generously/fully/a lot | ONOMATOPOEIC |
| いちばん 一番 | best/most | |
| わざと くうぜん 偶然 | purposely/deliberately/intentionally coincidentally/by chance/unexpectedly/accidentally | also a noun |
| もしや | possibly/perhaps/by some chance | もしや (もしや) |
| もしかし | maybe/perhaps/by some chance | もしかし (もしかし) |
| もしかして | perhaps/possibly/maybe/by any chance/if I'm not mistaken | もしかして (もししかして) |
| たし 確か | if I'm not mistaken/if I remember correctly | also a noun |
| たぶん 多分 | probably/perhaps | |
| まず | probably/most likely/almost certainly | まず (まず) |
| たし 確かに | certainly/for sure/indeed/really | |
| いったい 一体 | (what) the heck/(why) in the world/(who) on earth (emphatic question prefix) | |

VE.4 Time

Table 140: Verbs: time.

| Adverb | Meaning | Notes |
|--------|---------|-------|
| | | |

| Adverb | Meaning | Notes |
|----------------|---|--|
| いっしゆん 一瞬 | momentarily/for an instant | |
| いちにちじゅう 1日中 | all day long/throughout the day | note 中 ^{じゅう} |
| すえなが 未永く | everlastingly/forever/for many years to come | |
| いつまでも | eternally/indefinitely/endlessly/forever/for a long time | (何時までも ^{いつ}) |
| きゅう 急に | suddenly/abruptly/unexpectedly; swiftly/rapidly/quickly/ hastily/hurriedly; sharply/steeply (slope/bend) | |
| すぐ | immediately/at once/right away; soon; easily; right near/ nearby | (直ぐ ^す) |
| すぐに | immediately/at once/right away/instantly | (直ぐに ^す) |
| いま 今すぐ | immediately/at once/right now | (今直ぐ ^{います}) |
| さっさと | immediately/without delay/hurriedly/quickly | |
| はや 早く | early/soon/quickly/swiftly/rapidly | |
| そろそろ | soon/it's about time/any time now (expresses impatience) | |
| おそ 遅く | late/slowly | |
| ゆっくり | slowly/unhurriedly/without haste/leisurely | ONOMATOPOEIC |
| だんだん | gradually/little by little/more and more/increasingly | (段々 ^{だんだん}) |
| まだ | not yet/still | (未だ ^{まだ}) |
| もう | already; not any more/longer; again/another | again/another: used with counting 1 |
| ようやく | finally/at last | |
| いまさら 今更 | now/at this stage (when it is already much too late) | |
| ちらっと | at a glance/by accident | ONOMATOPOEIC |
| ほんらい 本来 | originally/primarily | |
| もともと | originally/from the start/from the onset | (元々 ^{もともと}) |
| さき 先に | previously/before/earlier/formerly/recently; beforehand/in advance | |
| いま 今のところ | at present/currently/so far/for now/for the time being | |
| いま 今のとこ | at present/currently/so far/for now/for the time being | slang, abbreviation |
| と 取りあえず | tentatively/for now/for the time being | also in Tables Table 137, Table 145 |
| なが あいだ 長い間 | for quite some time/a long time | also a noun |
| ずっと | the whole time/continuously; much (more); (by) far | |
| ひ つづき 引き続き | continuously/continually/continued/without a break | |
| よく | frequently/often | (よく ^よ); also in Table 141 |
| いつも | always | (何時も ^{いつ}) |
| これから | from now on/in the future; from here | also a noun |

VE.5 Attitude

Table 141: Verbs: attitude.

| Adverb | Meaning | Notes |
|-------------|---|---------------------------|
| ぶらぶら | (walking) leisurely/aimlessly | ONOMATOPOEIC, also a verb |
| えんり 遠慮なく | without reservation/freely | |
| しず 静かに | calmly/quietly/gently/peacefully | also an expression |
| ちゃんと | diligently/seriously/earnestly; properly/perfectly/exactly/ regularly; quickly | ONOMATOPOEIC |
| しっかり | properly/well/sufficiently/hard/fully (working) | also in Table 148 |

| Adverb | Meaning | Notes |
|-------------|---|--|
| はっきり | clearly/plainly (clarity in sight/knowledge) (usu. はっきりした) | also a verb |
| 大切に | carefully/with great care | also an adjective, verb |
| 詳しく | in detail/fully/at length | |
| よろしく | properly/well/suitably; please do | (宜しく) |
| よろしく | properly/well/suitably; please do | (宜しく); slang |
| <...>よろしく | just like/as though one were <...> | (宜しく) |
| よく | nicely/properly/well/skilfully | (良く); also in Table 140 |
| 絶対 | absolutely/definitely/unconditionally | |
| よろしく<...>べし | by all means/of course do <...> | (宜しく) |
| お腹いっぱい | to one's heart's content | also a noun |
| 普通に | normally/ordinarily/usually/generally/commonly | |
| 通常 | usually/ordinarily/normally/regularly/generally/commonly | also a noun |
| 普段 | usually/normally/generally/habitually/always | also a noun |
| 大体 | generally/on the whole/mostly/almost/nearly/approximately/roughly/about | |
| ほとんど | almost/nearly/mostly/practically/virtually/basically/just about | (殆ど), also in Table 121 |
| 本当に/本当に | really/truly | |
| 正直 | honestly/frankly | also an adjective |
| 別に | separately/additionally/extra | |
| ツンツン | aloof/cold/unfriendly/standoffish | ONOMATOPOEIC also a verb; also in Table 147 |
| デレデレ | flirting/philandering/being lovestruck/fawning | ONOMATOPOEIC |

VE.6 Emotions

Table 142: Verbs: emotions.

| Adverb | Meaning | Notes |
|--------|---|---------------------------|
| 喜んで | with pleasure/gladly/willingly/certainly | |
| ドキドキ | thump-thump/bang-bang/pit-a-pat/pitter-patter | ONOMATOPOEIC also a verb |
| ワクワク | to be excited/thrilled/nervous | ONOMATOPOEIC also a verb |
| キュン | with a pitter-patter/heart-wrining/tightening of one's chest caused by powerful feelings (e.g. parting); 「胸がキュンとなる」 | ONOMATOPOEIC |
| ムカムカ | feeling sick/queasy/nauseated/disgusted | also a verb |
| ソワソワ | restlessly/nervously/uneasily/in a fidget | ONOMATOPOEIC also a verb |
| ニヤニヤ | grinningly/smirkingly | ONOMATOPOEIC also a verb |
| 残念ながら | unfortunately/regrettably | technically an expression |

VE.7 Appearance and style

Table 143: Verbs: appearance and style.

| Adverb | Meaning | Notes |
|--------|---|----------------------|
| こう | in this way (closer to speaker) | |
| そう | in that way (closer to listener) | also an interjection |
| ああ | in that way (distant) | |
| こんなふうに | approximately in this way (closer to speaker) | (こんな風に) |

| Adverb | Meaning | Notes |
|--------|---|--------------|
| そんなふうに | approximately in that way (closer to listener) | (そんな風に) |
| あんなふうに | approximately in that way (distant) | (あんな風に) |
| キラキラ | glittering/sparkling/glistening/twinkling | ONOMATOPOEIC |
| ぴょんぴょん | hopping/skipping/lightly and repeatedly jumping | ONOMATOPOEIC |
| チュッ | with a smooch/light smacking sound | ONOMATOPOEIC |
| プチュッ | kissing loudly/smooching; squirting/gushing | ONOMATOPOEIC |
| ちょこちょこ | with small quick steps/toddling | ONOMATOPOEIC |
| むにやむにや | mumbling incomprehensibly/mutteringly/murmuringly | ONOMATOPOEIC |

VE.8 Interaction

Table 144: Verbs: interaction.

| Adverb | Meaning | Notes |
|------------------|--|------------------------|
| 久しぶりに | for the first time in a while/after a long time | |
| 一緒に | together/at the same time; identical | |
| <with>と一緒に<verb> | together with | |
| どうか | please/if you would/would you mind (sentence starter) | polite; also a pronoun |
| どうぞ | please/by all means/certainly/of course/go ahead/feel free to; here you are (passing something) | |
| 是非 | certainly/without fail/by all means | |
| ぜひぜひ | certainly/by all means | (是非是非) |
| 必ず | necessarily/certainly/without fail | |

VE.9 Knowledge, truth and reality

Table 145: Verbs: knowledge, truth and reality.

| Adverb | Meaning | Notes |
|--------|---|--|
| 実は | to be honest/frankly/to tell you the truth | |
| 実際は | in fact/actually/in reality/to tell the truth (as opposed to expectation) | |
| 実際に | actually/really/truly/in practice (as opposed to expectation) | |
| やはり | as expected/sure enough; in any case/after all/in the end | |
| やっぱり | as expected/sure enough; in any case/after all/in the end | |
| 当然 | naturally/rightly/deservedly/justly | also an adjective |
| さすが | just as you'd expect from | (さすが) |
| さすがに | as one would expect/naturally/indeed | (さすがに) |
| もちろん | of course/certainly/naturally/definitely | (もちろん) |
| とにかく | anyway/in any case | (とにかく) |
| 取りあえず | anyway | also in Tables Table 137, Table 140 |

VE.10 Ability

Table 146: Verbs: ability.

| Adverb | Meaning | Notes |
|--------|--|-------------------|
| ペラペラ | fluently (speaking a foreign language) | also an adjective |

VE.11 Taste and texture

Table 147: Verbs: taste and texture.

| Adverb | Meaning | Notes |
|--------|--|---------------------------------|
| ペロペロ | licking/lapping up; gobbling up | |
| ふわふわ | lightly/buoyantly | ONOMATOPOEIC, also an adjective |
| とろり | thickly/viscously/stickily/creamily | ONOMATOPOEIC |
| どろり | thick/muddy/gooeey (of liquid) | ONOMATOPOEIC |
| ぶにぶに | squishy/springy/bouncy (chubby when used on person) | ONOMATOPOEIC |
| ガリガリ | hard/crunchy (of muscles, when used on person) | ONOMATOPOEIC |
| ムキムキ | muscular/brawny | slang |
| ツンツン | spiky (hairstyle); sticking up straight (e.g. plant stems) | ONOMATOPOEIC also in Table 141 |

VE.12 Amounts and sizes

Table 148: Verbs: amounts and sizes.

| Adverb | Meaning | Notes |
|--------------------------------|---|--|
| どんなに | to what extent/amount | |
| こんなに | to this extent/amount | |
| そんなに | to that extent/amount | |
| あんなに | to that extent/amount (distant memory) | |
| どこまで | how far/to what extent/up to what point | |
| どのくらい<nn/adj> | how long/how far/how much | (どの ^{くらい} 位) |
| 多く ^{おほく} | many/much/plenty/a lot | |
| もっと | some more/even more/longer/further | |
| 未満 ^{みまん} | less than/under/below (esp. 〇歳未満 ^{さいみまん}) | SUFFIX |
| ほとんど<negative> | hardly/barely/scarcely/little | (^{ほとんど} 殆ど), also in Table 141 |
| ギリギリ | just barely/only just/at the very limit/at the last moment | (^{ぎり} 限り限り) |
| 半分 ^{はんぶん} | half | also a noun |
| 十分 ^{じゅうぶん} | sufficiently/fully/thoroughly/well/perfectly | also an adjective |
| ほぼ | almost/roughly/approximately/about/around | |
| そこそこ | approximately/about/or so | also in Table 139 |
| ほとんど | large majority/proportion; most/almost all of | (^{ほとんど} 殆ど), also in Table 141 |
| ピッタリ | tightly/closely; exactly/precisely; perfectly suited/in an ideal manner | |
| しっかり | firmly/securely/tightly (holding on); strongly/solidly/sturdily (built) | also in Table 141 |
| 初めて ^{はじめて} | for the first time | |
| また | again/once again/another time/some other time; also; on the other hand | (^{また} 又) |
| もう一回 ^{いっかい} | one more time/once again | |
| もっかい | one more time/once again | slang, abbreviation |
| <v te>初めて<...> ^{はじめて} | only after <v te> is it/do you <...> | |
| 全員 ^{ぜんいん} | all members/everyone | also a noun |

VE.13 Onomatopoeia

Table 149: Verbs: general onomatopoeia.

| Adverb | Meaning | Notes |
|--------|--|---------------------|
| ピンポン | ding-dong (doorbell/intercom) | ONOMATOPOEIC |
| ピンポン | ding ding ding!/correct!/right answer! | ONOMATOPOEIC, slang |